



3 1761 07167364 4

Educational Text-Books.

ENGLISH.

- ARNOLD'S History of Rome. 8vo.....
 — Lectures on Modern History. 12mo.....
 BOJESSEN and Arnold's Manual of Grecian and Roman Antiquities. 12mo..
 CHASE'S Treatise on Algebra. 12mo.....
 CROSBY'S First Lessons in Geometry. 18mo.....
 CHAMPLIN, J. T. A Practical Grammar of the English Language.....
 COMING'S Class-Book of Physiology: for the use of Schools and Private Families.
 12mo. 270 pages, 24 plates and 200 woodcuts..... Muslin,
 — Companion to Class-Book. 12mo..... Muslin,
 CORNELL'S Primary Geography. Forming part 1st of a systematic series of

PRESENTED

TO

THE UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

BY

Cowell & Hutchinson
Toronto

- Historical Geography. The World in the Middle Ages. 2 vols.
 12mo. 850 pp.....
 — The Same Work. 1 vol. folio, letter press, 6 maps.....
 LATHAM'S Hand-Book of the English Language. 12mo.....
 MANGNALL'S Historical Questions. With American additions. 12mo.....
 MARKHAM'S School History of England. Edited by Eliza Robbins, 12mo..
 MANDEVILLE'S Reading Books, viz.:
 1. Primary Reader. 18mo.....
 2. Second Reader. 16mo.....
 3. Third Reader. 16mo.....
 4. Fourth Reader. 12mo.....
 — Course of Reading. 12mo.....
 — Elements of Reading and Oratory. 12mo. New edit.....
 — New Primary Reader.....
 — New Second Reader.....
 MARSHALL'S Book of Oratory. 12mo. 500 pp.....
 — First Book do.....
 MULLIGAN'S Exposition of the Grammatical Structure of the English
 Language. 12mo.....
 OTIS'S Easy Lessons in Landscape Drawing. 6 Parts.....

Cloth,

LaL.Gr
A7595f

Arnold, Thomas Kerchever

(ARNOLD'S)

FIRST LATIN BOOK;

REMODELLED AND REWRITTEN,

AND ADAPTED TO THE

OLLENDORFF METHOD OF INSTRUCTION

BY

ALBERT HARKNESS, P. D.,

PROFESSOR OF THE GREEK LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IN BROWN UNIVERSITY.

SIXTEENTH EDITION.

NEW YORK:

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,

346 & 348 BROADWAY.

M.DCCC.LVII.

ENTERED, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1851, by
D. APPLETON & COMPANY,
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court for the Southern District of New-York.

12770
1912/11

8

P R E F A C E.

ARNOLD'S *First and Second Latin Book* was introduced to the American public some five years since, under the editorial care of Professor Spencer. As the system was, at that time, quite new in this country, and comparatively so in England, the American editor did not think it best "to make any material alteration in the original work." The marked favor with which the volume was at once received, and the almost unprecedented success which has since attended it, are a sufficient proof of its excellence. The test of the class-room and the improved methods of instruction have, however, convinced teachers that, with many rare merits, and with a general plan most happily adapted to the wants of the beginner in Latin, it was still, in some important respects, quite incomplete in its execution and details. The present volume, undertaken at the request of the publishers, is the result of an attempt to remove these defects, and thus to render

the work worthy of yet higher favor and success. The entire book has been rewritten and many important additions have been made.

The Latin of the *First and Second Latin Book* has been retained, so far as consistent with our purpose; but as it has been found necessary to add many new selections, care has been taken to secure pure classic Latin, by resorting exclusively to the pages of Caesar and Cicero.

In the preparation of this book, it has been a leading object with the editor, so to classify and arrange the various topics as to *simplify*, and, as far as possible, to *remove* the disheartening difficulties too often encountered by the learner at the very outset in the study of an ancient language. He has accordingly endeavored so to present each new subject as to enable the beginner fully to master it, before he is called upon to perplex himself with its more difficult combinations. The lessons have been prepared with constant reference to the Ollendorff method of instruction, while, at the same time, special pains have been taken to present a complete and systematic outline, both of the grammatical forms and of the elementary principles of the language. An effort has thus been made to combine the respective advantages of two systems, distinct in themselves, but by no means inconsistent with each other.

In the earlier portions of the book, the exercises for translation consist of two paragraphs of Latin sentences and two of English,

the first of each being designed to illustrate the particular topic which chances to be the subject of the lesson, and the second to furnish miscellaneous examples on the various subjects already learned. Thus each lesson becomes at once an *advance* and a *review*.

For convenience of reference and for the purposes of general review, a summary of Paradigms and an outline of Syntax have been appended to the lessons. The Syntax will be found, it is hoped, to be an improvement, at least in point of classification and arrangement, upon that ordinarily presented in Latin Grammars. In a Second Latin Book, now in preparation—being at once a Reader and an Exercise Book—the editor contemplates a fuller development and illustration of the Latin Syntax, in a series of exercises on the principle of *analysis* and *synthesis*.

The present volume, as already intimated, has been prepared *mainly* from Arnold's *First and Second Latin Book*; the editor has, however, had before him numerous other works of a kindred character, from some of which he has derived valuable aid. Among these may be mentioned, in addition to the various Latin Grammars in use in this country and in England, Allen's *New Latin Delectus*; *Analysis of Latin Verbs*, by the same author; and *Pinnock's First Latin Grammar*; together with numerous other elementary works, among which the editor is happy to specify the *First Latin Book*, by Professors McClintock and Crooks.

Professor Spencer's edition of Arnold's *Latin Prose Compo-*

sition, one of the volumes of the excellent Classical Series published by the Messrs. Appleton, has been consulted with much advantage.

For valuable assistance in the preparation of the Syntax, the editor is happy to acknowledge his indebtedness to Greene's *Analysis of the English Language*.

A. HARKNESS.

Providence, July 18, 1851

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION.

PRONUNCIATION.

| | Page |
|-------------------------------------|------|
| I. Letters | 1 |
| II. Syllables | 2 |
| III. Quantity | 2 |
| IV. Accentuation | 2 |
| V. Sounds of the Letters | 3 |
| I. The Continental Method | 3 |
| II. The English Method | 4 |

LESSONS AND EXERCISES.

Lesson.

| | |
|--|----|
| I. Parts of Speech.—Proposition.—Subject.—Predicate | 7 |
| II. Verbs.—First Conjugation | 8 |
| III. First Conjugation—continued | 11 |
| IV. Second Conjugation | 12 |
| V. Third Conjugation | 14 |
| VI. Fourth Conjugation | 16 |
| VII. Four Conjugations.—Plural Number | 17 |
| VIII. Nouns.—Nominative Case | 19 |
| IX. Nominative Case—continued | 23 |
| X. Vocative Case | 24 |
| XI. Apposition.—Modified Subject | 26 |
| XII. Genitive Case.—Modified Subject | 27 |
| XIII. Accusative Case.—Direct Object of Predicate | 31 |
| XIV. Accusative—continued.—Adverbial Modifiers | 34 |
| XV. Dative Case.—Indirect Object of Predicate | 35 |
| XVI. Ablative Case.—Modified Predicate | 38 |
| XVII. First Declension | 40 |
| XVIII. Second Declension.—Nouns in <i>ūs</i> and <i>ūm</i> | 43 |

| LESSON. | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| XIX. Second Declension.—Nouns in <i>ēr</i> and <i>īr</i> . . . | 46 |
| XX. Adjectives of the First and Second Declension . . . | 47 |
| XXI. First and Second Declension—continued . . . | 51 |
| XXII. First and Second Declension, continued.—Price, Value, and Degree of Estimation | 53 |
| XXIII. Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class I | 55 |
| XXIV. Third Declension.—Class II | 58 |
| XXV. Third Declension.—Class III | 60 |
| XXVI. Third Declension.—Class IV. | 63 |
| XXVII. Third Declension.—Genitives in <i>iūm</i> .—Gender . . . | 66 |
| XXVIII. Third Declension.—Formation of Cases from each other | 68 |
| XXIX. Adjectives.—Third Declension | 71 |
| XXX. Adjectives, continued.—Nouns.—Fourth Declension | 75 |
| XXXI. Nouns.—Fifth Declension | 78 |
| XXXII. Five Declensions.—Greek Nouns.—Gender | 81 |
| XXXIII. Verbs.— <i>Esse</i> , to be.—Predicate, <i>Essē</i> with a Noun or an Adjective | 85 |
| XXXIV. Infinitive as Subject.—Genitive with <i>Essē</i> in the Pre- dicate | 87 |
| XXXV. Tenses for Completed Action.—First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations | 90 |
| XXXVI. Third Conjugation.—Class I.— <i>Second Root the same as the First</i> | 93 |
| XXXVII. Third Conjugation.—Class II.— <i>Second Root formed by adding s to the First</i> | 96 |
| XXXVIII. Third Conjugation.—Class II., continued.— <i>Second Root formed by adding s to the First</i> | 97 |
| XXXIX. Third Conjugation.—Class II., continued.— <i>Second Root formed by adding s to the First</i> | 100 |
| XL. Formation of the Second Root.—First Irregularity— <i>Radical Vowel lengthened (and often changed)</i> . . . | 103 |
| XLI. Formation of the Second Root.—Second Irregularity— <i>Reduplication</i> | 105 |
| XLII. Formation of the Second Root.—Third Irregularity— <i>Second Root after the analogy of other conjugations</i> | 107 |
| XLIII. Subjunctive Mood | 110 |
| XLIV. Subjunctive Mood.—Purpose | 113 |
| XLV. Persons of Verbs.—Indicative Mood.—First Conjugation | 115 |
| XLVI. Indicative Mood.—Four Conjugations.—Personal Pro- nouns | 119 |
| XLVII. Subjunctive Mood.—Four Conjugations | 123 |

| Lesson. | Page. |
|--|-------|
| XLVIII. Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Verbs in <i>iŝ</i> of the Third Conjugation.—Demonstrative Pronouns | 127 |
| XLIX. Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Intensive Pronoun | 130 |
| L. Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Relative and Interrogative Pronouns | 132 |
| LI. Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Interrogative Particles | 134 |
| LII. Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Indefinite and Possessive Pronouns | 136 |
| LIII. Verb <i>Essě</i> , to be | 138 |
| LIV. Verb <i>Essě</i> , continued.—Comparison of Adjectives | 142 |
| LV. Compounds of <i>Essě</i> .—Comparison of Adverbs.—Numerical Adjectives | 145 |
| LVI. Passive Voice.—Third Persons of Tenses for Continued Action | 148 |
| LVII. Passive Voice.—Third Persons of Tenses for Completed Action | 151 |
| LVIII. Indicative Mood of the Passive Voice | 154 |
| LIX. Subjunctive Mood of the Passive Voice | 158 |
| LX. Imperative Mood—Active and Passive | 160 |
| LXI. Infinitive Mood | 163 |
| LXII. Participles.—Ablative Absolute | 166 |
| LXIII. Gerunds and Supines | 169 |
| LXIV. Participle in <i>dŭs</i> | 172 |
| LXV. First Conjugation | 174 |
| LXVI. Second Conjugation | 175 |
| LXVII. Third Conjugation | 176 |
| LXVIII. Fourth Conjugation | 177 |
| LXIX. Verbs with the Dative.—Indirect Object | 178 |
| LXX. Deponent Verbs | 180 |
| LXXI. Irregular Verbs.— <i>Possě, Vellě, Nollě, Mallě</i> | 182 |
| LXXII. Irregular Verbs, continued.— <i>Ferrě, Fiěri</i> | 185 |
| LXXIII. Irregular Verbs, continued.— <i>Irě, Eděre</i> | 189 |
| LXXIV. Periphrastic Conjugations | 191 |
| LXXV. Impersonal Verbs | 193 |
| LXXVI. Impersonal Periphrastic | 195 |
| LXXVII. Impersonal Passive Verbs.—Prepositions | 197 |
| LXXVIII. Conjunctions | 199 |
| LXXIX. Subjunctive Mood with <i>ŭt, ně, quō</i> | 201 |

| Lesson. | Page. |
|---|-------|
| LXXX. Subjunctive with <i>quōmīnūs</i> , <i>quīn</i> , and other Conjunctions | 203 |
| LXXXI. Interrogative Sentences | 205 |
| LXXXII. Conditional Sentences.—Subjunctive in Relative Clauses and with <i>quīm</i> | 207 |
| LXXXIII. Participles | 209 |
| LXXXIV. Participles, continued | 212 |
| LXXXV. Derivation of Nouns | 215 |
| LXXXVI. Derivation of Adjectives | 217 |
| LXXXVII. Derivation of Verbs and Adverbs | 219 |
| LXXXVIII. Composition of Words | 222 |

PARADIGMS, &c.

| | |
|---|-----|
| 1. Nouns.—Endings of Genitive Singular | 227 |
| 2. Gender | 227 |
| 3. First Declension | 227 |
| 4. Second Declension | 228 |
| 5. Third Declension | 229 |
| 6. Fourth Declension | 232 |
| 7. Fifth Declension | 233 |
| 8. Case-Endings of Substantives | 233 |
| 9. Table of Genders | 234 |
| 10. Adjectives.—First and Second Declension | 235 |
| 11. Third Declension | 236 |
| 12. Comparison of Adjectives | 238 |
| 13. Numerals | 238 |
| 14. Substantive Pronouns | 239 |
| 15. Adjective Pronouns | 239 |
| 16. Verbs.— <i>Essē</i> | 241 |
| 17. Infinitive Endings | 243 |
| 18. First Conjugation | 243 |
| 19. Second Conjugation | 245 |
| 20. Third Conjugation | 247 |
| 21. Fourth Conjugation | 250 |
| 22. Formation of Second Root | 252 |
| 23. Deponent Verbs | 252 |
| 24. Irregular Verbs | 252 |
| 25. Periphrastic Conjugations | 257 |
| 26. Impersonal Verbs | 257 |

SYNTAX.

| | |
|------------------------|--------------|
| Introduction | Page. 259 |
|------------------------|--------------|

CHAPTER I.

Essential Elements of Sentences.—Subject and Predicate.

| | |
|------------------------------|-----|
| Section I. Subject | 260 |
| “ II. Predicate | 260 |

CHAPTER II.

Subordinate Elements.—Modifiers.

| | |
|--|-----|
| Section I. Use of Modifiers | 262 |
| “ II. Modifiers of Nouns | 262 |
| “ III. Modifiers of Adjectives | 263 |
| “ IV. Modifiers of Verbs | 264 |
| “ “ § I. Objects | 265 |
| “ “ § II. Adverbial Modifiers | 268 |
| “ V. Modifiers of Adverbs | 271 |

CHAPTER III.

| | |
|--|-----|
| <i>Use of Moods, Participles, Gerunds, and Supines</i> | 271 |
| DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM | 275 |
| CAUTIONS | 277 |
| LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY | 279 |
| ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY | 291 |

EXPLANATIONS.

The small numerals above the line in the Exercises refer to *Differences of Idiom*, page 275 ; the small letters to *Cautions*, page 277.

The numerals enclosed in parentheses refer to articles in the body of the work.

In the Exercises, words connected by hyphens are to be rendered into Latin by a single word ; as, *natural-to-man*, *hūmānūs* ; *it-is*, *est*, &c.

INTRODUCTION.

PRONUNCIATION.

THE two Methods, the Continental and the English, which at present prevail in the pronunciation of Latin, differ from each other chiefly in the sounds of the vowels; we shall accordingly first state the settled principles in which they agree (as accent, quantity, &c.), and then present the vowel sounds of each separately, hoping, however, that, in this country, the Continental Method will soon commend itself to general favor. With the important merit of uniform consistency, it is, at the same time, the only pronunciation intelligible on the Continent of Europe, the very place where the American scholar will most need his Latin as a medium of communication.

I. LETTERS.

The Latin Language has six characters, or letters, representing vowel sounds, and nineteen representing consonant sounds.

REM. 1. The vowel sounds are *a, e, i, o, u*, and *y*; the consonants are the same as in English, with the omission of *w*, which is not used in Latin.

REM. 2. Two vowels sometimes unite in sound, and form a diphthong, as in English; e. g., *æ* in *Cæsar*.

REM. 3. *X* and *z** are called double consonants; *l, m, n*, and *r*, liquids, and the other consonants, with the exception of *h* and *s*, mutes.

* *X* is equivalent to *cs* or *gs*, and *z* to *ds*.

II. SYLLABLES.

In the pronunciation of Latin, every word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs; thus the Latin words, *more*, *vice*, *acute*, and *persuade*, are pronounced, not as the same words are in English, but with their vowel sounds all heard in separate syllables; thus, *mo-re*, *vi-ce*, *a-cu-te*, *per-sua-de*.

III. QUANTITY.

Syllables are, in *quantity* or *length*, either *long*, *short*, or *common* (i. e. sometimes long and sometimes short).

1. A syllable is *long* in quantity:

1) When it contains a *diphthong*, as the first syllable of *cædo*.

2) When its vowel is followed by *j*, *x*, *z*, or any *two consonants*, except a *mute* followed by a *liquid*; as the second syllables of *erexit* and *magister*.

2. A syllable is *short*, when its vowel is followed by another vowel, or a diphthong, as the second syllable of *indies*.

REM. The letter *h* does not affect the quantity of the preceding vowel.

The quantity of syllables, when not determined by these rules, will be indicated in the vocabularies (and, in some instances, in the exercises) by the dash — when *long*, by the curve ~ when *short*, and by the two together ≈ when *common*.

IV. ACCENTUATION.

1. The primary (or principal) accent, or stress of voice, is placed:

1) In words of two syllables, always on the first; as, *hó'mo*, a man.

2) In words of more than two syllables, on the *penult* (the last syllable but one), if that is *long* in quantity; otherwise on the *antepenult* (the last syllable but two); as, *rūdi'cis*, *con'sūlis*.

2. An additional accent is placed on each second syllable preceding the *primary* accent; as, *dē'monstrātūr*.

V. SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

I. THE CONTINENTAL METHOD.*

1. *The Sounds of the Vowels.*

The Continental sounds of the vowels are as follows:—

| | | |
|-------------|---|------------------------------|
| a | ä in <i>father</i> ; e. g., | ārīs. |
| e | { 1. ā in <i>made</i> ; e. g., ēdīt. 2. ě in <i>met</i> ; e. g., | āmět. |
| i | | ē in <i>me</i> ; e. g., īrě. |
| o | { 1. ō in <i>no</i> ; e. g., ōră. 2. ȝ in <i>nor</i> ; e. g., | ămȝr. |
| u | | ô in <i>do</i> ; e. g., ūnă. |
| y | ē in <i>me</i> ; e. g., | nȳmphă. |

REM. *Y* is used only in words derived from the Greek.

These sounds are uniformly the same in all situations, except as modified by *quantity* and *accent*, (III. and IV.)

2. *The Sounds of the Diphthongs.*

| | | |
|---------------|---------------------------|--------------|
| æ and œ . . . | ā in <i>made</i> ; e. g., | ætās, cœlŭm. |
| au . . . | ou in <i>out</i> ; e. g., | aurŭm. |

REM. The vowels in *ei* and *eu* are generally pronounced separately

* For the Continental Pronunciation the editor is indebted to the kindness of Mr. Géorge W. Greene, Instructor in Modern Languages in Brown University.

3. *The Sounds of the Consonants.*

The pronunciation of the consonants is nearly the same as in English, though it varies somewhat in different countries.

II. THE ENGLISH METHOD.

1. *The Sounds of the Vowels* *

In the English method, the vowels generally have the long or short English sounds: the length of the sound, however, is not dependent upon the quantity of the vowel, but must be determined by its situation or accent.

(a) In all *monosyllables*, vowels have

1) The *long* sound if at the end of the word; as, *si*, *re*.

2) The *short* sound if followed by a consonant; as, *sit*, *rem*; except *post*, *monosyllables* in *es*, and *plural cases* in *os*; as, *hos* (a plural case).

(b) In an *accented penult*, vowels have

1) The *long* sound before a vowel, diphthong, single consonant, or a mute followed by *l*, *r*, or *h*; as, *deus*, *pater*, *patres*; except *tibi* and *sibi*.

2) The *short* sound before a double consonant, or any two single consonants except a mute followed by *l*, *r*, or *h*; as, *bellum*, *rex*it.

(c) In any *accented syllable* except the penult, vowels have

1) The *long* sound before a vowel or diphthong; as *e* in *eadem*.

* The system of vowel sounds here presented is the same as that given in Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, and, like that, is based upon Walker's Key to the Pronunciation of Greek and Latin Proper Names. The *rules*, however, unlike those of Andrews and Stoddard, are so prepared as to show the sounds of the vowels, in all their various situations, independently of the division of words into syllables. This, it is hoped, will facilitate their application.

2) The *short* sound before a consonant, as *o* in *dēminus*: except,

a) *U* before a single consonant, or a mute followed by *r* or *h* (and perhaps *l*); as, *Pūnicus*, *salūbritas*.

b) *A*, *e*, and *o*, before a single consonant (or a mute before *l*, *r*, or *h*), followed by *e* or *i* before another vowel; as, *dóceo*, *úcria*.

(d) In all *unaccented syllables*, vowels have the *short* sound; as, *cantámus*, *vígilat*: except,

1) Final *a* in words of more than one syllable. This has the sound of *ah*, as in the word *America*; e. g., *musa* (*musah*).

2) Final syllables in *i* (except *tibi* and *sibi*), *es*, and *os*, in *plural cases*; as, *hómini*, *dies*, *illos* (a plural case).

3) The first syllable of words accented on the second, when the first either begins with an *i* followed by a single consonant, or contains *i* before a vowel; as, *diébus*, *irátus*.

REM. *E*, *o*, and *u*, unaccented before a vowel, diphthong, a single consonant, or a mute followed by *l*, *r*, or *h*, are not quite as short in sound as the other vowels in the same situations.

2. The Sounds of the Diphthongs.

Æ and œ, like *e* in the same situation; e. g., *Cæsar*, *Dædalus*.

Au, as in the English, *author*; e. g., *aurum*.

Eu, " " *neuter*; e. g., *neuter* (both Eng. and Latin).

Ei, as in the English, *height*; e. g., *dein*.

Oi, " " *coin*; e. g., *proin*.

REM. 1. The vowels in *ei* and *oi* are generally pronounced separately.

REM. 2. A few other combinations seem sometimes to be used as

diphthongs. *U* is always the first element of these combinations, and has then the sound of *w*; as, *suade* = swade: except, *Ui* in *huic*, and *cui*, which has the sound of long *i*.

3. *The Sounds of the Consonants.*

The consonants are pronounced nearly as in English; *c* and *g*, however, are soft before *e*, *i*, and *y*, and the diphthongs *æ* and *œ*, and hard in other situations: *ch* is always hard, like *k*; as, *charta* (*kartah*).

FIRST LATIN BOOK.

LESSON I.

Parts of Speech.—Proposition.—Subject.—Predicate.

1. IN Latin, as in English, words are divided, according to their use, into eight classes, called *Parts of Speech*, viz.: *Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.*

2. These parts of speech, either singly or combined, form *propositions* or *sentences*; as, *āmās*, thou lovest; *puēr lūdīt*, the boy plays.

3. Every proposition, however simple, consists of two parts: (1.) the *subject*, or the person or thing of which it speaks; and, (2.) the *predicate*, or that which is said of the subject: thus, in the proposition, *puēr lūdīt*, *puēr* (the boy) is the subject of which the proposition speaks, and *lūdīt* (plays) is the predicate which is affirmed of the subject.

4. In Latin the subject is often omitted, because the form of the predicate shows what subject is meant; thus the proposition *āmās*, thou lovest, consists in Latin of a single word, because the ending *ās*, of *āmās*, shows (as we shall see by and by) that the subject cannot be *I, he, or they*, but must be *thou*.

5. When a proposition thus consists of a single word, that word is always a *verb*; e. g., *āmāt*, he loves.

6. The *analysis* of a proposition consists in separating it into its elements.

EXAMPLE 1.—Proposition, *Puēr* (the boy) *lūdīt* (plays).

Puēr (the boy) is the *subject*, because it is that of which the proposition speaks (3). *Lūdīt* (plays) is the *predicate*, because it is that which is said of the subject (3).

EXAMPLE 2.—Proposition, *Amās* (thou lovest).

Amās is the *predicate*, because it is that which is said of the subject. *Thou*, the subject in English, is omitted in Latin, because the ending *ās*, of the predicate *āmās*, fully implies it.

7. Exercise in Analysis.*

Puellă (the girl) *cantăt* (sings). *Puēr* (the boy) *lūdēt* (will play). *Pătēr* (the father) *vīdēbīt* (will see). *Mătēr* (the mother) *rīdēbăt* (was laughing). *Currēbăt* (he was running). *Cantābīt* (he will sing). *Lūdēbăt* (he was playing). *Arābăt* (he was ploughing).

LESSON II.

Verbs.—First Conjugation.

8. A VERB expresses *existence, condition, or action* (generally the *existence, condition, or action* of some person).

* These propositions are to be analyzed according to the examples just given. The object is twofold: first, to fix definitely the distinction between *subject* and *predicate*; and, secondly, to show the learner that when the subject is a personal pronoun (English, *I, thou, he, &c.*), it is generally omitted in Latin. The use of the pronoun to express *emphasis* or *contrast* will be considered in another place.

or *thing*, called its *subject*): as, *est*, he is; *dormĭt*, he sleeps (is sleeping, or is asleep); *ĕmĕt*, he loves.

9. When a verb expresses simply its *meaning*, without reference to any person or thing, as *ĕmĕrĕ*, to love, it is said to be in the *Infinitive Mood*.

10. When a verb expresses its meaning in the form of an *assertion* or *question*, referring to its subject, as *ĕmĕt*, he loves, it is said to be in the *Indicative Mood*.*

11. A verb may represent its subject,

- 1) As acting in *present* time; as, *ĕmĕt*, he loves. It is then said to be in the *Present Tense*.
- 2) As acting in *past* time; as, *ĕmĕbĕt*, he was loving. It is then said to be in the *Imperfect Tense*.
- 3) As acting in *future* time (i. e., about to act); as, *ĕmĕbĭt*, he will love. It is then said to be in the *Future Tense*.*

12. A verb may represent its subject,

- 1) As *speaking of himself*; as, *ĕmĕ*, I love, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *First Person*.
- 2) As *spoken to*; as, *ĕmĕs*, thou lovest, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *Second Person*.
- 3) As *spoken of*; as, *ĕmĕt*, he loves, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *Third Person*.

13. A verb may represent its subject,

- 1) As consisting of *only one* person or thing; as, *ĕmĕt*, he, she, or it loves, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *Singular Number*.

* The other *moods* and *tenses* will be noticed in another place.

- 2) As consisting of *more than one* person or thing; as, *ămant*, they love; and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *Plural Number*
14. Every verb consists of two parts, viz.:
- 1) *The Root*, or that part of the verb which remains unchanged throughout the various moods, tenses, numbers, and persons; as, *ăm* in *ămără*, *ămă*, *ămăt*, and *ămăbăt*.
 - 2) *The Endings* which are added to this root, to form the moods, tenses, numbers, and persons; thus, in the forms just noticed—viz., *ămără*, *ămă*, *ămăt*, and *ămăbăt*—the endings are, *ără*, *ă*, *ăt*, and *ăbăt*.
15. Some verbs have the *infinitive* in *ără*; as, *ămără*, to love. These are said to be of

The First Conjugation.

16. In verbs of this conjugation,
- 1) The root is found by dropping the infinitive ending *ără*; as, *ămără*; root, *ăm*.
 - 2) The *third persons singular* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future tenses* of the *indicative* are formed by adding to this root the following *endings*:

| <i>Present.</i> | <i>Imperfect.</i> | <i>Future.</i> |
|-----------------|-------------------|----------------|
| ăt, | ăbăt, | ăbăt. |

PARADIGM.

Amără, to love: root, *ăm*.

| | | |
|------------|----------|---------------------------------------|
| Present. | Am-ăt, | he, she, or it loves (or, is loving). |
| Imperfect. | Am-ăbăt, | “ “ “ was loving. |
| Future. | Am-ăbăt, | “ “ “ will love (will be loving). |

17. VOCABULARY.

| <i>Latin.</i> | <i>Meaning.</i> | <i>Key-words.*</i> |
|---------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| Amarē, | to love | (amorous). |
| Arārē, | to plough | (arable). |
| Cantārē, | to sing | (canto). |
| Lābōrārē, | to labor | (labor). |
| Vigilārē, | to watch | (vigilant). |

18. *Exercise.*

1. Labōrat.† 2. Cantat. 3. Arat. 4. Arābat.
 5. Amābat. 6. Vigilābat. 7. Vigilābit. 8. Cantābit.
 9. Laborābit. 10. Vigīlat. 11. Laborābat. 12. Amā-
 bit. 13. Amat. 14. Cantābat. 15. Arābit.

LESSON III.

First Conjugation—continued.

19. VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|-----------|-----------|---------------|
| Ambulārē, | to walk | (ambulatory). |
| Jūrārē, | to swear. | |
| Pūgnārē, | to fight | (pugnacious). |
| Saltārē, | to dance. | |
| Spērārē, | to hope. | |
| Vōcārē, | to call | (vocation). |

* These Key-words, derived from the Latin, are introduced partly as a key or help to the learner, in fixing the meaning of the Latin, and partly as specimens of English derivatives of Latin origin.

† The subject of each of these verbs may be, in English, either *he*, *she*, or *it*. The ending, *at*, shows the number and person of the subject, but not its gender (see Paradigm). When the subject is thus omitted in Latin, we can usually determine from the connection which subject to use, just as in English we determine the meaning of the pronoun *they*, which may represent either *things* or *persons*, and either *males* or *females*. In these exercises the pupil may use *he* as the subject.

20. In English, the *tenses*, *numbers*, and *persons* of verbs are indicated by certain *words* or *signs*; as,

| <i>Present.</i> | <i>Imperfect.</i> | <i>Future.</i> |
|------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| <i>He loves,</i> | <i>He was loving,</i> | <i>He will love.</i> |

In Latin, however, no such *signs* are used; but their place is supplied by the *endings* of the verb. Hence, in translating English into Latin, omit these signs and express the *tense*, *number*, and *person* of the verb by the *proper endings*; e. g.:

| | <i>Present.</i> | <i>Imperfect.</i> | <i>Future.</i> |
|------|------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| Eng. | <i>He loves,</i> | <i>He was loving,</i> | <i>He will love.</i> |
| Lat. | <i>Amat,</i> | <i>Amābat,</i> | <i>Amābit.</i> |

21. Exercises.

(a) 1. Saltat. 2. Cantat. 3. Ambūlat. 4. Ambulābat. 5. Jurābat. 6. Vocābat. 7. Sperābat. 8. Sperābit. 9. Ambulābit. 10. Saltābit. 11. Jurat. 12. Cantābat. 13. Vocat. 14. Laborābat. 15. Jurābit.

(b) 1. He calls. 2. He is ploughing. 3. He hopes. 4. He swears. 5. He is laboring. 6. He was laboring. 7. He was walking. 8. He was dancing. 9. He was singing. 10. He was ploughing. 11. He will plough. 12. He will call. 13. He will swear. 14. He will hope. 15. He will labor. 16. He is walking. 17. He was hoping. 18. He will walk. 19. He dances. 20. He was fighting. 21. He will sing.

LESSON IV.

Verbs.—Second Conjugation.

22. SOME Verbs have the *infinitive* in *ērē*; as, *mōnērē*, to advise. These are said to be of

The Second Conjugation.

23. In verbs of this conjugation,

- 1) The root is found by dropping the infinitive ending *ērē* ; as, *mōnērē* ; root, *mōn*.
- 2) The *third persons singular* of the *present, imperfect, and future tenses* of the *indicative* are formed by adding to this root the following *endings*:

| <i>Present.</i> | <i>Imperfect.</i> | <i>Future.</i> |
|-----------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <i>ēt,</i> | <i>ēbāt,</i> | <i>ēbīt.</i> |

PARADIGM.

Mōnērē, to advise: root, *mōn*.

| | | |
|------------|------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Present. | <i>Mōn-ēt,</i> | he, she, or it advises (is advising). |
| Imperfect. | <i>Mōn-ēbāt,</i> | “ “ “ was advising. |
| Future. | <i>Mōn-ēbīt,</i> | “ “ “ will advise. |

24. VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Dōcērē,</i> | to teach | (<i>docile</i>). |
| <i>Dōlērē,</i> | to grieve | (<i>doleful</i>). |
| <i>Flērē,</i> | to weep. | |
| <i>Mānērē,</i> | to remain. | |
| <i>Mōvērē,</i> | to move | (<i>move</i>). |
| <i>Nērē,</i> | to spin. | |
| <i>Respondērē,</i> | to answer | (<i>respond</i>). |
| <i>Ridērē,</i> | to laugh | (<i>ridicule</i>). |
| <i>Timērē,</i> | to fear, to be afraid | (<i>timid</i>). |

25. *Exercises.*

- (a) 1. *Ridet.* 2. *Docet.* 3. *Respondet.* 4. *Dolet.*
 5. *Dolēbat.* 6. *Nebat.* 7. *Flebat.* 8. *Manēbat.* 9. *Movēbat.*
 10. *Movēbit.* 11. *Dolēbit.* 12. *Docēbit.* 13. *Respondēbit.*
 14. *Ridēbit.* 15. *Movet.* 16. *Docēbat.* 17. *Manēbit.*
 18. *Flet.* 19. *Ridēbat.* 20. *Nebit.*

21. Pugnāt. 22. Manet. 23. Pugnābat. 24. Manēbat. 25. Pugnābit. 26. Manēbit. 27. Cantat. 28. Timet. 29. Saltābat. 30. Respondēbat. 31. Ambulābit. 32. Timēbit. 33. Labōrat. 34. Movet. 35. Saltābat. 36. Docēbat. 37. Vocābit. 38. Dolēbit.

(b) 1. He remains. 2. He moves. 3. He weeps. 4. He spins. 5. He was spinning. 6. He was laughing. 7. He was teaching. 8. He was grieving. 9. He was answering. 10. He will answer. 11. He will weep. 12. He will remain. 13. He will spin. 14. He is laughing. 15. He was weeping. 16. He will teach. 17. He teaches. 18. He was moving. 19. He will laugh.

20. He dances. 21. He laughs. 22. He was calling. 23. He was weeping. 24. He walks. 25. He answers. 26. He was ploughing. 27. He was laughing. 28. He will sing. 29. He will move.

LESSON V.

Verbs.—Third Conjugation.

26. SOME verbs have the *infinitive* in *ĕrĕ*; as, *rĕgĕrĕ*, to rule. These are said to be of

The Third Conjugation.

27. In verbs of this conjugation,

- 1) The *root* is found by dropping the infinitive ending *ĕrĕ*; as, *rĕgĕrĕ*; root, *rĕg*.
- 2) The *third persons singular* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future tenses* of the *indicative* are formed by adding to this root the following endings:

| <i>Present.</i> | <i>Imperfect.</i> | <i>Future.</i> |
|-----------------|-------------------|----------------|
| īt, | ēbāt, | ēt. |

PARADIGM.

| Rĕgĕrĕ, to rule : root, <i>rĕg</i> . | | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------|-----------------------------------|--|
| Present. | Rĕg-īt, | he, she, or it rules (is ruling). | |
| Imperfect. | Rĕg-ēbāt, | " " " was ruling. | |
| Future. | Rĕg-ēt, | " " " will rule. | |

28. VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|-----------|----------|--------------------------------------|
| Bibĕrĕ, | to drink | (<i>bibber ; as, wine-bibber</i>). |
| Cādĕrĕ, | to fall | (<i>cadence</i>). |
| Currĕrĕ, | to run | (<i>current</i>). |
| Discĕrĕ, | to learn | (<i>disciple</i>). |
| Lĕgĕrĕ, | to read | (<i>legible</i>). |
| Lūdĕrĕ, | to play | (<i>ludicrous</i>). |
| Scribĕrĕ, | to write | (<i>scribe, scribble</i>). |

29. Exercises.

(a) 1. Ludit. 2. Currit. 3. Discit. 4. Discēbat. 5. Scribēbat. 6. Bibēbat. 7. Bibet. 8. Cadet. 9. Leget. 10. Legit. 11. Currēbat. 12. Scribet. 13. Scribit. 14. Ludēbat. 15. Discet.

16. Labōrat. 17. Movet. 18. Cadit. 19. Vocābat. 20. Ridēbat. 21. Legēbat. 22. Sperat. 23. Dolet. 24. Bibit. 25. Jurābat. 26. Flebat. 27. Cadēbat. 28. Arābit. 29. Respondēbit. 30. Ludet.

(b) 1. He writes. 2. He drinks. 3. He falls. 4. He was falling. 5. He was reading. 6. He was playing. 7. He will play. 8. He will run. 9. He will learn. 10. He learns. 11. He was writing. 12. He will read. 13. He is playing. 14. He was running. 15. He will fall.

16. He is fighting. 17. He fears. 18. He reads. 19. He was singing. 20. He was spinning. 21. He was learning. 22. He will labor. 23. He will main. 24. He will write.

LESSON VI.

Verbs.—Fourth Conjugation.

30. SOME verbs have the infinitive in *īrě*; as, *audīrě*, to hear. These are said to be of

The Fourth Conjugation.

31. In verbs of this conjugation,

- 1) The *root* is found by dropping the infinitive ending *īrě*; as, *audīrě*; root, *aud*.
- 2) The *third persons singular* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses of the *indicative* are formed by adding to this root the following *endings*:

| <i>Present.</i> | <i>Imperfect.</i> | <i>Future.</i> |
|-----------------|-------------------|----------------|
| īt, | iēbāt, | iēt. |

PARADIGM.

Audīrě, to hear: root, *aud*.

| | | |
|------------|------------|------------------------------------|
| Present. | Aud-īt, | he, she, or it hears (is hearing). |
| Imperfect. | Aud-iēbāt, | “ “ “ was hearing. |
| Future. | Aud-iēt, | “ “ “ will hear. |

32. VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|------------|-------------|-----------------------|
| Audīrě, | to hear | (<i>audible</i>). |
| Custōdirě, | to guard | (<i>custody</i>). |
| Dormīrě, | to sleep | (<i>dormant</i>). |
| Erūdīrě, | to instruct | (<i>erudition</i>). |
| Scīrě, | to know | (<i>science</i>). |
| Sītīrě, | to thirst. | |
| Vēnīrě, | to come. | |

33. *Exercises.*

- (a) 1. Custōdit. 2. Erūdit. 3. Sitit. 4. Sitiēbat.
 5. Veniēbat. 6. Sciēbat. 7. Sciet. 8. Audiet. 9.
 Dormiet. 10. Dormit. 11. Erudiēbat. 12. Custodiet.
 13. Venit. 14. Audiēbat. 15. Erudiet.

16. Ambūlat. 17. Docet. 18. Currit. 19. Audit
20. Cantābat. 21. Ridēbat. 22. Ludēbat. 23. Dormiē-
bat. 24. Saltābit. 25. Nebit. 26. Discet. 27. Veniet.

(b) 1. He thirsts. 2. He knows. 3. He guards. 4.
He was guarding. 5. He was instructing. 6. He was
coming. 7. He will come. 8. He will hear. 9. He
will thirst. 10. He will know. 11. He hears. 12.
He was thirsting. 13. He will instruct. 14. He sleeps.
15. He was hearing. 16. He will guard.

17. He walks. 18. He spins. 19. He runs. 20. He
comes. 21. He was dancing. 22. He was teaching.
23. He was writing. 24. He was sleeping. 25. He will
sing. 26. He will laugh. 27. He will play. 28. He
will instruct. 29. He labors. 30. He was weeping.
31. He will learn. 32. He will sleep.

LESSON VII.

Verbs.—Four Conjugations.—Plural Number.

34. THE *Four Conjugations* already noticed contain
all the *regular* verbs of the Latin language: hence,

- 1) In any *regular* verb, the *root* is found by drop-
ping the infinitive ending of the conjugation
to which it belongs. These endings in the four
conjugations are as follows:

| <i>Conj. I.</i> | <i>Conj. II.</i> | <i>Conj. III.</i> | <i>Conj. IV. °</i> |
|-----------------|------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| āre, | ēre, | ere, | īre. |

a) These endings, it must be observed, differ from
each other only in the vowel before *re*, which is called
the *characteristic* vowel of the conjugation. The char-
acteristic vowels in the four conjugations are as follows:

| | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| <i>Conj. I.</i> | <i>Conj. II.</i> | <i>Conj. III.</i> | <i>Conj. IV.</i> |
| ā, | ē, | ě, | ī. |

REM.—These vowels occur so frequently in their respective conjugations, that they are called *favorite vowels* of the conjugations. The third conjugation has also *ī* as a *favorite vowel*, as in the present ending, *īt*; e. g., *rēgīt*, he rules.

- 2) In any *regular verb*, the *third persons singular* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses of the *indicative* are formed by adding to the root the endings of the conjugation to which the verb belongs. These endings in the four conjugations are as follows:

| | <i>Pres.</i> | <i>Imperf.</i> | <i>Fut.</i> |
|----------|--------------|----------------|-------------|
| Conj. I. | āt, | abāt, | abīt. |
| II. | ēt, | ebāt, | ebīt. |
| III. | īt, | ebāt, | ēt. |
| IV. | īt, | iēbāt, | iēt. |

35. In any *regular verb*, the *third persons plural*, in the tenses already noticed, are formed by simply inserting *n* before *t* in the *endings* of the *third singular*.

Exc.—If *ī* immediately precedes *t*, it must be changed, in the fourth conjugation, into *iu*; as, *audīt*, he hears; *audiunt*, they hear: and in the other conjugations into *u*; as, *amābīt*, he will love; *amābunt*, they will love.

PARADIGM.

| | | <i>Present.</i> | <i>Imperfect.</i> | <i>Future.</i> |
|----------|---------|-----------------|-------------------|----------------|
| Conj. I. | { Sing. | Am-āt, | ām-abāt, | ām-abīt. |
| | { Plur. | Am-ant, | ām-abant, | ām-abunt. |
| II. | { Sing. | Mōn-ēt, | mōn-ebāt, | mōn-ebīt. |
| | { Plur. | Mōn-ent, | mōn-ebant, | mōn-ebunt. |
| III. | { Sing. | Rēg-īt, | rēg-ebāt, | rēg-ēt. |
| | { Plur. | Rēg-unt, | rēg-ebant, | rēg-ent. |
| IV. | { Sing. | Aud-īt, | aud-iēbāt, | aud-iēt. |
| | { Plur. | Aud-iunt, | aud-iēbant, | aud-ient. |

36. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Saltat. 2. Saltant. 3. Ambulābat. 4. Ambulābant. 5. Arābit. 6. Arābunt. 7. Docet. 8. Docent. 9. Timēbat. 10. Timēbant. 11. Ridēbit. 12. Ridēbunt. 13. Ludit. 14. Ludunt. 15. Scribēbat. 16. Scribēbant. 17. Curret. 18. Current. 19. Dormit. 20. Dormiunt. 21. Veniēbat. 22. Veniēbant. 23. Custodiet. 24. Custodient. 25. Vocant. 26. Dolent. 27. Discunt. 28. Sciunt. 29. Saltābunt. 30. Movēbant. 31. Legēbant. 32. Erudiēbant. 33. Jurābunt. 34. Manēbunt. 35. Cadent. 36. Sitient.

(b) 1. He sings. 2. They sing. 3. He was swearing. 4. They were swearing. 5. He will labor. 6. They will labor. 7. He laughs. 8. They laugh. 9. He was spinning. 10. They were spinning. 11. He will remain. 12. They will remain. 13. He runs. 14. They run. 15. He was playing. 16. They were playing. 17. He will drink. 18. They will drink. 19. He knows. 20. They know. 21. He was guarding. 22. They were guarding. 23. He will hear. 24. They will hear. 25. They walk. 26. They answer. 27. They write. 28. They sleep. 29. They were ploughing. 30. They were teaching. 31. They were learning. 32. They were instructing. 33. They will sing. 34. They will weep. 35. They will read. 36. They will come.

LESSON VIII.*Nouns.—Nominative Case.*

37. IN Latin, as in English, all names, whether of persons, places, or things, are called *Nouns*; as, *Cæsār*, *puēr*, a boy, &c.

REM. 1.—Names of *individual* persons or objects are called *proper nouns*; as, *Cæsār*; *Rōmā*, Rome.

REM. 2.—Names applicable to persons or objects, not as *individuals*, but as *members of a class*, are called *common nouns*; as, *ēquūs*, a horse (a name applicable to all animals of this class).

38. All nouns have *gender, number, person, and case*.

39. The *Gender* of a noun is either *masculine, feminine, common, or neuter*.

40. In Latin, as in English, all nouns denoting objects which have sex, except such names of animals as are applicable to both sexes, are,

- 1) *Masculine*, when they denote *male* beings; as, *hōmīnēs*, men; *puēr*, a boy; *leōnēs*, lions.
- 2) *Feminine*, when they denote *female* beings; as, *mūliēr*, a woman; *puellā*, a girl; *leōnā*, a lioness.
- 3) *Common*, when they apply alike to both sexes; as, *pārens*, a parent (either *male* or *female*); *testīs*, a witness (either *male* or *female*).

41. When gender is employed to denote sex, as in the cases just noticed, it is called *natural gender*.

42. In nouns denoting objects without sex (*neuter in English*), and in most names applicable to animals of both sexes, the gender in Latin is entirely independent of sex, and is accordingly called *grammatical gender*.

Some of these nouns are grammatically masculine; some, grammatically feminine; and some, grammatically neuter.

43. The grammatical gender of nouns is determined *partly* by their *signification*, but *principally* by their *endings*.

44. The general rules for ascertaining the grammatical gender of nouns, independently of their endings, are:

- 1) Most names of *rivers, winds, and months* are masculine; as, *Rhēnūs*, the Rhine; *austēr*, the south wind; *Aprīlis*, April.
- 2) Most names of *countries, towns, islands, and trees* are feminine; as *Ægyptūs*, Egypt; *Rōmā*, Rome; *Dēlōs*, name of an island; *laurūs*, the laurel-tree.
- 3) *Indeclinable nouns,** and *clauses used as nouns*, are neuter; as, *fūs*, right; *nihil*, nothing.

Gender, as determined by the endings of nouns, will be noticed in connection with the several declensions.

45. The *Numbers* and *Persons* are the same in Latin as in English. The *first* person denotes the *speaker*; the *second*, the *person spoken to*; and the *third*, the *person spoken of*. The singular number denotes one; and the plural, more than one.

46. The *Cases* of Latin nouns are six in number, viz.: *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative*.

47. The case of a noun is indicated by its ending; and the formation of its several cases is called *Declension*.

48. The *Nominative Case* corresponds to the *nominative* in English, both in name and use; e. g.,

Puēr lūdīt, the boy plays.

49. RULE OF SYNTAX.†—The subject of a finite (i. e. *not infinitive*) verb is put in the nominative.

REM. 1.—Thus, in the example, *puēr* is in the nominative by this rule.


REM. 2.—The subject stands before the verb, as in English.

* Such as have but one form for all cases and both numbers.

† Rules for the government and agreement of words are called *Rules of Syntax*.

50. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A finite verb must agree with its subject in *number* and *person*.

REM.—Thus, in the above example, *lūdit* is in the third person singular, to agree with its subject *puēr*.

 Determine which of the nouns in the following Vocabularies have *natural* gender, and which *grammatical*, and apply rules.

51. VOCABULARY.*

| | | |
|-------------------|---|----------------------|
| Caesār, <i>m.</i> | Caesar, <i>a celebrated Roman general.</i> | |
| Filiūs, <i>m.</i> | son | (<i>filial</i>). |
| Pătēr, <i>m.</i> | father | (<i>paternal</i>). |
| Puellā, <i>f.</i> | girl. | |
| Puēr, <i>m.</i> | boy | (<i>puerile</i>). |
| Vincērē, | to conquer, | (<i>vincible</i>). |

52. Exercises.

(a) 1. Pater† docet. 2. Puer ludit. 3. Filius discēbat. 4. Caesar vincēbat. 5. Puer veniet. 6. Puella cantābat. 7. Pater scribēbat.

(b) 1. The girl will learn. 2. The father will conquer. 3. The boy dances. 4. The son was learning. 5. The father was ploughing. 6. The boy was playing. 7. The girl will sing. 8. Caesar was coming.

* Gender is indicated in the Vocabularies by *m.* for *masculine*, *f.* for *feminine*, *c.* for *common*, and *n.* for *neuter*.

† As the Latin has no article, a noun may be translated, (1) without the article; as, *pătēr*, father: (2) with the indefinite article; as, *pătēr*, a father: (3) with the definite article; as, *pătēr*, the father.

LESSON IX.

Nouns.—Nominative Case—Continued.

53. VOCABULARY.*

| | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Aquă, <i>f.</i> | water | (aqueous). |
| Aquilă, <i>f.</i> | eagle | (aquiline). |
| Avīs, <i>f.</i> | bird. | |
| Cănis, <i>c.</i> | dog | (canine). |
| Equūs, <i>m.</i> | horse | (equestrian). |
| Filiă, <i>f.</i> | daughter | (filial). |
| Fluĕrĕ, | to flow | (fluent). |
| Hostīs, <i>c.</i> | enemy | (hostile). |
| Impĕrārĕ | to command | (imperative). |
| Măgīstĕr, | master, teacher | (magisterial). |
| Mătĕr, | mother | (maternal). |
| Mors, <i>f.</i> | death | (mortal). |
| Nūbĕs, <i>f.</i> | cloud. | |
| Rex, | king | (regal). |
| Servūs, <i>m.</i> | slave | (servant). |
| Vōlārĕ, | to fly | (volatile). |

54. Exercises.

(a) 1. Mors veniet. 2. Aquila volat. 3. Hostis veniēbat. 4. Nubes movet. 5. Aqua fluit. 6. Canis ludēbat. 7. Equus curret. 8. Magister erudiēbat. 9. Rex imperābat.

10. Avis volat. 11. Volant. 12. Servus pugnābit. 13. Pugnābant. 14. Puer timēbat. 15. Timēbant. 16. Puella discēbat. 17. Discēbant. 18. Filia dormiēbat. 19. Dormiēbant.

(b) 1. The bird will fly. 2. The eagle was flying. 3. The king will come. 4. The mother will teach. 5. The daughter will learn. 6. The dog will run. 7. The

* In this and the following Vocabularies, whenever the gender of a noun is not marked, the pupil is expected to determine it by the rules already given.

slave will swear. 8. Caesar was coming. 9. The slave is ploughing.

10. They were ploughing. 11. The king will conquer. 12. They are conquering. 13. The dog will come. 14. They were coming. 15. The girl is weeping. 16. They will weep. 17. The boy is singing. 18. They will laugh.

LESSON X.

Nouns.—Vocative Case.

55. THE same form* of the noun which is called the *nominative*, when *spoken of*, is called the *vocative*, when *spoken to*. This corresponds to the *nominative independent* in English; e. g.

| <i>Voc.</i> | <i>Nom.</i> |
|--------------------------------|--------------------|
| Pățēr, | puēr cādēt. |
| Father (or, <i>O father</i>), | the boy will fall. |

REM.—In very short sentences, like the above, the vocative may be placed either at the beginning or close; in other cases, however, it is generally preceded by one or more words in the sentence.

56. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The name of the person or thing addressed is put in the vocative.

REM.—The interjection *O* is sometimes used before the name addressed, both in Latin and English.

57. VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|-------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Agricōlă, | husbandman | (<i>agriculture</i>). |
| Balbūs, | Balbus, <i>a man's name</i> . | |
| Caiūs, | Caius, <i>a man's name</i> . | |
| Discipŭlŭs, | pupil | (<i>disciple</i>). |
| Mordērĕ, | to bite. | |

* A single exception will be noticed in another place.

| | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------|
| O (<i>interj.</i>), | O, <i>used in direct address.</i> | |
| Peccārē, | to sin | (<i>peccant</i>). |
| Rēginā, | queen. | |
| Sūrōr, | sister. | |

58. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Puer jurat. 2. *O mater*, puer jurat. 3. Puer
 udēbat. 4. Puer ludēbat, *magister*. 5. Rex saltābat.
 6. *O regīna*, rex saltābat. 7. Mater dolēbit. 8. *Soror*,
 mater dolēbit. 9. Canis mordēbit. 10. *O puer*, canis
 mordēbit.

11. Mors veniet. 12. Balbus jurābat. 13. Jurābunt.
 14. Agricōla arābit. 15. Arant. 16. Servus peccat.
 17. Peccābant. 18. Magister erudiet. 19. Hostis
 vincet. 20. Vincēbant. 21. Scient. 22. Discēbant.
 23. Puella legēbat. 24. Rex imperābat. 25. Nubes mo-
 vet. 26. Pugnābant. 27. Vincunt.

(b) 1. The king will conquer. 2. *O queen*, the king
 will conquer. 3. The slave was weeping. 4. *Father*,
 the slave was weeping. 5. The boy is swearing (*swears*).
 6. *Master*, the boy is swearing (*swears*). 7. The dog
 will bite. 8. *Brother*, the dog will bite. 9. They will
 dance. 10. *Mother*, they will dance. 11. The master
 will hear. 12. *Sister*, the master will hear. 13. The
 horse will run. 14. *Daughter*, the horse will run. 15.
 Death will come. 16. Death will come, *O king*.

17. Caius is ploughing. 18. They will plough. 19.
 Balbus was fighting. 20. They are fighting. 21. The
 girl was writing. 22. They will learn. 23. The pupil
 will learn. 24. The master is teaching. 25. The queen
 is weeping. 26. They will weep. 27. They were read-
 ing. 28. The eagle was flying. 29. The king will
 command. 30. The mother will teach. 31. The king
 is conquering. 32. The father will come.

LESSON XI.

Nouns.—Apposition.—Modified Subject.

59. THE subject of a proposition may have a noun denoting the same person or thing connected with it to explain or limit its meaning. The subject is then said to be *modified* by the limiting noun; e. g.

*Subject not modified.**Subject modified.*

1. Lătīnūs rēgnābāt. 2. Lătīnūs *rex* rēgnābāt.

Latinus was reigning. Latinus *the king* was reigning.

REM. 1.—*Rex*, in the above example, limits Lătīnūs; i. e. it shows that the predicate *rēgnābāt* is not affirmed of every one who may have borne the name Latinus, but only of Latinus *the king*. *Rex* is in the same case as the subject, i. e. *nominative*, and is said to be in *apposition* with it.

REM. 2.—The noun in apposition is generally placed after the noun which it limits, as in the above example; if, however, it is *emphatic*, it is placed before that noun.

60. VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|------------|---|------------------------------|
| Aurūm, | gold. | |
| Crescĕrĕ, | { to grow, to wax (as moon) } | (<i>crescent</i>). |
| Faustŭlŭs, | Faustulus, <i>an Italian shepherd.</i> | |
| Lătīnŭs, | Latinus, <i>a king of Latium.</i> | |
| Lavīniă, | Lavinia, <i>daughter of Latinus.</i> | |
| Lŭnă, | moon | (<i>lunar</i>). |
| Mĭcărĕ, | to glitter, to shine. | |
| Mĭlĕs, | soldier | (<i>military</i>). |
| Nŭmă, | Numa, <i>second king of Rome.</i> | |
| Pastŏr, | shepherd | (<i>pastor, pastoral</i>). |

| | | |
|-----------|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| Rēgnārē, | to reign | (<i>regnant, reign</i>). |
| Tulliā, | Tullia, | |
| | <i>a queen of Rome.</i> | |
| Victoriā, | Victoria, | |
| | <i>queen of England.</i> | |

61. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Balbus dormiēbat. 2. Balbus *servus* dormit.
3. Latīnus regnābat. 4. Latīnus *rex* vincēbat. 5. Tullia cantābat. 6. Tullia *regīna* saltābit. 7. Caius *pastor* cantābit.

8. Luna crescit. 9. Aurum micat. 10. Lavinia *regīna* regnābat. 11. Currēbant. 12. Current. 13. Pastor ridēbit. 14. Ridēbant. 15. Canis mordēbit. 16. Mordēbunt. 17. Puella nebit. 18. Nebunt.

(b) 1. Numa was reigning. 2. *King* Numa was reigning. 3. Faustus *a shepherd* was singing. 4. *Queen* Victoria was reigning.

5. The boy was ploughing. 6. They were playing. 7. They will write. 8. The queen was weeping. 9. They are weeping. 10. The soldier will fight. 11. The girl will learn. 12. The daughter is spinning. 13. They will spin. 14. The boy will fight. 15. They will fight.

LESSON XII.

Nouns.—Genitive Case.—Modified Subject.

62. NOUNS in Latin are declined in five different ways, and are accordingly divided into five classes, called *Declensions*, distinguished from each other by the following

GENITIVE ENDINGS.

| Dec. I. | Dec. II. | Dec. III. | Dec. IV. | Dec. V. |
|---------|----------|-----------|----------|---------|
| ae, | ī, | īs, | ūs, | ēī.* |

EXAMPLES.

| | <i>Nominative.</i> | <i>Genitive.</i> |
|---------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| Dec. I. | Mūsā, a muse, | mūsae, of a muse. |
| II. | Servūs, a slave, | servī, of a slave. |
| III. | Hōnōr, an honor, | hōnōris, of an honor. |
| IV. | Fructūs, a fruit, | fructūs, of a fruit. |
| V. | Diēs, a day, | diēī, of a day. |

REM.—The genitive endings are usually added to the word after the ending of the nominative is dropped; but, as this is not always the case, it becomes necessary, in order to decline a noun correctly, to know both the *nominative* and the *genitive*: accordingly, both these forms are given in the Vocabularies.

63. The *Genitive Case* expresses *possession*, and the *various relations* denoted by the preposition *of*, and accordingly corresponds both to the *English Possessive*, and the *English Objective* with *of*; as, *rēgīs cōrōnā*, the king's crown (or the crown of the king); *āmōr glōriæ*, the love of glory.

64. The subject of a proposition may have a noun denoting a *different person* or *thing* connected with it, to explain or limit its meaning. The subject is then said to be *modified* by such noun; e. g.

Subject not modified.

Subject modified.

1. Fīliūs rēgnābīt.

2. Rēgīs filiūs rēgnābīt.

The son will reign.

The son of the king will reign.

REM.—The genitive *rēgīs* (of the king), in the above example, modifies *filiūs* (the son); i. e. it shows that the predicate *rēgnābīt*

* In this ending *e* is long except in *spēī*, *fīdēī*, and *rēī*.

(will reign) is not affirmed of *every* son, but only of the son of *the king*.

a) In the example, the limiting genitive stands before the noun which it limits. This seems to be the more common order, when no *emphasis* is intended, though we often find it reversed.

b) If the noun which is limited by the genitive is *emphatic*, or is a *monosyllable*, it generally stands before the genitive; e. g.

1. Cicerō, pāter patriae.

Cicero, *the father* of (his) country.

2. Lex nātūrae.

The law of nature.

REM.—In the first example, *pāter* is emphatic, and in the second, *lex* is a monosyllable; they accordingly stand before their genitives.

65. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun limiting the meaning of another noun is put,

- 1) In the *same* case as that noun, when it denotes the *same* person or thing; e. g. *Lātīnūs rex*, Latinus the king (59, REM. 1).
- 2) In the *genitive*, when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g. *Rēgīs filiūs*, the son of the king.

66. VOCABULARY.*

| | | | |
|-----------|-----------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| Agriċolā, | Gen. āgriċolae, | husbandman | (<i>agriculture</i>) |
| Amīcūs, | “ āmīcī, | friend | (<i>amicable</i>). |
| Balbūs, | “ Balbī, | Balbus, a man's name. | |
| Caiūs, | “ Caiī, | Caius, a man's name. | |
| Cānīs, | “ cānīs, | dog | (<i>canine</i>). |
| Filiā, | “ filiae, | daughter. | |

* The genitive is given in the Vocabulary; and the pupil may determine from the genitive ending to which declension the noun belongs.

| | | | |
|----------|------------|-------------------------------|--------------|
| Filius, | Gen. fili, | son | (filial). |
| Frater, | " frātrīs, | brother | (fraternal). |
| Lātinus, | " Lātinī, | Latinus, a king of Latium. | |
| Milēs, | " militis, | soldier | (military). |
| Pāter, | " pātrīs, | father | (paternal). |
| Puēr, | " puērī, | boy | (puerile). |
| Rēginā, | " rēgīnae, | queen. | |
| Rex, | " rēgīs, | king | (regal). |
| Servus, | " servī, | slave | (servant). |
| Tullia, | " Tulliae, | Tullia, a queen of Rome. | |

67. Exercises.

(a) 1. Servus dormit. 2. *Balbi* servus dormiet. 3. Filius ludit. 4. *Regis* filius ludēbat. 5. *Regīnae* pater docēbat. 6. Filia ridēbat. 7. Filia *regīnae* ridēbat. 8. Amīcus *regis* cadet.

9. Balbus servus veniēbat. 10. *Balbi* servus dormit. 11. Pastor cantābit. 12. Canis *pastōris* mordēbit. 13. Mordēbunt. 14. Filia *pastōris* nebit. 15. *Regis* amīcus timēbit. 16. Caius, *regis* amīcus, timēbit. 17. Tullia, *regis* filia, cantābat.

(b) 1. The brother will conquer. 2. The king will conquer. 3. The brother of the king will conquer. 4. The daughter of the king is singing. 5. The queen will read. 6. The daughter of the queen will read. 7. The father of *Balbus* was laughing.

8. The shepherd's dog (the dog of the shepherd) will bite. 9. The boy's dog will bite. 10. The husband-man's dog will play. 11. The soldier will fight. 12. The son of the soldier will fight. 13. Latinus the king was conquering. 14. The shepherd's daughter (the daughter of the shepherd) is spinning.

LESSON XIII.

Nouns.—Accusative Case.—Direct Object of Predicate.

68. EVERY noun consists of two distinct parts, viz :—

- 1) The *Root*, or that part which remains *unchanged* throughout the various cases of both numbers, as *mūs* in *mūsā*, *mūsae*, and *mūsām*.
- 2) The *Endings*, which are added to the root to form these cases; thus, in the forms just noticed, viz., *mūsā*, *mūsae*, and *mūsām*, the endings are *ā*, *ae*, and *ām*.

69. In any noun, of whatever declension,

- 1) The *root* may be found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular (62); as, *mūsā*, Gen. *mūsae*; root, *mūs*: *servūs*, Gen. *servī*; root, *serv*: *hōnōr*, Gen. *hōnōrīs*; root, *hōnōr*, &c.
- 2) Any *case* may be formed (with a few exceptions) by adding to this root the proper ending.

70. 1) The *Accusative Singular* of *neuter* nouns is the same as the *Nominative*; e. g., Nom. *sceptrū*, a sceptre; Accus. *sceptrū*.

- 2) The *Accusative Singular* of *masculine* and *feminine* nouns is formed from the root, by adding one* of the following

ACCUSATIVE ENDINGS.

| Dec. I. | Dec. II. | Dec. III. | Dec. IV. | Dec. V. |
|---------|----------|-----------|----------|---------|
| ām, | ūm, | ēm, | ūm, | ēm. |

* If the noun is of the first declension, the learner will, of course, add the ending given for the first declension; if of the second, the ending given for the second; and so on.

EXAMPLES.

| <i>Genitive.</i> | <i>Root. Ending.</i> | <i>Accusative.</i> |
|------------------------------------|--|--------------------|
| Dec. I. Mūsae, <i>of a muse</i> ; | mūs -ā m; mūsām, <i>a muse</i> . | |
| II. Servi, <i>of a slave</i> ; | serv -ū m; servūm, <i>a slave</i> . | |
| III. Hōnōris, <i>of an honor</i> ; | hōnōr -ē m; hōnōrēm, <i>an honor</i> . | |
| IV. Fructūs, <i>of a fruit</i> ; | fruct -ū m; fructūm, <i>a fruit</i> . | |
| V. Diēi, <i>of a day</i> ; | di -ē m; diēm, <i>a day</i> . | |

71. The accusative case corresponds very *nearly* to the English objective, and is used after *transitive verbs* and *certain prepositions*.

72. When a verb represents its subject as acting upon some other person or thing, it is said to be *transitive*; and the person or thing upon which the action is exerted, is called its *direct object*; e. g.

Serviūs *impēriūm* administrāt.
(Servius the government administers.)
 Servius administers *the government*.

73. In English the object is placed after the verb; thus, *government* is placed after *administers*; but in Latin the object precedes the verb; thus, *impēriūm* precedes *administrāt*.

74. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The *Direct Object* of an action is put in the *accusative*.

75. VOCABULARY.

| | | | |
|-------------|-----------------|------------------|----------------------|
| Aedificārē, | | to build | (<i>edifice</i>). |
| Diēs, | Gen. diēi, | day. | |
| Dōmīnūs, | “ dōmīnī, | master, as owner | (<i>domineer</i>). |
| Epistolā, | “ epistolae, f. | letter | (<i>epistle</i>). |
| Laudārē, | | to praise | (<i>laud</i>). |
| Monstrārē, | | to show. | |
| Mors, | “ mortis, f. | death | (<i>mortal</i>). |

| | | | |
|-----------|---------------|--------------|-----------|
| Mūrūs, | Gen. mūrī, m. | wall | (mural). |
| Occidērē, | | to kill. | |
| Puellā, | " puellae, | girl. | |
| Sēnātūs, | " sēnātūs, m. | senate | (senate). |
| Sperārē, | | to hope for. | |
| Terrērē, | | to terrify. | |
| Timērē, | | to fear | (timid). |
| Viā, | " viae, f. | way, road. | |
| Vidērē, | | to see. | |
| Vitarē, | | to shun. | |

76. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caius *puellam* laudat. 2. Puer *murum* aedificābat. 3. Rex *puerum* ridet. 4. Puer *mortem* vitat. 5. Puella *diem* sperābat. 6. Puella *viam* monstrābit. 7. Servus *dominum* occīdit.

8. Puella *puerum* laudat. 9. Rex *senatum* timet. 10. Puer *canem* timēbit. 11. Epistolam scribit. 12. Puer *canem* occidēbat. 13. Mortem vitant. 14. Mortem timent. 15. Balbus servus *dominum* timēbit. 16. Balbum servum docent. 17. Balbi filius *puerum* laudābat.

(b) 1. The boy will show *the road*. 2. Balbus is building *a wall*. 3. Caius was praising *the boy*. 4. The slave is showing *the way*. 5. The king hopes for *the day*. 6. The girl will shun *the dog*.

7. The dog will bite the girl. 8. Father is writing a letter. 9. The father will praise the daughter. 10. They are building a wall. 11. They are killing the slave. 12. The king's son will play. 13. The king fears death. 14. The death of the father will terrify the son.

LESSON XIV.

Nouns.—Accusative, continued.—Adverbial Modifiers.

77. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Certain qualifying words, called *adverbs*, are often connected with verbs, merely to modify their meaning; e. g.,

1. *Milēs fortitēr pūgnāt.* 2. *Milēs nōn pūgnāt.*
 (*The soldier bravely fights.*) (*The soldier not fights.*)
 The soldier fights *bravely*. The soldier *does not* fight.

REM.—In these examples, *fortitēr* (bravely) and *nōn* (not) are adverbs modifying *pūgnāt*. In Latin the adverb generally precedes the verb, as in these instances.

78. VOCABULARY.*

| | | |
|--------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| Anguīs, anguīs, c. | snake, serpent. | |
| Christiānus, ī, m. | Christian | (<i>Christian</i>). |
| Fortitēr, | bravely. | |
| Lex, lēgis, f. | law | (<i>legal</i>). |
| Mātēr, mātris, | mother | (<i>maternal</i>). |
| Nēgligērē, | to disregard | (<i>neglect</i>). |
| Nōn, | not. | |
| Pastōr, pastōris, | shepherd | (<i>pastor</i>). |
| Pēcūniā, ae, f. | money | (<i>pecuniary</i>). |
| Serviūs, ī, | Servius, a man's name. | |
| Vox, vocis, f. | voice | (<i>vocal</i>). |

79. Exercises.

- (a) 1. *Servius pūgnat.* 2. *Servius fortitēr pūgnat.*
 3. *Mors Christiānum non† terret.* 4. *Agricōla anguem timēbit.*
 5. *Agricōla anguem non timēbit.* 6. *Pater*

* In this and the following Vocabularies, either the genitive or its ending is given immediately after each substantive.

† In translating *nōn* before a verb, place 'not' after the English tense-sign; thus, *nōn terrēt*, *does not terrify*, or *is not terrifying*.

filiam audiēbat. 7. Pater filii vocem audiēbat. 8. Mater vocem negliget. 9. Mater filiae vocem *non* negliget.

10. Caius legem negligēbat. 11. Christiānus pecuniam negliget. 12. Pecuniam negligēt. 13. Puērū docent. 14. Christiānus mortem non timet.

(b) 1. The husbandman will fight. 2. The husbandman will *not* fight. 3. Servius fears death. 4. Servius does *not* fear death. 5. The slave hears the voice of (his) master. 6. The boy was killing the dog. 7. The boy was killing the shepherd's dog. 8. The dog will *not* bite. 9. Servius will avenge the death of the king.

10. They do not fear death. 11. They will fight bravely. 12. Caius is teaching the boy. 13. The daughter of the queen is singing. 14. They did not hear (were not hearing). 15. They will not disregard the law.

LESSON XV.

Nouns.—Dative Case.—Indirect Object of Predicate.

80. THE *Dative Case* in Latin corresponds to the *objective* with *to* or *for* in English; as, *mūsā*, a muse; Dat. *mūsae*, *to* or *for* a muse.

81. The *Dative Singular* of a noun may be formed by adding to its root one of the following

DATIVE ENDINGS.

| Dec. I. | Dec. II. | Dec. III. | Dec. IV. | Dec. V. |
|---------|----------|-----------|----------|---------|
| ae, | ō, | ī, | uī,* | ēī.† |

* Neuter nouns of the fourth declension are exceptions, as they have the *dative singular* like the *nominative*.

† In this ending *e* is long except in *spēcī*, *fīdēcī*, and *rēcī*.

EXAMPLES.

| <i>Genitive.</i> | <i>Root. Ending.</i> | <i>Dative.</i> |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| Dec. I. Mūsae, <i>of a muse</i> ; | mūs - ae; | mūsae, <i>to or for a muse.</i> |
| II. Servi, <i>of a slave</i> ; | serv - ō; | servō, " " <i>a slave.</i> |
| III. Hōnōris, <i>of honor</i> ; | hōnōr - ī; | hōnōrī, " " <i>an honor.</i> |
| IV. Fructūs, <i>of fruit</i> ; | fruct - uī; | fructuī, " " <i>a fruit.</i> |
| V. Diēi, <i>of day</i> ; | di - ēi; | diēi, " " <i>a day.</i> |

82. The person or thing *to or for which* any thing is, or is done, is called an *indirect object*; e. g.,

Balbūs puērō viām monstrāt.
(Balbus to the boy the way shows.)
 Balbus shows the way *to the boy*.

REM.—In the example it will be observed that the *indirect object* precedes the *direct*. This is the more common order, though not unfrequently reversed.

83. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Any transitive verb may take the *accusative* of the *direct object* and the *dative* of the *indirect object*.

84. VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------|
| Accūsārē, | to accuse. | |
| Bellūm, ī, n. | war. | |
| Claudērē, | to shut | (close). |
| Condērē, | to found, to build. | |
| Dārē,* | to give. | |
| Dōmūs, dōmūs, or dōmī, f. | house | (domestic). |
| Evertērē, | to pull down, to overthrow. | |
| Indicērē, | to declare (as war). | |
| Leō, leōnis, m. | lion. | |
| Milēs, itis, m. (rarely f.), | soldier | (military). |

* *Dārē* is of the first conjugation, with *ā* short, contrary to the general rule.

| | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| Portā, ae, f. | gate | } (portal). (porter). |
| Rēpērīrē, | to find. | |
| Rōmūlus, ī, | Romulus, | |
| | <i>the founder of Rome.</i> | |
| Sceptrūm, ī, n. | sceptre. | |
| Urbs, īs, f. | city | (urbane). |

85. Exercises.

(a) 1. Pastor viam monstrat. 2. Pastor *puēro* viam monstrat. 3. Puer viam monstrābit. 4. Puer *pastōri* viam monstrābit. 5. Servus portam claudet. 6. Servus *regi* portam claudet.

7. Romūlus urbem condēbat. 8. Agricōla anguem repērit. 9. Miles agricōlae domum evertet. 10. Regis sceptrum vidēbant. 11. Milīti viam monstrant. 12. Leōnem timēbant.

(b) 1. The slave is building a wall. 2. The slave is building a wall *for the king*. 3. The boy was showing the road. 4. The boy was showing the road *to the husbandman*. 5. The husbandman is showing the road *to the boy*. 6. They will declare war *against the city*.

7. They are founding a city for the queen. 8. They will not disregard the law. 9. They were writing for the king. 10. They will accūse the boy. 11. They were praising the queen. 12. They will praise the queen's daughter. 13. The king will declare war against the senate. 14. The king will give the city to (his) son.

LESSON XVI.

Nouns.—Ablative Case.—Modified Predicate.

86. THE *Ablative Case* in Latin corresponds to the *objective* with *from, by, in, or with* in English; as, *mūsā*, a muse; Abl. *mūsā*, from a muse, or *by, in, or with* a muse.*

87. The *Ablative Singular* of a noun may be formed by adding to its root one of the following

ABLATIVE ENDINGS.

| Dec. I. | Dec. II. | Dec. III. | Dec. IV. | Dec. V. |
|---------|----------|-----------|----------|---------|
| ā, | ō, | ě,† | ū, | ē. |

EXAMPLES.

| | <i>Genitive.</i> | <i>Root.</i> | <i>Ending.</i> | <i>Ablative.</i> |
|---------|---------------------------|--------------|----------------|---|
| Dec. I. | <i>Mūsae, of a muse;</i> | <i>mūs</i> | <i>- ā;</i> | <i>mūsā, from, in, &c., a muse.</i> |
| II. | <i>Servī, of a slave;</i> | <i>serv</i> | <i>- ō;</i> | <i>servō, “ “ “ a slave.</i> |
| III. | <i>Hōnōris, of honor;</i> | <i>hōnōr</i> | <i>- ě;</i> | <i>hōnōrě, “ “ “ honor.</i> |
| IV. | <i>Fructus, of fruit;</i> | <i>fruct</i> | <i>- ū;</i> | <i>fructū, “ “ “ fruit.</i> |
| V. | <i>Diēi, of day;</i> | <i>di</i> | <i>- ē;</i> | <i>diē, “ “ “ day.</i> |

88. The predicate may be modified by a noun denoting the *time* of an action; e. g.,

Hiēmē ursūs dormīt.

(*In winter the bear sleeps.*)

The bear sleeps (when?) *in winter.*

89. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The time *when* is put in the

* The preposition *is*, however, often expressed before the ablative, as it is before the objective in English.

† As an exception to this, a few nouns of the third declension form the ablative in *ī*, as we shall see by-and-by.

ablative without a preposition (i. e., without any word for the English *at, in, &c.*)

REM.—The ablative of time often stands first in a sentence, as in the example.


90. The predicate may be modified by a noun denoting the *place* of its action; e. g.,

Ursūs *in antrō* dormit.

(*The bear in a cave sleeps.*)

The bear sleeps (where?) *in a cave.*

91. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The name of a place where any thing is, or is done, when not a town (227), is generally put in the ablative with a preposition.

 The pupil, in preparing his exercises, should imitate the *order* in the examples, whenever nothing is said on the point.

92. VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|
| Aestas, ātis, <i>f.</i> | summer. | |
| Agēr, āgrī, <i>m.</i> | field | (<i>agriculture</i>). |
| Antrūm, ī, <i>n.</i> | cave. | |
| Asinūs, ī, <i>m.</i> | ass. | |
| Avīs, īs, <i>f.</i> | bird | (<i>aviary</i>). |
| Dilāniārē, | to tear in pieces. | |
| Equūs, ī, <i>m.</i> | horse | (<i>equestrian</i>). |
| Hiems, ĕmīs, <i>f.</i> | winter. | |
| Hortūs, ī, <i>m.</i> | garden | (<i>horticulture</i>). |
| In (<i>prep. with abl.</i>), | in. | |
| Lūcūs, ī, <i>m.</i> | grove. | |
| Mōns, tīs, <i>m.</i> | mountain. | |
| Prātūm, ī, <i>n.</i> | meadow. | |
| Ursūs, ī, <i>m.</i> | bear. | |

93. Exercises.

(a) 1. Ursus dormit. 2. Ursus *in antro* dormit. 3. Canis currit. 4. Canis *in horto* currit. 5. Puer ludēbat. 6. Puer *in agro* ludēbat. 7. Hiēme ursus *in*

antro dormiet. 8. Romŭlus urbem condēbat. 9. Romŭlus urbem *in monte* condēbat. 10. *Hiēme* ursus *in antro* dormit.

11. Servus regem occīdet. 12. Leo aſīnum dilaniat. 13. Rex regīnam accusābat. 14. Regīna filiam docēbit. 15. In luco ludunt. 16. Leo equum dilaniābit.

(b) 1. The boy is playing. 2. The boy is playing *in the garden*. 3. The dog is running. 4. The dog is running *in the meadow*. 5. The bird will not sing. 6. The bird will not sing *in winter*. 7. The daughter was singing *in the grove*. 8. They will walk *in the field*. 9. They will play *in summer*.

10. Balbus will fear Caius. 11. They will fear the queen. 12. He was building a wall. 13. They are building a wall. 14. The queen is walking in the field. 15. The queen's mother was weeping. 16. The slave is showing the boy (to the boy) the way. 17. The slave was shutting the gate. 18. The boy will shut the gate.

LESSON XVII.

*Nouns.—First Declension.**

94. To the *First Declension* belong all nouns which have the genitive in *ae* (62). They all end in *ā* (except a few *Greek* nouns. See 174).

95. Latin nouns of this declension are grammatically feminine; unless their gender is determined by their *signification*, according to previous rules (40, 44).

* Having learned in the previous Lessons the *use* of the *several cases* of the Latin language, the pupil will now find little difficulty in mastering the *five declensions* (62) in all the cases of *both numbers*.

96. We have already learned that the root of a noun may always be found from the genitive singular (69, 1), but, as it may *also* be formed without much difficulty from the nominative, it will be well for us to notice, in connection with the different declensions, the manner in which this may be done.

97. In the First Declension,

- 1) The *root* may be found by dropping the nominative ending *ă*, as *mūsă*; root, *mūs* (69, 1).
- 2) Any noun *may be declined* (i. e., all the cases of both numbers may be formed) by adding to the root the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

| | <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Accus.</i> | <i>Voc.</i> | <i>Abl.</i> |
|-------|-------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|-------------|
| Sing. | ă, | ae, | ae, | ăm, | ă, | ă, |
| Plur. | ae, | ărüm, | is, | as, | ae, | is. |

PARADIGM.

| <i>Singular.</i> | | | <i>Plural.</i> | | |
|------------------|---------|------------------------------|----------------|-----------|-----------------------------|
| Nom. | Mūs-ă, | <i>a muse.</i> | Nom. | Mūs-ae, | <i>muses.</i> |
| Gen. | Mūs-ae, | <i>of a muse.</i> | Gen. | Mūs-ărüm, | <i>of muses.</i> |
| Dat. | Mūs-ae, | <i>to, for a muse.</i> | Dat. | Mūs-is, | <i>to, for muses.</i> |
| Acc. | Mūs-ăm, | <i>a muse.</i> | Acc. | Mūs-as, | <i>muses.</i> |
| Voc. | Mūs-ă, | <i>O muse.</i> | Voc. | Mūs-ae, | <i>O muses.</i> |
| Abl. | Mūs-ă, | <i>from, &c. a muse.</i> | Abl. | Mūs-is, | <i>from, &c. muses.</i> |

98. VOCABULARY.*

| | | |
|-----------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| Apërîrë, | to open, to uncover | (<i>aperture</i>). |
| Aquilă, ae, | eagle | (<i>aquiline</i>). |
| Căpăt, itis, n. | head | (<i>capital</i>). |
| Columbă, ae, | dove. | |

* The pupil must apply rules for gender.

| | | |
|-----------------|--------------------------|---------------|
| Cōrōnā, ae, | garland, crown | (coronation). |
| Dōlōr, ōris, m. | pain, grief, sorrow | (dolorous). |
| Lusciniā, ae, | nightingale. | |
| Ridērē, | { to laugh, } | (ridicule) |
| | { to laugh at } | |
| Sentirē, | { to feel, to perceive } | |
| | { by the senses. } | |
| Vincirē, | { to bind, } | |
| | { to bind up. } | |

99. Exercises.

(a) 1. Puellae saltant. 2. Aquilae volant. 3. Regīna puellas docēbit. 4. Tulliae filiae ridēbunt. 5. Tulliae filias ridēbit. 6. Aquila columbas occidet. 7. Luscinae cantābant.

8. Balbus vocem audit. 9. Caius dolōrem vitābit. 10. Puellae dolōrem sentiunt. 11. Servus epistōlas scribit. 12. Puer caput vinciēbat. 13. Regīna puellae corōnam dabit. 14. Regīna puellis corōnas dabit.

(b) 1. The girl was writing a letter. 2. The girls are writing letters. 3. The queen will call (her) daughter. 4. The queen is calling (her) daughters. 5. Tullia will give a garland to her daughter.

6. They will give garlands to (their) daughters. 7. He is reading the queen's letter. 8. They are reading the girls' letters (the letters of the girls). 9. They will show the way to the queen. 10. The husbandman will shut the gate. 11. The doves will fly. 12. The nightingales are singing. 13. The boy hears (his) father's voice. 14. The boy is opening the letters. 15. The slave will open (his) master's letters.

LESSON XVIII.

Nouns.—Second Declension.—Nouns in ūs and ūm.

100. To the *Second Declension* belong all nouns which have the genitive singular in *ī* (62). They end in *ūs*, *ŭm*, *ēr*, and *īr* (except a few Greek nouns. See 174).

101. In this declension nouns in *ŭm* are grammatically *neuter*; and the *rest* (with a few exceptions*) are grammatically *masculine*; unless their gender is determined by their signification, according to previous rules (40, 44).

102. In nouns in *ūs* and *ŭm*, of this declension, the *root* is found by dropping the *nominative ending*; as, *serv-ūs*, a slave; root, *serv*: *rēgn-ŭm*, a kingdom; root, *rēgn*.

103. Nouns in *ūs* are declined by adding to the root the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

| | <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Accus.</i> | <i>Voc.</i> | <i>Abl.</i> |
|-------|-------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|-------------|
| Sing. | ūs, | ī, | ō, | ŭm, | ě,† | ō, |
| Plur. | ī, | ōrŭm, | īs, | ōs, | ī, | īs. |

* It has not been thought best to burden the memory of the learner with *lists* of exceptions, at this early stage of his study. Accordingly, *general rules*, covering the great majority of cases, are given for *immediate* and *constant use*; thus the pupil may fix the general principles of the language, and become better prepared to understand and recollect the exceptions as they occur in his lessons. Such exceptions, whether pertaining to gender or other subjects, will be marked in the *Vocabularies*.

† The *vocative singular*, in nouns in *ūs* of this declension, is not like the *nominative* (see 55 and note). Proper nouns in *iūs* drop the ending *ē* in the *vocative singular*; as, *Tullius* (proper name), *Voc. Tulli*. *Filiūs*, a son, and *gēniūs*, a guardian angel, also drop the ending *ē* in the *vocative singular*.

PARADIGM.

| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Nom. Serv-ūs, <i>a slave.</i> | Nom. Serv-ī, <i>slaves.</i> |
| Gen. Serv-ī, <i>of a slave.</i> | Gen. Serv-ōrūm, <i>of slaves.</i> |
| Dat. Serv-ō, <i>to, for a slave.</i> | Dat. Serv-īs, <i>to, for slaves.</i> |
| Acc. Serv-ūm, <i>a slave.</i> | Acc. Serv-ōs, <i>slaves.</i> |
| Voc. Serv-ē, <i>O slave.</i> | Voc. Serv-ī, <i>O slaves.</i> |
| Abl. Serv-ō, <i>from, by a slave.</i> | Abl. Serv-īs, <i>from, by slaves.</i> |

REM.—It will be well for the pupil to accustom himself to compare the several cases with each other, and to associate together such as are alike, or nearly so.

104. Nouns in *ūm* are declined by adding to the root the following

NEUTER CASE-ENDINGS.

| | <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Accus.</i> | <i>Voc.</i> | <i>Abl.</i> |
|-------|-------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|-------------|
| Sing. | ūm, | ī, | ō, | ūm, | ūm, | ō, |
| Plur. | ā, | ōrūm, | īs, | ā, | ā, | īs. |

PARADIGM.

| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|---|---|
| Nom. Rēgn-ūm, <i>a kingdom.</i> | Nom. Rēgn-ā, <i>kingdoms.</i> |
| Gen. Rēgn-ī, <i>of a kingdom.</i> | Gen. Rēgn-ōrūm, <i>of kingdoms.</i> |
| Dat. Rēgn-ō, <i>to, for a kingdom.</i> | Dat. Rēgn-īs, <i>to, for kingdoms.</i> |
| Acc. Rēgn-ūm, <i>a kingdom.</i> | Acc. Rēgn-ā, <i>kingdoms.</i> |
| Voc. Rēgn-ūm, <i>O kingdom.</i> | Voc. Rēgn-ā, <i>O kingdoms.</i> |
| Abl. Rēgn-ō, <i>from, by a kingdom.</i> | Abl. Rēgn-īs, <i>from, by kingdoms.</i> |

REM. 1.—In neuters of all declensions, the *nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc.* are alike in each number, and in the plural end in *ā*, as in the paradigm just given.

REM. 2.—Neuters in *ūm* are declined like masculines in *ūs* of this declension, except in the cases just mentioned (*nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc.*). Compare paradigms.

105. VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|---------------|
| Agnūs, ī, | lamb. | |
| Discipūlus, ī, | pupil | (disciple). |
| Dōmīnūs, ī, | master, as owner | (domineer). |
| Gērērē, | { to carry on, to wage (as war). | |
| Haedūs, ī, | | kid. |
| Lūpūs, ī, | wolf. | |
| Māgīstēr, trī, | master, as teacher | (magisteria). |

106. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caius Balbum docēbat. 2. Balbus Caium docēbat. 3. Servus domīnum occīdet. 4. Servi domīnos timent. 5. Balbus filios laudābit. 6. Servus domīni filios timet. 7. Servi dominōrum filios timēbunt.

8. Puellae dōlōrem sentiēbant. 9. Servi muros aedificābunt. 10. Pastor filiis canem dabit. 11. Pastor filiābus* haedum dabit.

(b) 1. Balbus will instruct the slave. 2. Caius will punish the pupil. 3. They will instruct (their) pupils. 4. The slaves will fear Balbus. 5. The master was punishing (his) slaves. 6. Caius will kill the wolf. 7. Wolves will kill lambs. 8. The wolves do not see (see not) the kids.

9. Caius was waging war. 10. They are waging wars. 11. Balbus will fight. 12. The sons of Balbus will fight. 13. The master is teaching the boys. 14. The master is teaching his pupils in the garden. 15. The girls were walking in the garden. 16. He was playing in the meadow. 17. They will play in the fields. 18. The slaves were reading (their) master's letters.

* Filiā has the dative and ablative plur. in *abūs*, to distinguish it from the same cases of *filiūs*.

LESSON XIX.

Nouns.—Second Declension, continued.—Nouns in ěr and ĭr.

107. NOUNS in ěr and ĭr, of the second declension, have the *nominative* and *vocative singular* alike, and in all the other cases are declined like *servŭs* (103), with the single exception that most nouns in ěr drop ě in the root.


PARADIGMS.

1. Gĕnĕr, a son-in-law : root, gĕnĕr (ĕ not dropped).

| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Nom. Gĕnĕr, a son-in-law. | Nom. Gĕnĕr-ĭ, sons-in-law. |
| Gen. Gĕnĕr-ĭ, of son-in-law. | Gen. Gĕnĕr-ŏrum, of sons-in-law. |
| Dat. Gĕnĕr-ŏ, to son-in-law. | Dat. Gĕnĕr-ĭs, to sons-in-law. |
| Acc. Gĕnĕr-ŭm, son-in-law. | Acc. Gĕnĕr-ŏs, sons-in-law. |
| Voc. Gĕnĕr, O son-in-law. | Voc. Gĕnĕr-ĭ, O sons-in-law. |
| Abl. Gĕnĕr-ŏ, from son-in-law. | Abl. Gĕnĕr-ĭs, from sons-in-law. |

2. Agĕr, a field : root, āgr (ĕ dropped).

| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| Nom. Agĕr, a field. | Nom. Agr-ĭ, fields. |
| Gen. Agr-ĭ, of a field. | Gen. Agr-ŏrŭm, of fields. |
| Dat. Agr-ŏ, to a field. | Dat. Agr-ĭs, to fields. |
| Acc. Agr-ŭm, a field. | Acc. Agr-ŏs, fields. |
| Voc. Agĕr, O field. | Voc. Agr-ĭ, O fields. |
| Abl. Agr-ŏ, from a field. | Abl. Agr-ĭs, from fields. |

 Vĭr (a man) and its compounds are the only nouns in ĭr, and are declined like gĕnĕr.

108. VOCABULARY.

Armĭgĕr, ĭ,
Diligentiā, ae,
Gĕnĕr, ĭ,
Lĭbĕr, lĭbrĭ,
Vulpĕs, ĭs, f.

armor-bearer.
diligence.
son-in-law.
book.
fox.

109. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Puer in agro ludit. 2. Pueri in agris ludēbant. 3. Magister puēros docēbit. 4. Magistri discipūlos docēbunt. 5. Magister puēris libros dabit. 6. Armigērum occidēbant.

7. Pater diligentiam (64, b) filiōrum laudābat. 8. Regīnae filia in luco ambulābat. 9. Luscinae in lucis cantant. 10. Magistri legem non neglīgent. 11. Puēri vulpem non occīdent.

(b) 1. The boy was running in the fields. 2. The boys will run in the fields. 3. The boys saw the master's book. 4. The pupils will give the master a book (a book to the master). 5. They will give books to (their) masters. 6. He will punish the armor-bearer. 7. He will accuse (his) son-in-law. 8. They will accuse (their) sons-in-law.

9. The master was praising (his) pupils. 10. The master was praising the diligence of (his) pupils. 11. The pupils do not hear the master. 12. The slaves will shut the gates of the city. 13. The boys were reading in the garden. 14. The girls are reading in the meadow.

LESSON XX.

Adjectives of the First and Second Declension.

110. THE *Adjective* is that part of speech which is used to qualify substantives; as, *bōnūs*, good; *māgnūs*, great. .

111. The form of the adjective often depends, in part, upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies;

e. g., *Bōnūs puēr*, a good boy; *Bōnā puellā*, a good girl; and *Bōnūm rēgnūm*, a good kingdom. Thus, *bōnūs* is the form of the adjective when used with *masc.* nouns, *bōnā* with *fem.*, and *bōnūm* with *neuter*.

112. These three forms of the adjective are declined like nouns of the same endings. Thus, the masculine is declined like *servūs* (103), and is accordingly of the *second* declension; the feminine like *mūsā* (97), and is of the *first* declension; and the neuter like *rēgnūm* (104), and is of the *second* declension.

PARADIGM.

| Bōnūs, good. | | | |
|--------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| SINGULAR. | | | |
| | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
| Nom. | Bōn-ūs, | bōn-ā, | bōn-ūm. |
| Gen. | Bōn-ī, | bōn-ae, | bōn-ī. |
| Dat. | Bōn-ō, | bōn-ae, | bōn-ō. |
| Acc. | Bōn-ūm, | bōn-ām, | bōn-ūm. |
| Voc. | Bōn-ē, | bōn-ā, | bōn-ūm. |
| Abl. | Bōn-ō, | bōn-ā, | bōn-ō. |
| PLURAL. | | | |
| Nom. | Bōn-ī, | bōn-ae, | bōn-ā. |
| Gen. | Bōn-ōrūm, | bōn-ārūm, | bōn-ōrūm. |
| Dat. | Bōn-īs, | bōn-īs, | bōn-īs. |
| Acc. | Bōn-ōs, | bōn-ās, | bōn-ā. |
| Voc. | Bōn-ī, | bōn-ae, | bōn-ā. |
| Abl. | Bōn-īs, | bōn-īs, | bōn-īs. |

REM.—Adjectives like the above are called adjectives of the *First* and *Second Declension*, because they are declined like nouns of these declensions; the *masc.* and *neut.* being declined like nouns of the second declension, and the *fem.* like those of the first.

113. Some adjectives of this declension have the *nom.* and *voc. sing.* in *ēr*, like nouns in *ēr* of the second declension. These, in all their other forms, are de-

clined like *bönūs* in the Paradigm above, with the exception, that most of them drop *ě* before *r* of the *root* in all genders.

PARADIGMS.

1. Těněr, tender : root, *těněr* (*ě* not dropped).

SINGULAR.

| | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
|------|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| Nom. | Těněr, | těněr-ă, | těněr-ŭm. |
| Gen. | Těněr-ī, | těněr-ae, | těněr-ī. |
| Dat. | Těněr-ō, | těněr-ae, | těněr-ō. |
| Acc. | Těněr-ŭm, | těněr-ām, | těněr-ŭm. |
| Voc. | Těněr, | těněr-ă, | těněr-ŭm. |
| Abl. | Těněr-ō, | těněr-ă, | těněr-ō. |

PLURAL.

| | | | |
|------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| Nom. | Těněr-ī, | těněr-ae, | těněr-ă. |
| Gen. | Těněr-ōrŭm, | těněr-ārŭm, | těněr-ōrum. |
| Dat. | Těněr-īs, | těněr-īs, | těněr-īs. |
| Acc. | Těněr-ōs, | těněr-ās, | těněr-ă. |
| Voc. | Těněr-ī, | těněr-ae, | těněr-ă. |
| Abl. | Těněr-īs, | těněr-īs, | těněr-īs. |

2. Aegěr, sick : root, *aegr* (*ě* dropped).

SINGULAR.

| | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
|------|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| Nom. | Aegěr, | aegr-ă, | aegr-ŭm. |
| Gen. | Aegr-ī, | aegr-ae, | aegr-ī. |
| Dat. | Aegr-ō, | aegr-ae, | aegr-ō. |
| Acc. | Aegr-ŭm, | aegr-ām, | aegr-ŭm. |
| Voc. | Aegěr, | aegr-ă, | aegr-ŭm. |
| Abl. | Aegr-ō, | aegr-ă, | aegr-ō. |

PLURAL.

| | | | |
|------|------------|------------|------------|
| Nom. | Aegr-ī, | aegr-ae, | aegr-ă. |
| Gen. | Aegr-ōrŭm, | aegr-ārŭm, | aegr-ōrŭm. |
| Dat. | Aegr-īs, | aegr-īs, | aegr-īs. |
| Acc. | Aegr-ōs, | aegr-ās, | aegr-ă. |
| Voc. | Aegr-ī, | aegr-ae, | aegr-ă. |
| Abl. | Aegr-īs, | aegr-īs, | aegr-īs. |

REM.—The following adjectives have the genitive singular in *iūs* (the *i* is generally short in *alterius*), and the dative singular in *i* in all genders, viz.: *aliūs*, another; *nullūs*, no one; *solūs*, alone; *totūs*, the whole; *ullūs*, any; *unūs*, one; *altēr*, the other; *neutēr*, neither; and *utēr*, which (of the two).

114. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Adjectives agree with the nouns which they qualify, in *gender*, *number*, and *case*; e. g.,

Mātēr bōnām fīliām laudāt.

(The mother (her) good daughter praises).

The mother praises her good daughter.

REM. 1.—The adjective *bōnām* is in the *feminine accusative singular*, to agree with its noun *fīliām*.

REM. 2.—The position of the adjective seems to depend principally upon *emphasis*; and accordingly the adjective *precedes* or *follows* its noun, according as it is or is not emphatic. In the example, *bōnām* is emphatic.

REM. 3.—*Meūs*, my; *tuūs*, your (or thy); *suūs*, his, her, &c., though called *adjective pronouns* (273 and 295), are in declension and agreement really adjectives. They usually follow their nouns: e. g.,

Mūliēr ancillām suām excitāt.

(The woman maid her awakens.)

The woman awakens her maid.

115. VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|--------------|
| Bēnignūs, ā, ūm, | kind | (benign). |
| Bōnūs, ā, ūm, | good. | |
| Māgnūs, ā, ūm, | large, great | (magnitude). |
| Meūs,* ā, ūm, | my. | |
| Pulchēr, chrā, chrūm, | beautiful. | |
| Sēpēlirē, | to bury. | |
| Stūdīosūs, ā, ūm, | studious. | |
| Suūs,† ā, um, | his, her, its, their. | |
| Tuūs, ā, ūm, | your, thy. | |

* Voc. sing. masc. is *mī*.

† The meaning of this word depends in part upon the *gender* and *number* of the subject of the proposition in which it is used. Thus, in the

116. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Regīna puēros laudābat. 2. Regīna puēros bonos laudābat. 3. Pater filium suum^a docēbat. 4. Mater filias suas amābit. 5. Bona mater filias suas amābit.

6. Magister puēros docēbit. 7. Bonus magister studiōsos puēros docēbit. 8. Agricōlae anguem non timēbunt. 9. Caius bonam legem non neglīget. 10. Christiāni legem bonam non neglīgunt. 11. Pater meus in prato ambūlat.

(b) 1. The father was burying *his*^a son. 2. They are burying *their*^a sons. 3. My friend does not hear my voice. 4. The daughters love (their) kind mother. 5. The mother will instruct her beautiful daughters.

6. Caius disregards the law. 7. They disregard the good laws. 8. The boys are killing your dog. 9. Good boys will not kill dogs. 10. Your dog will kill the wolf. 11. Dogs will kill large wolves.

LESSON XXI.

Adjectives of the First and Second Declension, continued.

117. THE noun which the adjective qualifies is often omitted in Latin; and then in translating into English the word *man* must be supplied, if the adjective is masc. sing.; *woman*, if fem. sing.; and *thing*, if neuter sing.; e. g.,

above example (*Mūliēr ancillām suām excitāt*), *suām* means *her*, because the subject *mūliēr* is *fem. sing.*; with a masculine subject it would mean *his*, and with a plural subject, *their*, &c.

Avārūs pēcūniām āmāt.

(*The avaricious (man) money loves.*)

The avaricious man loves money.

REM.—After a plur. adjec. the noun is sometimes expressed and sometimes omitted in the Eng. translation; thus, *āvārī* may be translated *avaricious men*, or simply *the avaricious*.

118. When a noun is limited by a genitive, one or both nouns may be qualified by an adjective; e. g.,

1. Māgnā rēgīs cōrōnā.

(*The great of the king crown.*)

The king's great crown.

2. Māgnā bōnī rēgīs cōrōnā.

(*The great of the good king crown.*)

The good king's great crown.

119. VOCABULARY.

| | |
|------------------|-------------|
| Aureūs, ā, ūm, | golden. |
| Avāritiā, ae, | avarice. |
| Avārūs, ā, ūm, | avaricious. |
| Impiūs, ā, ūm, | impious. |
| Indoctūs, ā, ūm, | unlearned. |
| Lābōr, ōrīs, m. | labor. |
| Poētā, ae, m. | poet. |
| Sāpientiā, ae, | wisdom. |
| Vindicārē | to avenge. |

120. Exercises.

(a) 1. Auream regis corōnam vidēbant. 2. Servi magnam regis corōnam vidēbunt. 3. Balbi domum evertent. 4. Impii domum evertēbant. 5. Indoctus sapientiam laudābat.

6. Magnum boni regis sceptrum timēbunt. 7. Amīci sapientiam tuam laudant. 8. Christiāni avaritiam vitābunt. 9. Mater bonas filias laudābat.

(b) 1. He disregards his slave's labor. 2. He disre-

gards his slave's great labor. 3. The beautiful daughters of the queen will dance. 4. The poet was holding the beautiful crown. 5. The poet was holding the good queen's beautiful crown. 6. The good (man) will not disregard the law. 7. The poet will *laugh at* the unlearned (man). 8. The good will not fear death.

9. They will avenge the death of their father. 10. They were avenging the death of the good (woman). 11. The impious (man) will fear death. 12. The poet will build a beautiful house.

LESSON XXII.

Nouns and Adjectives.—First and Second Declension, continued.—Price, Value, and Degree of Estimation.

121. THE predicate of a proposition may be modified by a noun or adjective denoting *price, value, or degree of estimation*; e. g.,

1. Avārūs pātriām aurō vendēt.

(*The avaricious (man) (his) country for gold will sell.*)

The avaricious man will sell his country for gold.

2. Avārūs pēcūniām māgnī aestīmāt.

(*The avaricious (man) money at a great (price) values.*)

The avaricious man values money at a great price
(or highly).

122. RULE OF SYNTAX.—*Price*, when expressed by nouns, is generally put in the ablative, and when expressed by adjectives, generally in the genitive.

REM. 1.—The genitive of a few nouns and the ablative of a few adjectives sometimes occur in expressions of price and value.

REM. 2.—In example 1. the noun *aurō* is in the ablative, and in example 2. the adjective *māgnī* is in the genitive, by the above rule.

123. VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|------------------|---|-----------------------|
| Aestĭmārĕ, | to value | (<i>estimate</i>). |
| Aurūm, ī, | gold. | |
| Magnī, | { at a great price, { at a high price. | |
| Magnī aestĭmārĕ, | { to prize highly, { to think highly of. | |
| Parvī, | { at a little price, { at a low price. | |
| Parvī aestĭmārĕ, | to think little of. | |
| Pātriā, ae, | native country | (<i>patriotic</i>). |
| Proditōr, ōrīs, | traitor. | |
| Vendĕrĕ, | to sell | (<i>vend</i>). |
| Vērūs, ā, ūm, | true, real. | |
| Virtūs, ūtīs, f. | virtue. | |

124. Exercises.

(a) 1. Impius patriam auro vendēbat. 2. Proditōr patriam *parvī*³ aestimābit. 3. Caius amīci sui labōrem *parvī* aestimat. 4. Boni virtūtem *magnī*² aestimant.

5. Rex servum *magnī* aestimābit. 6. Regīna aurēam corōnam *magnī* aestimat. 7. Magnam urbis portam claudent. 8. Domīnus servi sui epistōlas aperiet. 9. Servus puēros vocābit.

(b) 1. The traitor will sell (his) country for gold. 2. Caius values true virtue *at a great (price)*.² 3. The master thinks *little*³ of¹ the labor² of his slave.

4. The poet will feel real sorrow. 5. A father will not disregard the sorrow of his son. 6. The avaricious (man) will value virtue *at a low (price)*.³ 7. The avaricious value money *at a high (price)*.² 8. Christians think *little*³ of¹ money.

LESSON XXIII.

Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class I.

125. To the *Third Declension* belong all nouns which have the genitive singular in *īs*. They end in *a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x*, and may be divided into four classes:

- 1) Those which have the root the same as the nominative singular (except, in a few instances, the omission or change of the radical vowel): as, *mŭliěr*, a woman; root, *mŭliěr*.
- 2) Those which form the root by adding a single letter to the nominative singular: as, *leō*, a lion; root, *leōn*.
- 3) Those which form the root by dropping the ending of the nominative singular: as, *urbs*, a city; root, *urb*.
- 4) Those which form the root by changing the ending of the nominative singular: as, *piētūs*, piety; root, *piētāt*.

126. CLASS I.—This class comprises nouns in *c,* l, n, r, t, and y*. These either have the root the same as the nominative singular, or form it (with a few exceptions) by one of the following slight vowel changes:

- 1) Nouns in *těr* and *běr* generally drop *e* in the root: as, *pătěr*, a father; root, *pătr*.
- 2) Nouns in *ěn* generally change *ě* into *ĩ* in the root: as, *flŭměn*, a river; root, *flŭmĩn*.
- 3) Nouns in *ūt* change *ŭ* into *ĩ* in the root: as, *căpŭt*, a head; root, *căpĩt*.

* There are only two nouns with this ending, one of which belongs to Class II.

REM.—The quantity of the radical vowel is sometimes changed; this is the case in most nouns in *āl* and *ōr*, which generally lengthen the vowel in the root.

127. Neuter nouns of this declension have the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular alike, and are declined in the other cases by adding to the root the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

| | <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Accus.</i> | <i>Voc.</i> | <i>Abl.</i> |
|-------|-------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|-------------|
| Sing. | — | īs, | ī, | — | — | ě (ī). |
| Plur. | ā (iā), | ūm (iūm), | ībūs, | ā (iā), | ā (iā), | ībūs. |

REM.—The inclosed endings belong only to neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*.

PARADIGMS.

| | | | |
|---|----------------|--|----------------|
| 1. Căpūt, <i>n.</i> , a head. (root, <i>căpīt</i> [126, 3].) | | 2. Anīmāl, <i>n.</i> , an animal. (root, same as <i>nom.*</i> [126].) | |
| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> | <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
| Nom. Căpūt, | Căpīt-ă. | Nom. Anīmāl, | Anīmāl-iă. |
| Gen. Căpīt-īs, | Căpīt-ūm. | Gen. Anīmāl-īs, | Anīmāl-iūm. |
| Dat. Căpīt-ī, | Căpīt-ībūs. | Dat. Anīmāl-ī, | Anīmāl-ībūs. |
| Acc. Căpūt, | Căpīt-ă. | Acc. Anīmāl, | Anīmāl-iă. |
| Voc. Căpūt, | Căpīt-ă. | Voc. Anīmāl, | Anīmāl-iă. |
| Abl. Căpīt-ě, | Căpīt-ībūs. | Abl. Anīmāl-ī, | Anīmāl-ībūs. |

128. Masculine and feminine nouns of this declension are declined, in all the cases except the *nominative* and *vocative singular* (which are alike), by adding to the root the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

| | <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Accus.</i> | <i>Voc.</i> | <i>Abl.</i> |
|-------|-------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|-------------|
| Sing. | — | īs, | ī, | ēm (īm), | — | ě (ī). |
| Plur. | ēs, | ūm (iūm), | ībūs, | ēs, | ēs, | ībūs. |

* With the radical vowel lengthened (126, REM.).

REM.—The inclosed endings (except that of the genitive plural, which will be noticed again, 141) belong only to a few words.

PARADIGMS.

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------|------------------------------------|----------------|
| 1. Lăbör, <i>m., labor.</i> | | 2. Muliër, <i>f., a woman.</i> | |
| (root, <i>same as nom.*</i> [126].) | | (root, <i>same as nom.</i> [126].) | |
| <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural.</i> | <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
| Nom. Lăbör, | Lăbör-ēs. | Nom. Muliër, | Muliër-ēs. |
| Gen. Lăbör-īs, | Lăbör-üm. | Gen. Muliër-īs, | Muliër-üm. |
| Dat. Lăbör-ī, | Lăbör-ībūs. | Dat. Muliër-ī, | Muliër-ībūs. |
| Acc. Lăbör-ēm, | Lăbör-ēs. | Acc. Muliër-ēm, | Muliër-ēs. |
| Voc. Lăbör, | Lăbör-ēs. | Voc. Muliër, | Muliër-ēs. |
| Abl. Lăbör-ě, | Lăbör-ībūs. | Abl. Muliër-ě, | Muliër-ībūs. |

| | | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------|----------------|
| 3. Pătër, <i>a father.</i> | | 4. Frătër, <i>a brother.</i> | |
| (root, <i>patr</i> [126, 1].) | | (root, <i>frătr</i> [126, 1].) | |
| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> | <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
| Nom. Pătër, | Pătr-ēs. | Nom. Frătër, | Frătr-ēs. |
| Gen. Pătr-īs, | Pătr-üm. | Gen. Frătr-īs, | Frătr-üm. |
| Dat. Pătr-ī, | Pătr-ībūs. | Dat. Frătr-ī, | Frătr-ībūs. |
| Acc. Pătr-ēm, | Pătr-ēs. | Acc. Frătr-ēm, | Frătr-ēs. |
| Voc. Pătër, | Pătr-ēs. | Voc. Frătër, | Frătr-ēs. |
| Abl. Pătr-ě, | Pătr-ībūs. | Abl. Frătr-ě, | Frătr-ībūs. |

129. VOCABULARY.

Brütüs, ī,
 Caecūs, ā, ūm,
 Consul, īs,
 Fīnirē,
 Frătër, trīs,
 Lūcērē,
 Muliër, ērīs,
 Sēnătōr, ōrīs,
 Sīrēn, īs, *f.*
 Sōl, īs, *m.*
 Sōrōr, ōrīs,

Brutus, *a Roman consul.*
 blind.
 consul, *Roman chief magistrate.*
 to finish.
 brother.
 to shine.
 woman.
 senator.
 siren.
 sun.
 sister.

* With the radical vowel lengthened (126, REM.).

130. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Agricōla labōrem finiēbat. 2. Mulier sorōres accusābit. 3. Brutum consūlem occidēbat. 4. Senatōres Caesārem occidēbant.

5. Bonus puer caput aperiet. 6. Servi capīta aperiēbant. 7. Sirēnes cantābant. 8. Sol lucēbat. 9. Caeci solem non vident. 10. Pastōres aurum magni aestīmant.

(b) 1. The boy accuses his brother. 2. They accuse their brothers. 3. The consuls were waging war. 4. The senators fear the consul. 5. The consuls fear the senators. 6. The shepherd values his dog *at a high (price)*.² 7. They will finish their labor.

8. They fear the sirens. 9. Good boys uncover their heads. 10. The blind boy does not see the sun. 11. The blind do not see the sun. 12. The good woman loves (her) beautiful daughters. 13. Good daughters love their mothers. 14. Good mothers instruct their daughters.

LESSON XXIV.

Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class II.

131. CLASS II. comprises nouns of the third declension in *a*, *o*, and a few in *i*. These form the root by adding a letter to the nominative singular.

1) Nouns in *a*, and a few in *i*, add *t*: as, *poēmā*, a poem; root, *poēmāt*: *hydrōmēlī*, mead; root, *hydrōmēlīt*.

2) Nouns in *o* add *n*: as, *leō*, a lion; root, *leōn*.

REM. 1.—*O* is long in the root.

REM. 2.—Nouns in *do* and *go* change *o* into *ī*, before *n* in the root. as *virgo*, a virgin; root, *virgīn*.

PARADIGMS.

1. Poēma, *n.*, a poem: root, *poēmūt* (131, 1).*Singular.*

N. Poēmā,
G. Poēmāt-īs,
D. Poēmāt-i,
A. Poēmā,
V. Poēmā,
A. Poēmāt-ē,

Plural.

N. Poēmāt-ā.
G. Poēmāt-ūm.
D. Poēmāt-ībūs, or *īs*.^{*}
A. Poēmāt-ā.
V. Poēmāt-ā.
A. Poēmāt-ībūs, or *īs*.^{*}

2. Sermō, *m.*, a discourse.(root, *sermōn* [131, 2].)*Singular.**Plural.*

N. Sermō, Sermōn-ēs.
G. Sermōn-īs, Sermōn-ūm.
D. Sermōn-i, Sermōn-ībūs.
A. Sermōn-ēm, Sermōn-ēs.
V. Sermō, Sermōn-ēs.
A. Sermōn-ē, Sermōn-ībūs.

3. Virgō, *f.*, a virgin.(root, *virgīn* [131, 2. REM. 2].)*Singular.**Plural.*

N. Virgō, Virgīn-ēs.
G. Virgīn-īs, Virgīn-ūm.
D. Virgīn-i, Virgīn-ībūs.
A. Virgīn-ēm, Virgīn-ēs.
V. Virgō, Virgīn-ēs.
A. Virgīn-ē, Virgīn-ībūs.

132. VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|----------------------------|----------------|-------------|
| Accipitēr, trīs, <i>m.</i> | hawk. | |
| Hōmō, inīs, | man. | |
| Optiō, ōnīs, <i>f.</i> | choice | (optional). |
| Orātiō, ōnīs, <i>f.</i> | oration. | |
| Oratōr, ōrīs, | orator. | |
| Pāvō, ōnīs, <i>m.</i> | peacock. | |
| Poēmā, tīs, <i>n.</i> | poem. | |
| Sermō, ōnīs, <i>m.</i> | discourse | (sermon). |
| Tīmīd-ūs, ā, ūm, | timid. | |
| Virgō, inīs, | maiden, virgin | (virgin). |

* Nouns in *a* generally take the ending *īs* instead of *ībūs* in the *dat.* and *abl.* plural.

133. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Pater tuus poemāta legēbat. 2. Poēta sermōnem tuum laudābit. 3. Timīdae puellae pavōnem timent. 4. Virgīnes homīni viam monstrābunt.

5. Bonus puer fratri optiōnem dabit. 6. Puēri homīnes timent. 7. Indocti sapientiam *parvi*³ aestimābunt. 8. Puellae sorōres suas amant.

(b) 1. My brother is reading your discourse. 2. The boys will kill the peacock. 3. They will kill the beautiful peacocks. 4. Your mother is reading the poem. 5. The girls are reading poems. 6. The doves fear the hawk. 7. The hawk will kill your dove.

8. The hawks will kill the beautiful doves. 9. Mothers feel real sorrow. 10. The unlearned will laugh at the orator. 11. The poet will hear the oration. 12. The orator prizes wisdom *highly*.² 13. The avaricious think *little*³ of wisdom.

LESSON XXV.

Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class III.

134. CLASS III. comprises nouns of the third declension in *bs*, *ms*, *ps*, *x* (= *cs* or *gs*), *is*, *ys*, *e*, a few in *i*,* and a few in *es*. They form the root by dropping the nominative ending.

- 1) Nouns in *bs*, *ms*, *ps*, and *ys*, drop *s*: as, *urbs*, a city; root, *urb*; *hiems*, winter; root, *hiēm*.
- 2) Nouns in *x* (= *cs* or *gs*) drop the *s* in *x*: as, *vox* (*cs*), a voice; root, *vōc*; *rex* (*gs*), a king; root, *rēg*.

* Nouns in *i* are of Greek origin: most of these are indeclinable; a few form the root by dropping *i*, and a few by adding *t* (131, 1).

- 3) Nouns in *is*, *e*, and a few in *es*, drop those endings; as, *hostīs*, an enemy; root, *host*: *nūbēs*, a cloud; root, *nūb*: *mārē*, a sea; root, *mār*.

PARADIGMS.

| | |
|--|--|
| <p>1. <i>Urbs</i>, <i>f.</i>, a city. (root, <i>urb</i> [134, 1].) <i>Singular.</i> <i>Plural.</i> N. <i>Urb-s</i>, <i>Urb-ēs</i>. G. <i>Urb-īs</i>, <i>Urb-iūm</i>.[*] D. <i>Urb-ī</i>, <i>Urb-ībūs</i>. A. <i>Urb-ēm</i>, <i>Urb-ēs</i>. V. <i>Urb-s</i>, <i>Urb-ēs</i>. A. <i>Urb-ē</i>, <i>Urb-ībūs</i>.</p> | <p>2. <i>Mārē</i>, <i>n.</i>, a sea. (root, <i>mār</i> [134, 3].) <i>Singular.</i> <i>Plural.</i> N. <i>Mār-ē</i>, <i>Mār-iā.†</i> G. <i>Mār-īs</i>, <i>Mār-iūm.†</i> D. <i>Mār-ī</i>, <i>Mār-ībūs</i>. A. <i>Mār-ē</i>, <i>Mār-iā</i>. V. <i>Mār-ē</i>, <i>Mār-iā</i>. A. <i>Mār-ī,†</i> <i>Mār-ībūs</i>.</p> |
| <p>3. <i>Arx</i> (<i>cs</i>), <i>f.</i>, a citadel. (root, <i>arc</i> [134, 2].) <i>Singular.</i> <i>Plural.</i> N. <i>Arx</i>, <i>Arc-ēs</i>. G. <i>Arc-īs</i>, <i>Arc-iūm</i>.[*] D. <i>Arc-ī</i>, <i>Arc-ībūs</i>. A. <i>Arc-ēm</i>, <i>Arc-ēs</i>. V. <i>Arx</i>, <i>Arc-ēs</i>. A. <i>Arc-ē</i>, <i>Arc-ībūs</i>.</p> | <p>4. <i>Rex</i> (<i>gs</i>), <i>m.</i>, a king. (root, <i>rēg</i> [134, 2].) <i>Singular.</i> <i>Plural.</i> N. <i>Rex</i>, <i>Rēg-ēs</i>. G. <i>Rēg-īs</i>, <i>Rēg-ūm</i>. D. <i>Rēg-ī</i>, <i>Rēg-ībūs</i>. A. <i>Rēg-ēm</i>, <i>Rēg-ēs</i>. V. <i>Rex</i>, <i>Rēg-ēs</i>. A. <i>Rēg-ē</i>, <i>Rēg-ībūs</i>.</p> |
| <p>5. <i>Hostīs</i>, <i>c.</i>, an enemy. (root, <i>host</i> [134, 3].) <i>Singular.</i> <i>Plural.</i> N. <i>Host-īs</i>, <i>Host-ēs</i>. G. <i>Host-īs</i>, <i>Host-iūm</i>. D. <i>Host-ī</i>, <i>Host-ībūs</i>. A. <i>Host-ēm</i>, <i>Host-ēs</i>. V. <i>Host-īs</i>, <i>Host-ēs</i>. A. <i>Host-ē</i>, <i>Host-ībūs</i>.</p> | <p>6. <i>Nūbēs</i>, <i>f.</i>, a cloud. (root, <i>nūb</i> [134, 3].) <i>Singular.</i> <i>Plural.</i> N. <i>Nūb-ēs</i>, <i>Nūb-ēs</i>. G. <i>Nūb-īs</i>, <i>Nūb-iūm</i>. D. <i>Nūb-ī</i>, <i>Nūb-ībūs</i>. A. <i>Nūb-ēm</i>, <i>Nūb-ēs</i>. V. <i>Nūb-ēs</i>, <i>Nūb-ēs</i>. A. <i>Nūb-ē</i>, <i>Nūb-ībūs</i>.</p> |

* Monosyllables in *s* or *x*, preceded by a consonant, have *iūm* in the genitive plural. See 141, 3.

† See 127.

135. VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|------------------------------|------------------|---------------|
| Arx, arcis, <i>f.</i> | citadel, tower. | |
| Civis, is, <i>m. and f.</i> | citizen | (civil). |
| Frutex, icis, <i>m.</i> | shrub. | |
| Grex, egis, <i>m.</i> | flock, herd | (gregarious). |
| Hostis, is, <i>m. and f.</i> | enemy | (hostile). |
| Judex, icis, | judge | (judicial). |
| Pax, pacis, <i>f.</i> | peace | (pacific). |
| Reus, i, | criminal. | |
| Servare, | to keep, observe | (serve) |
| Violare, | to violate. | |

136. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caius leges violabit. 2. Regina urbem condēbat. 3. Puēri magnam urbis portam claudunt. 4. Pastōres arcem condent. 5. Reus iudicis vocem timet.

6. Cives regem accusābant. 7. Consules hostes vincēbant. 8. Pastor gregem *magni*² aestimat. 9. Boni cives pacem *magni* aestimant. 10. Filii patrem vindicābunt. 11. Servus fruticem in horto reperiēbat. 12. Impii patriam auro vendunt. 13. Rei iudicis vocem timēbunt. 14. Proditor patriam *parvi*³ aestimat. 15. Proditores patriam *parvi* aestimabunt. 16. Agricola laborem finiēbat.

(b) 1. The boys will not observe the law. 2. Good citizens observe the laws. 3. They will guard the city. 4. Soldiers will guard the cities. 5. They accuse the judge. 6. The criminals will accuse their judges. 7. The king is violating the law.

8. Slaves fear their masters. 9. Slaves fear the voices of their masters. 10. The king will conquer the enemy (*pl.*). 11. The shepherd will guard his flock. 12. Shepherds guard their flocks. 13. The poet will

praise the judge. 14. They praise the judges. 15. Christians will observe the laws of the city. 16. He does not observe the laws of the city. 17. Good citizens will not violate the laws. 18. The boy is accusing his sister. 19. They are accusing their fathers. 20. Traitors will sell their country for gold. 21. They think *little* of virtue. 22. They prize money *highly*.

LESSON XXVI.

Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class IV.

137. CLASS IV. comprises nouns of the third declension in *as*, *os*, *us*, *ls*, *ns*, *rs*, and most of those in *es*. These form the root by changing *s* into *r*, *t*, or *d*.

- 1) Nouns in *as*, *ls*, *ns*, *rs*, and most of those in *es*, generally change *s* into *t*: *as*, *piētās*, piety; root, *piētāt*: *mons*, a mountain; root, *mont*: *ābiēs*, a fir-tree; root, *ābiēt*: *mīlēs*, a soldier; root, *mīlīt*. (See REM. 2, below.)

REM. 1.—Masculines in *as*, of Greek origin, insert *n* before *t* in the root: *as*, *ēlēphās*, an elephant; root, *ēlēphant*.

REM. 2.—Many nouns in *es* change *e* into *i*, before *t*, in the root: *as*, *mīlēs*; root, *mīlīt*.

- 2) Nouns in *os* and *us* generally change *s* into *r* or *t*: *as*, *flōs*, a flower; root, *flōr*: *sācerdōs*, a priest; root, *sācerdōt*: *virtūs*, virtue; root, *virtūt*: *gēnūs*, a kind; root, *gēnēr*: *tempūs*, time; root, *tempōr*.

REM.—Most nouns in *us* change *s* into *r*, and *u* of the nominative becomes *ē* or *ō* in the root, as in these examples.

PARADIGMS.

| | | | |
|---|---------------|--|--------------|
| 1. Cīvītās, <i>f.</i> , a state. (root, <i>cīvītāt</i> [137, 1].) <i>Singular.</i> <i>Plural.</i> | | 2. Ars, <i>f.</i> , art. (root, <i>art</i> [137, 1].) <i>Singular.</i> <i>Plural.</i> | |
| N. Cīvītās, | Cīvītāt-ēs. | N. Ars, | Art-ēs. |
| G. Cīvītāt-is, | Cīvītāt-ūm. | G. Art-is, | Art-iūm. |
| D. Cīvītāt-i, | Cīvītāt-ībūs. | D. Art-i, | Art-ībūs. |
| A. Cīvītāt-ēm, | Cīvītāt-ēs. | A. Art-ēm, | Art-ēs. |
| V. Cīvītās, | Cīvītāt-ēs. | V. Ars, | Art-ēs. |
| A. Cīvītāt-ē, | Cīvītāt-ībūs. | A. Art-ē, | Art-ībūs. |
| 3. Mīlēs, <i>c.</i> , a soldier. (root, <i>mīlit</i> [137, 1, REM. 2].) <i>Singular.</i> <i>Plural.</i> | | 4. Corpūs, <i>n.</i> , a body. (root, <i>corpōr</i> [137, 2].) <i>Singular.</i> <i>Plural.</i> | |
| N. Mīlēs, | Milit-ēs. | N. Corpūs, | Corpōr-ā. |
| G. Milit-is, | Milit-ūm. | G. Corpōr-is, | Corpōr-ūm. |
| D. Milit-i, | Milit-ībūs. | D. Corpōr-i, | Corpōr-ībūs. |
| A. Milit-ēm, | Milit-ēs. | A. Corpūs, | Corpōr-ā. |
| V. Mīlēs, | Milit-ēs. | V. Corpūs, | Corpōr-ā. |
| A. Milit-ē, | Milit-ībūs. | A. Corpōr-ē, | Corpōr-ībūs. |

138. The Latin, like every other language, has certain forms of expression peculiar to itself, called *Idioms*.* e. g.,

| | | |
|----------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| Aliquīd † tempōris, | { something of time | (<i>Lat. Idiom</i>). |
| | { some time | (<i>Eng. Idiom</i>). |
| Multū † bōnī, | { much of good | (<i>Lat. Idiom</i>). |
| | { much good | (<i>Eng. Idiom</i>). |
| Quantū † vōluptātis, | { how much of pleasure | (<i>Lat. Idiom</i>). |
| | { how much pleasure | (<i>Eng. Idiom</i>). |
| Nihil stābilitātis, | { nothing of stability | (<i>Lat. Idiom</i>). |
| | { no stability | (<i>Eng. Idiom</i>). |

REM.—These (†) are neuter adjectives used as nouns; they govern the genitive by the rule already given (65).

* These should be carefully compared with the corresponding English. A table presenting the *Differences of Idiom* between the Latin and English is inserted in this volume for the benefit of the learner. See p. 275.

139. VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------|---|
| Alīquid, | something. | |
| Amittērē, | to lose. | |
| Avaritiā, ae, | avarice. | |
| Civitas, atis, f. | state. | |
| Corpūs, ōris, n. | body | } (<i>corporal</i>). } (<i>corporeal</i>). |
| Elēphas, antis, m. | elephant. | |
| Figūrā, ae, | figure. | |
| Hābērē, | to have. | |
| Imprōbūs, ā, ūm, | bad, wicked. | |
| Multūm (<i>neut. adj.</i>), | much. | |
| Multūm bonī, | much good. | |
| Multūm tempōris, | much time. | |
| Nihil (<i>indec.</i>), | nothing. | |
| Perdērē, | to waste | (<i>perdition</i>). |
| Quantūm (<i>neut. adj.</i>), | how much? | |
| Sācerdōs, ōtis, m. and f. | priest, priestess. | |
| Stābilitās, atis, f. | firmness, stability | (<i>stability</i>). |
| Tempūs, ōris, n. | time. | |
| Vōluptās, atis, f. | pleasure | (<i>voluptuous</i>). |

140. Exercises.

(a) 1. Avaritia nihil habet voluptātis.⁴ 2. Multum tempōris perdēbat. 3. Figūra nihil habet stabilitātis. 4. Imprōbi leges civitātis violābunt. 5. Servus elephantis corpus puēro monstrābat.

6. Imprōbi virtūtem parvi³ aestīmant. 7. Milītes urbem custodient. 8. Sacerdōtes bonam legem non violābunt. 9. Discipūli multum tempōris perdunt. 10. Indocti multum voluptātis amittunt.

(b) 1. The boy will waste much time.⁴ 2. They will lose much pleasure. 3. The state will observe its laws. 4. The soldiers are violating the laws of the state. 5. The king will punish the soldiers.

6. The priests were praising the queen. 7. The good queen will praise the priests. 8. The soldiers will fear the enemy. 9. The good value wisdom *highly*.² 10. He will laugh at the unlearned. 11. He is losing *much time*. 12. The unlearned lose *much pleasure*.

LESSON XXVII.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.—Genitives in iŭm.—Gender.

141. It has already been mentioned (128, REM.) that some nouns of the third declension have the genitive plural in *iŭm* instead of *ŭm*. These are,

- 1) Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*: as, *măřě*, *măřiŭm*, *ăňimăľ*, *ăňimăľiŭm*.
- 2) Nouns in *is* and *es* of Class III.: as, *hostĭs*, *hostiŭm*; *nŭbĕs*, *nŭbiŭm*.
- 3) All monosyllables in *s* or *x* preceded by a consonant: as, *urbs*, *urbiŭm*; *arx*, *arciŭm*.
- 4) Nouns in *ns* and *rs* (though in these *ŭm* is sometimes used): as, *cliens*, *clientiŭm*; *cohors*, *cohortiŭm*.

REM.—The use of *iŭm* in words not included in the above classes must be learned from observation.

142. The gender of nouns of the third declension, when not determined by their signification (40, 44), may generally be ascertained from their *endings*, by the following

RULES FOR GRAMMATICAL GENDER.

- 1) *Masculines*.—Most nouns in *er*, *or*, *os* *es*, increasing in the genitive, and *o*, except *do*, *go*,

and *io*, are masculine; e. g., *āēr*, air; *hōnōr*, honor; *flōs*, a flower; *pēs* (gen. *pēdis*), a foot; *sermō*, a discourse.

- 2) *Feminines*.—Most nouns in *do*, *go*, *io*, *as*, *is*, *ys*, *aus*, *s* preceded by a consonant, *x*, and *es* not increasing in the genitive, are feminine; e. g., *ārundō*, a reed; *īmāgō*, an image; *ōrātiō*, an oration; *aestūs*, summer; *turrīs*, a tower; *laus*, praise; *hiems*, winter; *lex*, a law; *nūbēs* (gen. *nūbīs*), a cloud.

- 3) *Neuters*.—Most nouns in *a*, *e*, *i*, *y*, *c*, *l*, *n*, *t*, *ar*, *ur*, and *us*, are neuter; e. g., *mārē*, a sea; *poēmā*, a poem; *lāc*, milk; *ānīmāl*, an animal; *flūmēn*, a river; *cāpūt*, a head, &c.

For exceptions, see *Table of Genders* (579).

143. VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|------------------|----------------------|--------------|
| Amīcūs, ī,* | friend | (amicable). |
| Anīmūs, ī, | mind, soul. | |
| Carpērē, | to gather, to pluck. | |
| Flōs, ōrīs, | flower | (floral). |
| Ignāvūs, ā, ūm, | indolent, cowardly. | |
| Māgnitūdō, inīs, | greatness, size | (magnitude). |

144. Exercises.

(a) 1. Veram anīmi magnitudīnem laudābunt. 2. Christiāni leges bonas non violābunt. 3. Puēri *multum* *tempōris** perdunt. 4. Puer caput aperiet.

5. Servus urbis portas claudit. 6. Servi domīnum suum vindicābunt. 7. Puer patris vocem audit. 8.

* Gender, when not given, must be determined by previous rules.

Puēri patrum voces audient. 9. Lupus haedum dilaniābat. 10. Haedi lupos timent.

(b) 1. The boys are gathering flowers. 2. He will pluck the beautiful flower. 3. The dog will fear the lion. 4. Dogs fear lions. 5. The girl will waste *much time*.⁴ 6. Your father will lose *much time*. 7. The indolent lose *much pleasure*. 8. The priests are praising the king.

9. The queen will not violate the laws. 10. The king's son was violating the laws of the state. 11. My friend will not disregard my sorrow. 12. Your friends will not disregard your sorrow.

LESSON XXVIII.

Nouns.—Third Declension.—Formation of Cases from each other.

145. 1) In any noun of the third declension, all the cases, except the nominative and vocative singular (and the accusative sing. in neuters), can be readily formed from each other, by a simple change of the endings: thus, the accusative sing. *hōnōrēm* gives (by a change of ending) the dat. *hōnōrī*, or the dat. and abl. plur. *hōnōribūs*, or any other case which may be desired.

2) The *nominative* and *vocative singular* (and *acc. sing. in neuters*) can generally be formed from any other case, in some one of the following ways:

a) By dropping the ending of the given case: as, *hōnōrēm*,* Nom. *hōnōr*.†

REM. 1.—This applies to many nouns whose root ends in *l*, *n*, or *r*, and to a few with the root in *it*.

REM. 2.—*I* is changed before *t* into *ũ*, and before *n* into *ě*; and *ě* is inserted before *r* when preceded by *t* or *b* (126, 1); e. g., Gen. *cāpřis*; root, *cāpřit*; Nom. *cāpřt*. Gen. *flūmňis*; root, *flūmňn*; Nom. *flūmňn*. Gen. *patrřis*; root, *patr*; Nom. *pătěr*.

b) By changing the ending of the given case into *s*, *ēs*, *řs*, (or for neuters into) *ě*: as, *urbřs*, Nom. *urbs*; *nūbēm*,¹ Nom. *nūbēs*, &c.

REM. 1.—This applies to most nouns of this declension.

REM. 2.—*T*, *d*, or *r*, at the end of the root, is dropped before *s*, and *ř* is changed into *ě*; *cs* or *gs* will of course be written *x*; e. g., *přětătēm*, Nom. *přětās* (*t* dropped before *s*); *mřlřtēm*, Nom. *mřlēs* (*t* dropped before *s*, and *ř* changed into *ě*); *rěgēm*, Nom. *rex* (regs. = rex).

c) By changing the ending of the given case, together with *ěr* or *ōr*, as the last syllable of the root, into *ūs*: as, *gěněřis*, Nom. *gěnūs*.

REM.—This applies only to a few of those words whose root ends in *ěr* or *ōr*.

146. The predicate of a proposition may be modified by a noun denoting the *manner* or *cause* of its action, or the *means* or *instrument* employed; e. g.,

Irām meām dōnō plācābřt.

(*Anger my with a gift he will appease*.)

He will appease my anger *with a gift*.

147. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The *cause* or *manner* of an

* The *acc. sing.* is used here, though any other case would do equally well.

† The *nom.* and *voc.*, it will be remembered, are the same in form.

action, and the *means* or *instrument* employed, are expressed by the *ablative*.

REM.—In the above example, *dōnō* expresses the means employed, and is accordingly in the ablative.

148. VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|-----------------|--------------------------------|--|
| Altūs, ā, ūm, | high, lofty | (<i>altitude</i>). |
| Cătēnă, ae, | chain. | |
| Cîngērē, | to surround. | |
| Complērē, | to fill | (<i>complement</i>). |
| Cunctūs, ā, ūm, | all (as a whole). | |
| Dōnūm, ī, | gift | (<i>donation</i>). |
| Flūmēn, īnis, | river. | |
| Glădiūs, ī, | sword. | |
| Illustrārē, | { to illumine to illuminate | { (<i>illustrate</i>) |
| Iră, ae, | anger | { (<i>ire</i>). (<i>irascible</i>). |
| Lux, lūcis, | light | (<i>lucid</i>). |
| Mūliēr, ēris, | woman. | |
| Plăcārē, | to appease | (<i>placable</i>). |

149. Exercises.

(a) 1. Miles regem gladio occidēbat. 2. Regem catēna vinciēbat. 3. Sol urbem magnam sua luce illustrat. 4. Iram dono placant. 5. Cives regis iram donis placābunt. 6. Flumen urbem cingit.

7. Mulier bona epistōlas scribit. 8. Agricōla urbis portas claudet. 9. Poetārum filiae cantant. 10. Pulchrae pastōrum filiae saltābunt. 11. Caii anīmum donis placābunt.

(b) 1. The soldiers will bind the king with chains. 2. The river will surround the beautiful city. 3. The boy surrounds his head with a garland. 4. He will surround his sister's head with garlands. 5. He will

give a beautiful garland to his sister. 6. They will give beautiful garlands to their brothers.

7. They were building a wall. 8. They will surround the city with a high wall. 9. The sun illumines all (things) with its light. 10. The sun fills all (things) with its light. 11. The blind do not see the sun. 12. The blind do not see the light of the sun.

LESSON XXIX.

Adjectives.—Third Declension.

150. ADJECTIVES of the third declension may be divided into three classes, viz :

- 1) Those which have three different forms in the nominative singular (one for each gender).
- 2) Those which have two (the *masc.* and *fem.* being the same).
- 3) Those which have but one (the same for all genders).

151. Adjectives of the third declension are declined in their several genders like nouns of the same *declension*, *gender*, and *ending*. It must, however, be observed,

- 1) That those which have only one form in the nominative singular have the abl. sing. in *ě* or *ĩ*, and the rest, with the exception of comparatives, in *ĩ* only.
- 2) That all except comparatives have, in the *plural*, the *nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc. neuter* in *ũ*, and the *genitive* in *ũm*.

CLASS I.—THREE TERMINATIONS.

152. Adjectives of the first class have in the nominative singular the masculine in *ēr*, the feminine in *īs*, and the neuter in *ě*.

PARADIGM.

| <i>Acěr, sharp.</i> | | | |
|---------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| SINGULAR. | | | |
| | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
| N. | <i>Acěr,</i> | <i>ācr-īs,</i> | <i>ācr-ě.</i> |
| G. | <i>Acr-īs,</i> | <i>ācr-īs,</i> | <i>ācr-īs.</i> |
| D. | <i>Acr-ī,</i> | <i>ācr-ī,</i> | <i>ācr-ī.</i> |
| A. | <i>Acr-ēm,</i> | <i>ācr-ēm,</i> | <i>ācr-ě.</i> |
| V. | <i>Acěr,</i> | <i>ācr-īs,</i> | <i>ācr-ě.</i> |
| A. | <i>Acr-ī,</i> | <i>ācr-ī,</i> | <i>ācr-ī.</i> |
| PLURAL. | | | |
| N. | <i>Acr-ēs,</i> | <i>ācr-ēs,</i> | <i>ācr-iā.</i> |
| G. | <i>Acr-iūm,</i> | <i>ācr-iūm,</i> | <i>ācr-iūm.</i> |
| D. | <i>Acr-ībūs,</i> | <i>ācr-ībūs,</i> | <i>ācr-ībūs.</i> |
| A. | <i>Acr-ēs,</i> | <i>ācr-ēs,</i> | <i>ācr-iā.</i> |
| V. | <i>Acr-ēs,</i> | <i>ācr-ēs,</i> | <i>ācr-iā.</i> |
| A. | <i>Acr-ībūs,</i> | <i>ācr-ībūs,</i> | <i>ācr-ībūs.</i> |

CLASS II.—TWO TERMINATIONS.

153. Adjectives of the second class have both the masculine and feminine in *īs*, and the neuter in *ě*, except comparatives,* which have the masculine and feminine in *iōr*, and the neuter in *iūs*.

* The use of comparatives will be illustrated in connection with the comparison of adjectives.

PARADIGMS.

1. *Tristis, sad.*

| SINGULAR. | | PLURAL. | |
|-----------------------|--------------|-----------------------|--------------|
| <i>Masc. and Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Masc. and Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
| N. Trist-īs, | trist-ě. | N. Trist-ēs, | trist-iā. |
| G. Trist-īs, | trist-īs. | G. Trist-iūm, | trist-iūm. |
| D. Trist-i, | trist-i. | D. Trist-ibūs, | trist-ibūs. |
| A. Trist-ēm, | trist-ě. | A. Trist-ēs, | trist-iā. |
| V. Trist-īs, | trist-ě. | V. Trist-ēs, | trist-iā. |
| A. Trist-i, | trist-i. | A. Trist-ibūs, | trist-ibūs. |

2. *Tristiōr (comparative), more sad.*

| SINGULAR. | | PLURAL. | |
|-----------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|----------------|
| <i>Masc. and Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Masc. and Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
| N. Tristiōr, | tristiūs. | N. Tristiōr-ēs, | tristiōr-ā. |
| G. Tristiōr-īs, | tristiōr-īs. | G. Tristiōr-ūm, | tristiōr-ūm. |
| D. Tristiōr-i, | tristiōr-i. | D. Tristiōr-ibūs, | tristiōr-ibūs. |
| A. Tristiōr-ēm, | tristiūs. | A. Tristiōr-ēs, | tristiōr-ā. |
| V. Tristiōr, | tristiūs. | V. Tristiōr-ēs, | tristiōr-ā. |
| A. Tristiōr-ě (i), | tristiōr-ě (i). | A. Tristiōr-ibūs, | tristiōr-ibūs. |

CLASS III.—ONE TERMINATION.

154. All other adjectives of this declension have *only one* form in the nominative singular for all genders.

PARADIGMS.

1. *Fēlix, happy.*

| SINGULAR. | | PLURAL. | |
|-----------------------|--------------|-----------------------|--------------|
| <i>Masc. and Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Masc. and Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
| N. Fēlix, | fēlix. | N. Fēlic-ēs, | fēlic-iā. |
| G. Fēlic-īs, | fēlic-īs. | G. Fēlic-iūm, | fēlic-iūm. |
| D. Fēlic-i, | fēlic-i. | D. Fēlic-ibūs, | fēlic-ibūs. |
| A. Fēlic-ēm, | fēlix. | A. Fēlic-ēs, | fēlic-iā. |
| V. Fēlix, | fēlix. | V. Fēlic-ēs, | fēlic-iā. |
| A. Fēlic-ě (i), | fēlic-ě (i). | A. Fēlic-ibūs, | fēlic-ibūs. |

PARADIGMS,—continued.

| 2. Prudens, prudent. | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| SINGULAR. | | PLURAL. | |
| <i>Masc. and Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Masc. and Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
| N. Prudens, | prudens. | N. Prudent-ēs, | prudent-iā. |
| G. Prudent-īs, | prudent-īs. | G. Prudent-iūm, | prudent-iūm. |
| D. Prudent-i, | prudent-i. | D. Prudent-ībūs, | prudent-ībūs. |
| A. Prudent-ēm, | prudens. | A. Prudent-ēs, | prudent-iā. |
| V. Prudens, | prudens. | V. Prudent-ēs, | prudent-iā. |
| A. Prudent-ē (i), | prudent-ē(i). | A. Prudent-ībūs, | prudent-ībūs. |

155. VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|--------------------|---|-----------------------|
| Acēr, acrīs, acrē, | sharp, severe | (<i>acrid</i>). |
| Fidelīs, ē, | trusty, faithful | (<i>fidelity</i>). |
| Fortīs, ē, | brave | (<i>fortitude</i>). |
| Glōriā, ae, | glory. | |
| Māculārē, | to blemish, to stain | (<i>maculate</i>). |
| Maxīmī, | at a very high (price), very highly. | |
| Maxīmī aestimārē, | to prize very highly. | |
| Pausanias, ae, | Pausanias, | |
| | <i>a distinguished Spartan general.</i> | |
| Prudens, entīs, | prudent, cautious. | |
| Turpīs, ē, | base, disgraceful | (<i>turpitude</i>) |
| Sāpiens, entīs, | wise. | |
| Splendens, entīs, | shining | (<i>splendid</i>). |

156. Exercises.

(a) 1. Pater meus fidēlem servum vindicābat. 2. Fidēles servī domīnos suos vindicābunt. 3. Sol splendens cuncta suā luce illustrābat. 4. Sapientes virtūtem *maxīmi*² aestimant.

5. Sapiens leges acres non violābit. 6. Christiāni virtūtem laudant. 7. Boni virtūtem *magni* aestimābant. 8. Pausanias gloriam turpi morte maculābat. 9. Pausanias magnam belli gloriam turpi morte maculābat.

(b) 1. The brave soldier will fight. 2. The brave king will conquer the enemy (*pl.*). 3. The brave will

conquer the cowardly. 4. Wise (men) will not stain their glory by a base death.

5. The good prize the laws of the state *very highly*.*

6. Kind masters do not punish faithful slaves. 7. A prudent (man) will not violate the laws of his country

8. The prudent do not violate severe laws.

LESSON XXX.

Adjectives, continued.—Nouns.—Fourth Declension.

157. ADJECTIVES are either of the *first* and *second declension*, or of the *third only*: those of the first and second declension are declined in the *masculine* and *neuter* like nouns of the *second* declension, and in the *feminine* like nouns of the *first*; those of the third declension are declined throughout like nouns of the *third*. (See Lesson XXIII.)

158. Endings of adjectives of the first and second declension.

| | SINGULAR. | | | PLURAL. | | | A few † have Sing. thus: | | |
|----|--------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|--------------------------|-------------|--------------|
| | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
| | 2.* | 1. | 2. | 2. | 1. | 2. | | | |
| N. | ūs, ěr, † | ă, | ŭm. | ī, | ae, | ă. | ūs, ěr, | ă, | ŭm. |
| G. | ī, | ae, | ī. | ōrŭm, | ārŭm, | ōrŭm. | iūs, | iūs, | iūs. |
| D. | ō, | ae, | ō. | īs, | īs, | īs. | ī, | ī, | ī. |
| A. | ŭm, | ăm, | ŭm. | ōs, | ās, | ă. | ŭm, | ăm, | ŭm. |
| V. | ě, ěr, † | ă, | ŭm. | ī, | ae, | ă. | ě, ěr, | ă, | ŭm. |
| A. | ō, | ā, | ō. | īs, | īs, | īs. | ō, | ā, | ō. |

* The declensions of the different genders are here indicated by numerals.

† In adjectives in ěr, the *masc. nom. sing.* is generally the root (ě is sometimes dropped): ěr, therefore, is not properly a *case-ending*; it is given merely to show the termination of the *nom.* and *voc. sing.*, without regard to the root (107).

† See list, 113, REM.

159. Endings of adjectives of the Third Declension.

| THREE TERM. | | | TWO TERM. | | COMPARATIVES. | | ONE TERM. | |
|-------------|-----------|-----------|-----------------------|-------|---------------------------|-----------|-----------------------|-------|
| <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>M. & F. N.</i> | | <i>M. & F.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>M. & F. N.</i> | |
| N. ěr,* | īs, | ě. | īs, | ě. | ōr,† | ūs. | various. | |
| G. īs, | īs, | īs. | īs, | īs. | ōr†-īs, | ōr-īs. | īs. | |
| D. ī, | ī, | ī. | ī, | ī. | ōr-ī, | ōr-ī. | ī. | |
| A. ěm, | ěm, | ě. | ěm, | ě. | ōr-ěm, | ūs. | ěm.† | |
| V. ěr,* | īs, | ě. | īs, | ě. | ōr, | ūs. | like nom. | |
| A. ī, | ī, | ī. | ī, | ī. | ōr-ě (ōr-ī), ōr-ě (ōr-ī). | | ě (ī). | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| N. ēs, | ēs, | īā. | ēs, | īā. | ōr-ēs, | ōr-ā. | ēs, | īā. |
| G. iūm, | iūm, | iūm. | iūm, | iūm. | ōr-ūm, | ōr-ūm. | iūm, | iūm. |
| D. ibūs, | ibūs, | ibūs. | ibūs, | ibūs. | ōr-ibūs, | ōr-ibūs. | ibūs, | ibūs. |
| A. ēs, | ēs, | īā. | ēs, | īā. | ōr-ēs, | ōr-ā. | ēs, | īā. |
| V. ēs, | ēs, | īā. | ēs, | īā. | ōr-ēs, | ōr-ā. | ēs, | īā. |
| A. ibūs, | ibūs, | ibūs. | ibūs, | ibūs. | ōr-ibūs, | ōr-ibūs. | ibūs, | ibūs. |

FOURTH DECLENSION.

160. Nouns of the *Fourth Declension* have the genitive singular in *ūs*, and the nominative in *ūs* and *ū*.

161. In this declension, nouns in *ūs* (with a few exceptions) are *masculine*, and those in *ū* are *neuter*.

162. The root is found by dropping the *nominative ending*: as, *fructūs*, fruit; root, *fruct*: *cornū*, a horn; root, *corn*.

163. Nouns in *ūs* (of the fourth declension) are declined with the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

| | <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Accus. Voc.</i> | <i>Abl.</i> |
|-------|-------------|-------------|----------------|--------------------|----------------|
| Sing | ūs, | ūs, | uī, | ūm, ūs, | ū. |
| Plur. | ūs, | uūm, | ibūs (ūbūs †), | ūs, ūs, | ibūs (ūbūs †). |

* The remark on this ending, in adjectives of the first and second declension, is also applicable here (See 158, REM. 2.)

† The *ōr* here given in connection with the case-endings belongs to the root; in the *nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc.* of the *neut. sing.*, it is changed into *ūs*.

‡ Neut. like nom.

§ This ending is used only in a few words.

164. Neuters in *ū*, though formerly considered indeclinable in the singular, are found to have the genitive in *ūs*, and are declined with the following

NEUTER CASE-ENDINGS.

| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Accus.</i> | <i>Voc.</i> | <i>Abl.</i> |
|-------------------|--------------|-------------------------------|---------------|-------------|-------------------------------|
| Sing. <i>ū</i> | <i>ūs</i> , | <i>ū</i> , | <i>ū</i> , | <i>ū</i> , | <i>ū</i> . |
| Plur. <i>uā</i> , | <i>uūm</i> , | <i>ibūs</i> (<i>ūbūs*</i>), | <i>uā</i> , | <i>uā</i> , | <i>ibūs</i> (<i>ūtūs*</i>). |

PARADIGMS.

| | | | |
|--|----------------|--|----------------|
| 1. Fructūs, <i>m.</i> , <i>fruit.</i> (<i>root, fruct.</i>) | | 2. Cornū, <i>n.</i> , <i>a horn.</i> (<i>root, corn.</i>) | |
| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> | <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
| N. Fruct-ūs, | Fruct-ūs. | N. Corn-ū, | Corn-uā. |
| G. Fruct-ūs, | Fruct-uūm. | G. Corn-ūs, | Corn-uūm. |
| D. Fruct-ūi, | Fruct-ibūs. | D. Corn-ū, | Corn-ibūs. |
| A. Fruct-ūm, | Fruct-ūs. | A. Corn-ū, | Corn-uā. |
| V. Fruct-ūs, | Fruct-ūs. | V. Corn-ū, | Corn-uā. |
| A. Fruct-ū. | Fruct-ibūs. | A. Corn-ū, | Corn-ibūs. |

165. VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------|
| Currūs, ūs, | chariot. | |
| Dux, dūcīs, <i>m. and f.</i> | leader, guide | (<i>duke</i>). |
| Et, | and. | |
| Exerūciārē, | to torture | (<i>excruciate</i>). |
| Exercitūs, ūs, | army. | |
| Innōcens, entīs, | innocent. | |
| Luctūs, ūs, | grief, sadness. | |
| Mānūs, ūs, <i>f.</i> | hand | (<i>manacle</i>). |
| Mētūs, ūs, | fear. | |
| Nescīrē, | not to know, to be ignorant of. | |
| Sinūs, ūs, | bosom | (<i>sinuous</i>). |
| Sullā, ae, | Sulla, <i>a man's name.</i> | |

* This ending is used only in a few words.

166. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Sinus metum nescit. 2. Luctus animum excruciat. 3. Rex hostium (141, 2) currus videt. 4. Hostes regis currum audient. 5. Duces exercitui viam monstrābunt. 6. Puella epistolam sua manu scribit.

7. Caius epistolas sua manu scribēbat. 8. Servi Sullae domum evertēbant. 9. Servus domīni mortem vindicābit. 10. Pastōris filius mortem non timet. 11. Luctus et metus animum excruciant (612, REM.).

(b) 1. The innocent (man) knows not fear. 2. The innocent know not fear. 3. The bosom of the innocent knows not fear. 4. The boy's mother will write the letter with her own hand. 5. The father is writing the letters with his own hand.

6. The slave will show the beautiful chariot to his master. 7. The father will avenge the death of his son. 8. Fear tortures the cowardly. 9. Fear does not torture the brave. 10. The cowardly fear death. 11. Brave soldiers do not fear the enemy.

LESSON XXXI.

Nouns.—Fifth Declension.

167. NOUNS of the *Fifth Declension* have the genitive singular in *ēi*,* and the nominative in *ēs*.

168. Nouns of this declension are feminine, except *diēs*, a day, masculine and feminine in the singular,

* In the ending of the gen. and dat. sing. *e* is long, except in *spēi* (where it is short), *fidei*, and *rei* (where it is common).

and masculine only in the plural; and *měrūdiēs*, mid-day, masculine.

REM.—The fifth declension comprises only a few words, and of these few, only two,—*diēs*, a day, and *rēs*, a thing, are complete in the plural.

169. The root is formed by dropping the nominative ending: as, *diēs*, a day; root, *di*.

170. Nouns of this declension are declined with the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

| | <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Accus.</i> | <i>Voc.</i> | <i>Abl.</i> |
|-------|-------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|---------------|
| Sing. | <i>ēs</i> , | <i>ēī</i> ,* | <i>ēī</i> ,* | <i>ēm</i> , | <i>ēs</i> , | <i>ē</i> . |
| Plur. | <i>ēs</i> , | <i>ērūm</i> , | <i>ēbūs</i> , | <i>ēs</i> , | <i>ēs</i> , | <i>ēbūs</i> . |

PARADIGMS.

| <i>Rēs</i> , <i>f.</i> , a thing. (root, <i>r.</i>) | | | <i>Diēs</i> , <i>m. and f.</i> , a day. (root, <i>di</i> .) | | |
|---|-----------------|--|--|------------------|--|
| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> | | <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> | |
| N. <i>R-ēs</i> , | <i>R-ēs</i> . | | N. <i>Di-ēs</i> , | <i>Di-ēs</i> . | |
| G. <i>R-ēī</i> , | <i>R-ērūm</i> . | | G. <i>Di-ēī</i> , | <i>Di-ērūm</i> . | |
| D. <i>R-ēī</i> , | <i>R-ēbūs</i> . | | D. <i>Di-ēī</i> , | <i>Di-ēbūs</i> . | |
| A. <i>R-ēm</i> , | <i>R-ēs</i> . | | A. <i>Di-ēm</i> , | <i>Di-ēs</i> . | |
| V. <i>R-ēs</i> , | <i>R-ēs</i> . | | V. <i>Di-ēs</i> , | <i>Di-ēs</i> . | |
| A. <i>R-ē</i> , | <i>R-ēbūs</i> . | | A. <i>Di-ē</i> , | <i>Di-ēbūs</i> . | |

171. VOCABULARY.

Acīēs, *ēī*, line of battle.

Acīēm instruērē, to draw up an army in order of battle.

Cōpiaē,† *ārūm*, forces (copious).

Diēs, *ēī*, day.

* See note on page 78.

† *Cōpiaē* is of the first declension, plural; the singular is not used with this signification.

| | | |
|------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Edūcērē, | to lead forth | (<i>educē</i>). |
| Emērē, | to purchase. | |
| Equitātūs, ūs, | cavalry. | |
| Fidēs, ēi, | faith, one's word | (<i>fidelity</i>). |
| Instruērē, | to arrange, to array | (<i>instruct</i>). |
| Omnīs, ē, | all, every. | |
| Proximūs, ā, ūm, | nearest, next | (<i>proximate</i>) |
| Rēducērē, | to lead back | (<i>reduce</i>). |
| Servārē, | to keep, to observe | (<i>serve</i>). |
| Spēs, ēi, | hope. | |

172. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Christiānus fidem suam servat. 2. Boni fidem suam non viōlant. 3. Dies veniet. 4. Proximo die (88) Caesar copias suas reducēbat. 5. Proximo die Caesar aciem instruēbat.

6. Caesar equitātum omnem educēbat. 7. Puellam regis currum vidēbat. 8. Hostium (141, 2) copias vidēbunt. 9. Tullia puellis viam monstrābit. 10. Tullia epistolam sua manu scribit.

(b) 1. The king will keep his word. 2. The queen will not break her word. 3. All (men) prize hope *very highly*.² 4. They do not purchase hope with gold. 5. The wise will not sell hope for gold (122).

6. He prizes his cavalry *very highly*. 7. The king thinks *highly* of his whole army. 8. The soldiers will observe the laws. 9. The citizens will observe all the laws of the state. 10. The wise value true greatness of mind *very highly*. 11. The avaricious value money *very highly*.

LESSON XXXII.

Nouns.—Five Declensions.—Greek Nouns.—Gender.

173. TERMINATIONS of Substantives.

| SINGULAR. | | | | | | | | |
|-----------|-----------------|----|--------------------|----|----------|----|---------|--|
| Dec. I. | Dec. II. | | Dec. III. | | Dec. IV. | | Dec. V. | |
| F. | M. | N. | M. & F. | N. | M. | N. | F. | |
| N. ā. | ūs, ěr, ĩr. ũm. | | various. | | ūs. | ũ. | ēs. | |
| G. ae. | ī. | | īs. | | ūs. | | ēī.* | |
| D. ae. | ō. | | ī. | | uī. | ũ. | ēī.* | |
| A. ām. | ũm. | | ēm (īm). like nom. | | ũm. | ũ. | ēm. | |
| V. ā. | ē, ěr, ĩr. ũm. | | like nom. | | ūs. | ũ. | ēs. | |
| A. ā. | ō. | | ē (ī). | | ũ. | | ē. | |

| PLURAL. | | | | | | | | |
|----------|------|----|-----------|-----------|--------------|-----|-------|--|
| N. ae. | ī. | ā. | ēs, | ā, or iā. | ūs. | uā. | ēs. | |
| G. ārũm. | ōrũm | | ũm (iũm). | | uũm. | | ērũm. | |
| D. ĩs. | īs. | | ībũs. | | ībũs (ũbũs). | | ēbũs. | |
| A. ās. | ōs. | ā. | ēs. | ā, or iā. | ūs. | uā. | ēs. | |
| V. ae. | ī. | ā. | ēs. | ā, or iā. | ūs. | uā. | ēs. | |
| A. ĩs. | īs. | | ībũs. | | ībũs (ũbũs). | | ēbũs. | |

REM.—The above table presents the endings of all nouns in the Latin language, except a few derived from the Greek. The only *nominative endings* not already noticed, are *e*, *as*, and *es*, in the first declension, and *os* and *on* in the second.

174. The following are specimens of the declension of Greek nouns.

* See 167, REM.

DECLENSION I.

1. Aenēās (*α man's name*). | 2. Anchīsēs (*α man's name*).

N. Aenē-ās,

G. Aenē-ae,

D. Aenē-ae,

A. Aenē-ām (ān),

V. Aenē-ā,

A. Aenē-ā.

N. Anchīs-ēs,

G. Anchīs-ae,

D. Anchīs-ae,

A. Anchīs-ēn,

V. Anchīs-ē (ā),

A. Anchīs-ē (ā).

3. Epitome, *an abridgment*.*Singular.*

N. Epitōm-ē,

G. Epitōm-ēs,

D. Epitōm-ae,

A. Epitōm-ēn,

V. Epitōm-ē,

A. Epitōm-ē,

Plural.

Epitōm-ae.

Epitōm-ārūm.

Epitōm-īs.

Epitōm-ās.

Epitōm-ae.

Epitōm-īs.

DECLENSION II.

1. Ilion, *n. (name of a city)*. | 2. Delos, *f. (name of an island)*.

N. Ili-ōn,

G. Ili-i,

D. Ili-ō,

A. Ili-ōn,

V. Ili-ōn,

A. Ili-ō.

N. Dēl-ōs,

G. Dēl-i,

D. Dēl-ō,

A. Dēl-ōn,

V. Dēl-ē,

A. Dēl-ō.

DECLENSION III.

1. Pericles (*α man's name*). | 2. Hērōs, *α hero*.

*Singular.**Plural.*

N. Pērīcl-ēs,

G. Pērīcl-īs,

D. Pērīcl-i,

A. Pērīcl-ēm (eā),

V. Pērīcl-ēs (ē),

A. Pērīcl-ē.

N. Hērō-s,

G. Hērō-īs,

D. Hērō-i,

A. Hērō-ēm (ā), Hērō-ēs (ās).

V. Hērō-s,

A. Hērō-ē,

Hērō-ēs.

Hērō-ūm.

Hērō-ībūs.

Hērō-ēs.

Hērō-ēs.

Hērō-ībūs.

175. Table of Genders of Nouns as determined by Nom. Ending.

| | MASCULINE. | FEMININE. | NEUTER. |
|-----------|---|--|--|
| Dec. I. | ās and ēs. | ā and ē. | |
| Dec. II. | ēr, ĭr, ūs (and os*). | | ŭm (and on*). |
| Dec. III. | er, or, os, es, increasing in gen. and o, <i>except</i> do, go, and io. | do, go, io, as, is, ys, aus, s impure, † x and es not increasing in gen. | a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, and uē |
| Dec. IV. | ūs. | | ū. |
| Dec. V. | | ēs. | |

(For exceptions see Table of Genders [579]).

176. VOCABULARY.

| | |
|-----------------|--|
| Accĭpĕrĕ, † | to receive, to accept. |
| Achillēs, † ĭs | Achilles, <i>a Grecian hero.</i> |
| Aenĕās, ae, | Aeneas, <i>a Trojan prince.</i> |
| Anchĭsēs, ae, | Anchises, <i>the father of Aeneas.</i> |
| Ascāniūs, ĭ, | Ascanius, <i>the son of Aeneas.</i> |
| Carthāgŏ, ĭnĭs, | Carthage, <i>a city in the northern part of Africa.</i> |

* The inclosed endings belong to Greek nouns, many of which, being proper names (of men and women), have natural gender.

† Preceded by a consonant.

‡ Accĭpĕrĕ forms its imperfect and future tenses like verbs of the fourth conjugation. (See 270, 271.)

§ Achillēs, being a Greek noun, is declined like Pericles (174).

| | | |
|---------------------|---|------------|
| Didō,* ūs, or ōnīs, | Dido, <i>queen of Tyre and afterwards the foundress of Carthage.</i> | |
| Epītōmē, ēs, | abridgment | (epitome), |
| Hērōs, ōīs, | hero. | |
| Histōriā, ae, | history. | |
| Industriā, ae, | industry. | |
| Nostēr, trā, trūm, | our. | |
| Rēgnūm, ī, | kingdom, government. | |
| Rōmā, ae, | Rome, <i>city of Italy, on the river Tiber.</i> | |
| Trōjānūs, ā, ūm, | Trojan. | |

177. Exercises.

(a) 1. Aenēas, Anchīsae filius, urbem condēbat. 2. Ascanius, Aenēae filius, regnum accīpit. 3. Dido Carthagīnem condēbat. 4. Epitōmen oratiōnis suae scribet.

5. Caesar milītes omnes educēbat. 6. Industria *multum voluptūtis* habet. 7. Labōrem suum finiet. 8. Horti nostri multos flores habent. 9. Servus puēros vocābit.

(b) 1. Aeneas was founding Rome. 2. The son of Anchises was founding Rome. 3. Aeneas, the son of Anchises, was founding the city of Rome (the city Rome) 4. The Trojan hero loves queen Dido. 5. They will kill the Trojan hero.

6. They are reading an abridgment of the history. 7. The soldiers praise Caesar. 8. Aeneas praises his father Anchises. 9. The Trojans fear Achilles. 10. Achilles was slaying the Trojans. 11. The soldier is showing his sword to the boy. 12. They will show their swords to the boys.

* Dido is sometimes declined regularly, as a Latin noun of the third declension, and sometimes has the genitive in *ūs*, and all the other cases like the nom.

LESSON XXXIII.

Verbs.—*Essě*, to be. *Predicate*, *Essě*, with a Noun or an Adjective.

178. *Essě*, to be, is an irregular verb (i. e., it does not belong to either of the four conjugations already noticed), and gives us in the *third persons* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future tenses*, the following

PARADIGM.

| | <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
| Present. | Est, he, she, or it is, | Sunt, they are, |
| Imperfect. | Erāt, “ “ “ was, | Erant, “ were, |
| Future. | Erit, “ “ “ will be. | Erunt, “ will be. |

179. The predicate of a proposition is sometimes expressed by the verb *essě* (to be), with a noun or an adjective; e. g.,

1. Terrā est rōtundā.

The earth is round.

REM. 1.—In this example, the predicate is not simply *est*, but *est rōtundā*; for the assertion is not that the earth *is* (i. e. exists), but that the earth *is round*.

REM. 2.—The adjective *rōtundā* agrees with the subject *terrā* in *gender*, *number*, and *case*, by the rule already given. (114).

2. Plūrīmae stellae sōlēs sunt.

(*Very many stars suns are.*)

Very many stars are suns.

REM.—Here the predicate is *sōlēs sunt*.

180. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun in the predicate after *essě* is put in the same case as the subject when it denotes the same person or thing.

REM.—In example 2, *sōlēs* is in the nominative by this rule.

181. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The adjectives *dignūs*, *indignūs*, *contentūs*, *praeditūs*, *frētūs*, and *libēr*, take the ablative; e. g.,

Virtūs parvō contentā est.
(*Virtue with little content is.*)
Virtue is content *with little*.

REM.—*Parvō* in this example is a neut. adj. used as a noun; it is put in the *ablative* after *contentā*, by the rule just given.

182. VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| Arbōr, ōrīs, <i>f.</i> | tree | (<i>arbor</i>). |
| Beātūs, ā, ūm, | happy | (<i>beatitude</i>) |
| Candidūs, ā, ūm, | white | (<i>candid</i>). |
| Contentūs, ā, ūm, | content, contented. | |
| Culpā, ae, | blame, fault | (<i>culpable</i>). |
| Dignūs, ā, ūm, | worthy | (<i>dignity</i>). |
| Essē, | to be. | |
| Est, | is, it is. | |
| Fācērē,* | to do, to make. | |
| Flōrērē, | to flourish. | |
| Frētūs, ā, ūm, | relying on. | |
| Indignūs, ā, ūm, | unworthy | (<i>indignity</i>). |
| Laus, dis, | praise | (<i>laud</i>). |
| Libēr, ērā, ērūm, | free | (<i>liberty</i>). |
| Nēmō (inis,†) | nobody, no one. | |
| Nix, nivīs, | snow. | |
| Nurquām, | never. | |
| Parvūm (<i>neut. adj.</i>), | little, a little. | |
| Praeditūs, ā, ūm, | endued with. | |
| Quām, | how. | |
| Quām multī, ae, ā, | how many. | |
| Sempēr, | always. | |
| Vīrēs, vīriūm, <i>plur. of vīs</i> , | strength. | |
| Vitā, ae, | life | ot (<i>vital</i>). |

* This verb, together with some others of the third conjugation, has the imperfect and future like verbs of the fourth conjugation.

† The genitive *neminis* and ablative *nemine* are not in good use.

183. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Nix est cāidā. 2. Bonus est beātus. 3. Boni sunt beāti. 4. Sapientes parvo contenti sunt. 5. Servus laude dignus est. 6. Patris mei servus laude indīgnus est.

7. Caius patriam auro vendēbat. 8. Caius, homo vita indīgnus, patriam auro vendet. 9. Quam multi indīgni luce sunt! 10. Arbor florēbat. 11. Balbus multa laude florēbat.

(b) 1. No-one is always happy. 2. The avaricious (man) will never be contented. 3. The avaricious are not contented. 4. Caius is not free from blame. 5. Caius is unworthy of praise.

6. Balbus praises my fidelity. 7. Balbus, a man endowed with great virtue, was praising my fidelity. 8. Balbus does *much good*.⁴ 9. Caius is unworthy of life. 10. Caius, a man unworthy of life, does *no good*.⁴ 11. Caius, relying on his strength, does not fear the lion. 12. The slaves are not free from blame. 13. Christians are contented with little.

LESSON XXXIV.

Verbs.—Infinitive as Subject.—Genitive with Esse in the Predicate.

184. AN *infinitive mood* (with the words belonging to it) (9) may be used as a noun, and thus become the subject of a verb. When thus used it is in the neuter gender (44, 3), and of course takes the adjectives in agreement with it in the same gender; e. g.,

Difficīlē est jūdicārē.

(*Difficult (it) is to judge.*)

It is difficult *to judge*, or, *To judge* is difficult.

REM.—Here *jūdicārē* (to judge) is the subject of the proposition, for it is that of which the predicate *difficile est* (is difficult) is affirmed. It is in the nominative case, and subject of the verb *est*, and the adjective *difficīlē* agrees with it.

185. When the noun in the predicate after *essē* does not denote the same person or thing as the subject, it is put in the *genitive*; e. g.,

Christiānī est nēmīnēm viōlārē.

(*Of a Christian it is nobody to wrong.*)

It is the duty (or part) of a Christian to wrong nobody.

REM. 1.—In this example the subject is *nēmīnēm viōlārē*, and the predicate, *Christiānī est*.

REM. 2.—Combining articles 180 and 185 we have the following

186. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun in the predicate, after the verb *essē*, is put,

- 1) In the same case as the subject when it denotes the same person or thing; e. g., *Cīcērō ērāt consūl*, *Cicero was consul*.
- 2) In the *genitive* when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g., *Christiānī est nēmīnēm viōlārē*, *it is the duty of a Christian to wrong nobody*.

187. In rendering into English, when a genitive follows any part of the verb *essē* (as *est*, *ērāt*, *ērīt*, &c.), such a substantive as *duty*, *part*, *mark*, *business*, &c., must be supplied.

| English Idiom. | Latin Idiom. |
|----------------|----------------------|
| It is the part | It is of a wise man. |
| " duty | |
| " business | |
| " mark | |
| " character | |

188. VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|-----------------|--|--------------|
| Difficilis, ĕ, | difficult. | |
| Errarĕ, | to err. | |
| Facilis, ĕ, | easy | (facility). |
| Fidĕm violarĕ, | to break one's word. | |
| Humānūs, a, um, | human, natural to man. | |
| Magnūm est, | it is a great thing. | |
| Peccārĕ, | to sin, to do wrong. | |
| Turpīs, ĕ, | base, disgraceful | (turpitude). |
| Violārĕ, | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{to offend against, to wrong, to} \\ \text{break a law, one's word, \&c.} \end{array} \right\}$ | (violate). |
| | | |

189. Exercises.

(a) 1. *Humānum*⁶ est peccāre. 2. *Humānum* est errāre. 3. *Turpe* est fidem suam violāre. 4. *Patris*⁷ est filium suum docĕre. 5. *Regis* est regnāre.

6. *Matris* est filias suas docĕre. 7. *Servi* est viam monstrāre. 8. *Turpe* est poĕtae domum evertĕre. 9. *Matres* filias laudant. 10. *Boni* est fidem servāre. 11. *Impii* est fidem violāre.

REM. 1.—In English, when an infinitive mood is the subject of a proposition, the pronoun *it* is used before the verb *is*; hence, in translating such sentences into Latin, this pronoun *it*, which represents, as it were, the coming infinitive or clause, must be omitted.

REM. 2.—After *it is*, such a substantive as *part, duty, business, mark*, must be omitted in translating into Latin.

(b) 1. *It* is a great (thing) not to fear death.⁶ 2. *It* is easy to err. 3. *It* is (the duty)⁷ of a Christian to keep (his) word. 4. It is (the part) of a wise (man) to keep the laws.

5. It is disgraceful to neglect a son. 6. It is natural-to-man to prize money *very highly*. 7. It is the mark of an unlearned man *to think little* of wisdom. 8. It is the slave's *business* to shut the gates of the city. 9. It is difficult to shut the gates of the city. 10. A

good citizen will observe the laws of his country. 11. It is the *part*⁷ of a good citizen to observe the laws of his country.

LESSON XXXV.

Verbs.—Tenses for Completed Action.—First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations.

190. THE tenses which we have thus far used, viz., the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future*, represent the action of the verb as continuing (11), i. e., as *not completed*. There are also three tenses for *completed* action, viz.:

- 1) The *Perfect*, which represents the action as *completed* in *present* time, i. e., as just completed; e. g., *āmāvit*, he has loved.
- 2) The *Pluperfect*, which represents the action as *completed* in *past* time; as, *āmāverāt*, he had loved.
- 3) The *Future Perfect*, which represents the action as *completed* in *future* time; as, *āmāverit*, he will have loved.

191. The tenses for *completed* action are not formed from the same root as those for action *not completed*, but from another called the *second root*. This is formed in various ways.

192. In the first, second, and fourth conjugations, the *second root* is formed by adding *āv*, *ū*,* and *īv*, respectively, to the root † of the verb; e. g.:

* A very few verbs of the second conjugation add *ev*, which may be regarded as the full form for which *u* is a contraction (the *e* being dropped, and *v* changed to *u*).

† This we will now call the 1st root, to distinguish it from the 2d.

| | | <i>First Root.</i> | <i>Second Root.</i> |
|-----------|---------|--------------------|---------------------|
| Conj. I. | Amārě, | ām, | āmāv. |
| Conj. II. | Mönērě, | mön, | mönŭ. |
| Conj. IV. | Audīrě, | aud, | audīv. |

193. In verbs of all the conjugations, the *third persons singular* of the tenses for *completed* action are formed by adding to the *second root* the following *endings*:

| | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Perfect.</i> | <i>Pluperfect.</i> | <i>Future Perfect.</i> |
| īt, | ērăt, | ērīt. |

PARADIGMS.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Amārě, to love: 1st root, *ām*; 2d root, *āmāv*.

Perfect. Amāv-īt, he, she, or it has loved (*or* loved).*

Pluperf. Amāv-ērăt, “ “ “ had loved.

Fut. Perf. Amāv-ērīt, “ “ “ will have loved.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Mönērě, to advise: 1st root, *mön*; 2d root, *mönŭ*.

Perfect. Mönu-īt, he, she, or it has advised (*or* advised).*

Pluperf. Mönu-ērăt, “ “ “ had advised.

Fut. Perf. Mönu-ērīt, “ “ “ shall have advised.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Audīrě, to hear: 1st root, *aud*; 2d root, *audīv*.

Perfect. Audīv-īt, he, she, or it has heard (*or* heard).*

Pluperf. Audīv-ērăt, “ “ “ had heard.

Fut. Perf. Audīv-ērīt, “ “ “ shall have heard.

194. In any regular verb, the *third persons plural*, in the tenses for *completed* action, are formed by simply

* The perfect in Latin corresponds sometimes to our *perfect indefinite*, and sometimes to our *perfect definite* (perfect with have); hence, *āmāvīt* may be translated either *he has loved*, or *he loved*.

inserting *n* before *t* in the ending of the third person singular (35), except in the perfect, where *it* must be changed into *ērunt*; e. g.,

| | | <i>Perfect.</i> | <i>Pluperfect.</i> | <i>Fut. Perfect</i> |
|-----------|---|--------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| Conj. I. | { | Sing. Amāv-īt, | āmāv-ērāt, | āmāv-ērīt. |
| | { | Plur. Amāv-ērunt, | āmāv-ērant, | āmāv-ērint. |
| Conj. II. | { | Sing. Mōnu-īt, | mōnu-ērāt, | mōnu-ērīt. |
| | { | Plur. Mōnu-ērunt, | mōnu-ērant, | mōnu-ērint. |
| Conj. IV. | { | Sing. Audīv-īt, | audīv-ērāt, | audīv-ērīt. |
| | { | Plur. Audīv-ērunt, | audīv-ērant, | audīv-ērint. |

195. VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|-----------------|--------------------------|----------------------|
| Aestimārē, āv,* | to estimate, to value. | |
| Arārē, āv, | to plough | (<i>arable</i>). |
| Audīre, iv, | to hear | (<i>audible</i>). |
| Dilāniārē, āv, | to tear in pieces. | |
| Jūrārē, āv, | to swear. | |
| Laudārē, āv, | to praise | (<i>laudable</i>). |
| Monstrārē, āv, | to show. | |
| Placārē, āv, | to appease | (<i>placable</i>). |
| Sēpēlirē, iv, | to bury. | |
| Servārē, āv, | to keep, to observe. | |
| Terrērē, u, | to terrify, to frighten. | |

196. Exercises.

(a) 1. Puer juravērat. 2. Puēri juravērunt. 3. Agricōla aravērit. 4. Servi aravērint. 5. Vulpes puēros terruit. 6. Vulpes puēros terruērunt. 7. Poētae sapientiam *parvi* aestimāvit.

8. Veram virtūtem magni aestimavērat. 9. Christiānus pecuniam *parvi* aestimāvit. 10. Christiāni est pecuniam *parvi* aestimāre. 11. Magnam poētae sapi-

* The learner will readily form the *second root* from the *first*, by adding the endings here given.

entiam parvi aestimavĕrant. 12. Pater filium sepelĭvit. 13. Puĕri patrem sepelivĕrant.

(b) 1. The boy has heard a voice. 2. The boys had heard their father's voice. 3. The slave had shown the way to the shepherd. 4. They will have shown the house to their master.

5. Caius had praised his son. 6. He has praised his slaves. 7. The lion has torn the horse in pieces. 8. The fox had frightened the boy. 9. They had valued wisdom *at a low price*. 10. It is easy to keep (one's) word. 11. It is difficult to appease anger. 12. He has appeased the boy's anger with a gift.

LESSON XXXVI.

Third Conjugation.—Class I.—Second Root *the same as the First*.

197. Most verbs of the third conjugation may be divided into two classes, viz.:

1) Those which have the *second root* the same as the first.

2) Those which form it by the addition of *s*.

198. The *first class* comprises most verbs of this conjugation which have the first root in a vowel, together with a few which have it in a consonant; e. g.,

Suĕrĕ, *to sew*: 1st root, sŭ; 2d root, sŭ.

Dĕfendĕrĕ, *to defend*: “ dĕfend; “ dĕfend.

199. The manner in which the *third persons* of the tenses for *completed* action are formed from the second root, has already been explained. See 193, 194.

PARADIGM.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Dēfendĕrĕ, to defend: 1st root, *dēfend*; 2d root, *dēfenul*.

| <i>Perfect.</i> | <i>Pluperfect.</i> | <i>Future Perfect.</i> |
|-----------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| Dēfend-īt, | dēfend-ērāt, | dēfend-ērīt. |
| Dēfend-ērunt, | dēfend-ērānt, | dēfend-ērint. |

200. The *Preposition* is the part of speech which expresses the various relations of objects; * e. g.,

Rex *pĕr* urbĕm ambŭlābāt.

(*The king through the city was walking.*)

The king was walking *through* the city.

REM.—In this example, *pĕr*, through, is a *preposition*.

201. PARTIAL RULE OF SYNTAX.—Some prepositions govern the *accusative*, and some the *ablative*.

REM. 1.—Whenever a preposition occurs in the exercises, its particular case will be given in the vocabularies.

REM. 2.—The *accusative*, *urbĕm*, in the above example, is governed by the preposition *pĕr*.

202. VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| Aedifīciŭm, ī, | building, edifice. | |
| Ambŭlārĕ, av, | to walk. | |
| Annuĕrĕ, annŭ, | to assent, to give assent. | |
| Conciliŭm, ī, | council, meeting. | |
| Conditio, ōnīs, | condition, terms. | |
| Constituĕrĕ, constitŭ, | to arrange, to appoint | (<i>constitute</i>). |
| Dēfendĕrĕ, dēfend, | to defend. | |
| Dormirĕ, iv, | to sleep | (<i>dormant</i>). |
| Incendĕrĕ, incend, | to set on fire, to burn | (<i>incendiary</i>). |
| Lēgiō, ōnīs, | legion, body of foot-soldiers. | |
| Pĕr (<i>prep. with acc.</i>), | through. | |
| Proeliŭm, ī, | battle. | |

* It will be remembered, however, that certain relations are sometimes expressed by the *cases* of nouns (63, 80, 86).

| | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------|
| Privātūs, ā, ūm, | private, personal. | |
| Rēliquūs, ā, ūm, | remaining, the rest | (<i>relic</i>). |
| Respuĕrĕ, respŭ, | to reject. | |
| Rōmānī (<i>adj. pl.</i>), | Romans. | |
| Rōmānūs, ā, ūm, | Roman, belonging to Rome. | |
| Suĕrĕ, sŭ, | to sew, to stitch. | |
| Tīmĕrĕ, ū, | to fear | (<i>timid</i>). |
| Vestīs, īs, | garment | (<i>vest</i>). |

203. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Privātum aedificium incendit. 2. Relīqua privāta aedificia incendĕrant. 3. Puellae vestem suĕrunt. 4. Patres annuĕrant. 5. Milītes urbem defendĕrant. 6. Rōmāni urbem defendĕrunt.

7. Relīquas legiōnes in acie constituit. 8. Ursi in antro dormivĕrunt. 9. Agricōla per urbem ambulāvīt. 10. Non respuit condiōnem Caesar. 11. Diem concilio constituĕrunt. 12. Diem concilio constituĕrit. 13. Servus viam monstravĕrat. 14. Puer mortem timuit. 15. *Humānum*⁶ est mortem timĕre. 16. *Impiū*⁷ est fidem violāre.

(b) 1. The king has appointed a day for the battle. 2. They had appointed a day for the council. 3. The soldiers defended the building. 4. They had defended the poet's house. 5. The queen assented. 6. The king had not assented.

7. The good boy will walk in the city. 8. The poet's daughter had walked through the great city. 9. They will *set* the house of the poet *on fire*. 10. It is the *duty*¹ of a good man to defend the house of a friend. 11. The avaricious (man) will build a small house. 12. They will not defend the house of the avaricious. 13. They will not reject the condition. 14. Caesar had rejected the terms. 15. He will have arranged his sol

diers in order of battle. 16. They had arranged their soldiers in order of battle.

LESSON XXXVII.

Third Conjugation.—Class II.—Second Root formed by adding s to the First.

204. VERBS of the third conjugation which have the first root in a consonant, generally form the second from it by the addition of *s*; e. g.,

Carpěřě, *to pluck*; 1st root, carp; 2d root, carps.

Rěpěřě, *to creep*; “ rěp; “ reps.

REM.—When *b* stands at the end of the first root, it is changed into *p* before *s* in the second; e. g.,

Scriběřě, *to write*; scrib; scrips (not scribs).

Nūběřě, *to marry*; nūb; nups (not nubs).

205. An adjective modifying the subject is sometimes used in Latin instead of an adverb modifying the verb; e. g.,

Portām *invītūs* claudēt.

(*Lat. Id.*) The gate *unwilling* he will shut (*adj.*).

(*Eng. Id.*) He will shut the gate *unwillingly* (*adv.*).

206. VOCABULARY.

| | |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|
| Carpěřě, carps, | to pluck, to card, to gather. |
| Děglūběřě, dēglups, | to flay. |
| Lānā, ae, | wool. |
| Lūděřě, lūs, | to play. |
| Mālūs, ā, ūm, | bad. |
| Ovīs, īs, | sheep. |
| Scriběřě, scrips, | to write. |
| Uvā, ae, | grape. |

207. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Caius epistolās sua manu scripsit. 2. Puella epistolām sua manu scripsērat. 3. Puēri lanam carpsērunt. 4. Malus pastor deglupsit oves.

5. Facīle est* lanam carpēre. 6. Pater meus fidem servavērat. 7. Turpe est fidem suam non servāre. 8. Sapientis est* virtūtem magni aestimāre. 9. Virtūtem magni aestimavērint.

(b) 1. The boy has written a letter in his own hand. 2. The girl had written letters in her own hand. 3. They wrote letters. 4. The girl has plucked a flower. 5. The shepherd's daughter had gathered flowers with her own hand.

6. The boy will pluck the grape. 7. It is easy to pluck the grape. 8. The girls were gathering flowers. 9. They had gathered flowers. 10. It is easy to gather flowers. 11. The slaves will card the wool. 12. They will have carded the wool. 13. In winter the bear will sleep in the cave. 14. In summer the girls will play in the garden.

LESSON XXXVIII.

Third Conjugation.—Class II., continued.—Second Root formed by adding s to the First.

208. WHEN a *k*-sound (*c, g, h, qu*) stands at the end of the first root, it generally unites, in the second, with the *s* which is added, and forms *x* (i. e. *cs, gs, hs, or qu*s becomes *x*); e. g.,

* What is the subject of *est*? (608, 2.)

Cingĕrĕ, *to surround*; cing, cinx (*cings*).

Tĕgĕrĕ, *to cover*; tĕg, tex (*tegs*).

Trahĕrĕ, *to draw*; trah, trax (*trahs*).

Cōquĕrĕ, *to cook*; cōqu, cox (*coqus*).

a) In a very few verbs *gu* and *v* must be treated as *k*-sounds in the formation of the second root; e. g.,

Exstinguĕrĕ, *to extinguish*; exstingu, extinx.

Vīvĕrĕ, *to live*; vīv, vix.

b) *Fluĕrĕ*, to flow, and *struĕrĕ*, to build, together with their compounds, have the second root in *x*, as if the first ended in a *k*-sound, as probably it did originally.

c) The *k*-sound is sometimes dropped before *s* in the second root; e. g.,

Spargĕrĕ, *to scatter*; sparg, spars.

Mergĕrĕ, *to merge*; merg, mers.

Parcĕrĕ, *to spare*; parc, pars.

209. VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Cībŭs, i, | food. | |
| Cingĕrĕ, cinx, | to surround. | |
| Complĕrĕ, ĕv, | to fill | (<i>complement</i>). |
| Cōquĕrĕ, cox, | to cook, to bake, to ripen. | |
| Dicĕrĕ, dix, | to say | (<i>diction</i>). |
| Hābĕrĕ, habu, | to have | (<i>habit</i>). |
| Illustrāre, āv, | to illuminate, to enlighten. | |
| Mendāciŭm, i, | lie, falsehood | (<i>mendacious</i>). |
| Multā (<i>neut. pl.</i>), | many (things). | |
| Multŭs, ā, ŭm, | much, <i>pl.</i> many. | |
| Palliŭm, i, | cloak | (<i>to palliate</i>). |
| Peccāre, āv, | to sin, to do wrong. | |
| Prudentiā, ae, | prudence. | |
| Simŭlatiō, ōnis, | assumed appearance, pretence | (<i>dissimulation</i>) |
| Stultitiā, ae, | folly | (<i>stultify</i>). |

| | | |
|----------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| Summūs, ā, ūm, | highest, greatest | (<i>summū</i>). |
| Tēgērē, tex, | to cover. | |
| Viōlarē, av, | to violate, to break | (<i>violation</i>). |

210. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Puer dixit. 2. Caius, homo vita indignus, dixērat. 3. Puellae dixērunt. 4. Flumen urbem cinxit. 5. Flumīna urbes cinxērunt. 6. Amīcus amīci corpus suo pallio texit.

7. Prudentiam simulatiōne stultitiae texērat. 8. Summam prudentiam simulatiōne stultitiae texērunt. 9. Christiāni non est mendacio culpam tegere. 10. Turpe est peccāre. 11. Turpe est mendacio culpam tegere. 12. Sol cuncta suā luce illustravērat. 13. Caius leges civitātis violavērit.

(b) 1. The woman has surrounded her head with a garland. 2. The slave has surrounded his head with a garland. 3. They had surrounded their heads with garlands. 4. The boy had said nothing. 5. The girl cooked the food. 6. They had cooked the food.

7. The king had surrounded the city with a wall. 8. They will surround the city with a wall. 9. They covered the fault with a lie. 10. It is disgraceful to cover a fault with a lie. 11. The slave had covered his master's body with a cloak. 12. The slave had said many (things). 13. The sun fills all things with its light. 14. It is the business of the slave⁷ to cook food for his master. 15. It is never useful to lose time. 16. He will lose much pleasure.⁴ 17. How much pleasure will he lose?

LESSON XXXIX.

Third Conjugation.—Class II., continued.—Second Root formed by adding s to the First.

211. WHENEVER a *t-sound* (*d* or *t*) stands at the end of the first root, it is generally dropped before *s* in the second, and the preceding vowel, if short, is lengthened; e. g.,

| | | | |
|------------------------------|--------|-------|-----------|
| Claudĕrĕ, <i>to shut</i> ; | claud, | claus | (clauds). |
| Amittĕrĕ, <i>to lose</i> ; | āmitt, | amīs | (amitts). |
| Dīvidĕrĕ, <i>to divide</i> ; | dīvid, | dīvīs | (divids). |

212. When a limiting noun denotes some *characteristic* or *quality* of the noun which it limits, it is always accompanied by an adjective, and is put either in the *genitive* or *ablative*; e. g.,

Puĕr exīmiæ pulchrītūdīnīs.

Puĕr exīmiā pulchrītūdīnē.

A boy of remarkable beauty.

213. Combining the above with the rule already given (65), we have the following

RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun limiting the meaning of another noun is put,

- 1) In the same case as that noun, when it denotes the same person or thing; as, *Lātīnūs rex*, *Latinus the king*.
- 2) In the genitive, when it denotes a different person or thing; as, *Rēgīs filiūs*, *the king's son*: except

(a) When it denotes *character* or *quality*; it is then accompanied by an adjective, and is put either in the *genitive* or *ablative*; as, *Puĕr exīmiæ pulchrītūdīnīs*;

or, *Puēr exīmū pulchrītūdīnē*, a boy of remarkable beauty.

214. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Verbs of *accusing, convicting, acquitting, warning*, and the like, take the accusative of the person and the genitive of the crime, charge, &c.; e. g.,

Caiūm prōditiōnīs accūsant.
(*Caius of treachery they accuse.*)
They accuse Caius of treachery.*

REM.—Here *prōditiōnīs* is in the genitive, by the above rule.

215. (*Eng. Id.*) To condemn to death.

(*Lat. Id.*) To condemn of the head (*cāpītīs*).†

216. VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Accūsārē, āv, | to accuse. | |
| Ambītūs, ūs, | bribery. | |
| Amittērē, āmīs, | to lose. | |
| Cāpītīs (<i>gen.</i>), | of the head, to death | (<i>capital</i>). |
| Claudērē, claus, | to shut | (<i>close</i>). |
| Damnārē, āv, | to condemn. | |
| Fāciēs, ēī, | face, appearance. | |
| Furtūm, ī, | theft | (<i>furtive</i>). |
| Ingēniūm, ī, | talent, ability | (<i>ingenious</i>). |
| Lūdērē, lūs, | to play. | |
| Nunquām, | never. | |
| Prōditiō, ōnīs, | treachery. | |
| Saltārē, āv, | to dance. | |
| Vīr, ‡ vīrī, | man, he: o. | |

* This genitive is not properly governed by the verb, but by a noun understood; thus, if we supply *crīmīnē* with *prōditiōnīs* in the example, the sense will not be changed; as, ‘They accuse Caius *with the charge* of treachery.’

† We may suppose that it was originally, “to condemn to the loss of the head;” or, “to the punishment of the head.”

‡ *Hōmo*, G. *hōmīnīs*, and *vīr* are both *man*: but *homo* is *man* as opposed to *other animals*; that is, a *human being*. whereas *vīr* is *man*

217. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Portas urbis clausērunt. 2. Caius multum tempōris amīsit. 3. Caius, vir summo ingenio, multum tempōris amīsit. 4. Balbum ambītus accusavērunt. 5. Puēri in prato lusērunt.

6. Balbum capītis damnābunt. 7. Christiānī est avaritiam damnāre. 8. Caium accusāvit. 9. Caium, summo ingenio virum, proditionis accusavērat. 10. Facīle est saltāre. 11. Difficīle est iram placāre. 12. Facīle est puēri anīmum dono placāre. 13. Ursus in antro dormīvit. 14. Hiēme ursi in antris dormiunt. 15. Nunquam utīle est peccāre.

(b) 1. The slave has shut the gates of the city. 2. They will accuse the slave of treachery. 3. Caius had accused the slaves of theft. 4. He will have lost much time.⁴ 5. Balbus, a man of the greatest virtue, has praised the fidelity of the slave. 6. Balbus, a man endowed with the greatest virtue, has accused the boy of theft.

7. They have accused Balbus of bribery. 8. They had accused Balbus, a man of the greatest virtue, of bribery. 9. The sun had illuminated all things with its light. 10. The sun will have filled the world with its light. 11. They have written the letters with their own hands. 12. The queen had written a letter with her own hand. 13. He covered his face with his cloak. 14. They had covered their faces with their cloaks.

as opposed to *woman*.—When *men* means *human beings*, *men* generally (including *both sexes*), it should be translated by *homīnes*.—When *man* is used *contemptuously*, it should also be translated by *homo*, because that word says nothing better of a person than that he is a *human* being.—When *man* is used *respectfully*, with any praise, &c., it should be translated by *vir*.

LESSON XL.

*Formation of the Second Root.—First Irregularity—
Radical vowel lengthened (and often changed).*

218. REGULAR Endings of the Second Root of Verbs.

| Conj. I. | Conj. II. | Conj. III. | Conj. IV. |
|----------|------------|----------------------|-----------|
| āv. | u (or ēv). | s, or like 1st root. | īv. |

REM.—The above table presents only the *regular* endings of the second root; there are, however, several irregularities in the formation of that root which we must notice.

219. Some verbs in each* of the four conjugations form the second root by lengthening the vowel of the first; e. g.,

| | | |
|----------------------------|------|------|
| Jūvārē, <i>to assist</i> ; | jūv, | jūv. |
| Vīdērē, <i>to see</i> ; | vīd, | vīd. |
| Edērē, <i>to eat</i> ; | ēd, | ēd. |
| Vēnīrē, <i>to come</i> ; | vēn, | vēn. |

1) In the third conjugation,

a) If the first root has *ā*, the second will have *ē*.

b) *M* and *n* are often dropped before a final mute; e. g.,

Căpērē, *to take*; căp, cēp (*ā* changed to *ē*).

Frangērē, *to break*; frang, frēg { (*n* dropped, and
a changed to *ē*).

Rumpērē, *to burst*; rump, rūp (*m* dropped).

Vincērē, *to conquer*; vinc, vīc (*n* dropped).

* In the first and fourth conjugations, *jūvārē*, *lāvārē*, *vēnīrē*, and their compounds, are probably the only instances.

220. VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|-----------------|---|----------------------|
| Brachiūm, ī, | arm. | |
| Cāpĕrĕ, cĕp, | to take, to receive. | |
| Cībūs, ī, | food. | |
| Emĕrĕ, ĕm, | to buy. | |
| Exercītūs, ūs, | army. | |
| Foedūs, ĕrīs, | treaty | (<i>federal</i>). |
| Frangĕrĕ, frĕg, | to break | (<i>fragile</i>). |
| Gallūs, ī, | { a Gaul, an inhabitant of Gaul, now France. | |
| Lāvārĕ, lāv, | to wash | (<i>lave</i>). |
| Mĕl, mellīs, | honey. | |
| Milĕs, ĭtis, | soldier | (<i>military</i>). |
| Nĕmō, ĭnīs,* | nobody, no one. | |
| Quiā, | because. | |
| Rumpĕrĕ, rūp, | to break, to violate. | |
| Sempĕr, | always. | |
| Utilīs, ĕ, | useful | (<i>utility</i>). |
| Vĕnĭrĕ, vĕn, | to come. | |
| Vĭdĕrĕ, vĭd, | to see | (<i>visible</i>). |
| Vincŭlŭm, ī, | chain. | |

221. Exercises.

(a) 1. Balbus manus lāvit. 2. Puĕrī manus lāvĕrant. 3. Agricōla exercītum vĭdit. 4. Milĭtes vĕnĕrunt. 5. Caius brachium suum frĕgĕrat. 6. Quantum voluptātis cĕpĕrunt!

7. Nunquam ūtile est foedus rumpĕre. 8. Nunquam ūtile est fidem violāre, quia semper est turpe. 9. Facĭle est puerōrum anĭmos donis placāre. 10. Turpe est foedĕra negligĕre. 11. Galli negligĕbant foedĕra. 12. Nemo semper labōrat. 13. Culpas suas simulatiōne virtūtis textit. 14. Multura voluptātis cepĕrant. 15.

* The gen. *nēmīnis* and abl. *nēmīnē* are not in good use.

Multum voluptātis amisērant. 16. Quantum cibi amisērunt!

(b) 1. Caius has broken his arm. 2. They had broken their arms. 3. The king had broken the treaty. 4. The Gauls had broken the treaty. 5. Caesar had seen the army. 6. The girls will have seen the queen. 7. Caesar conquered the Gauls. 8. The Gauls did not conquer Caesar.

9. It is disgraceful to break a treaty. 10. It is difficult to conquer the Gauls. 11. It is not easy to conquer the enemy. 12. He had appeased Balbus. 13. They will break their chains. 14. They had broken their chains. 15. It is easy to break (one's) arm. 16. They are losing much money. 17. They had lost much money. 18. They were losing much pleasure. 19. They will condemn Balbus to death (215). 20. He had conquered his enemies.

LESSON XLI.

Formation of the Second Root.—Second Irregularity—Reduplication.

222. A FEW verbs of the first, second, and third conjugations, form the second root by prefixing to the first their initial consonant, with the following vowel or with *e*; e. g.,

| | | |
|---------------------------|-------|---------|
| Dăřě, <i>to give</i> ; | d, | děd. |
| Mordêřě, <i>to bite</i> ; | mord, | mômord. |
| Cûrrêřě, <i>to run</i> ; | curr, | cûcurr. |

REM.—The radical vowel is also sometimes changed; as, *cădêřě*, *to fall*; 2d root, *cēcîd* (*ă* changed to *î*).

223. VOCABULARY

| | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Ab (<i>prep. with abl.</i>), | from. |
| Auctumnūs, ī, | autumn. |
| Barbā, ae, | beard. |
| Cōlōr, ōrīs, | color. |
| Currērē, cūcurr, | to run. |
| Dārē, dēd, | to give. |
| Finīs, īs, <i>m. or f.</i> | end. |
| Hūmērūs, ī, | shoulder. |
| Mordērē, mōmord, | to bite. |
| Mūtārē, av, | to change. |
| Nox, noctīs, | night. |
| Pendērē, pēpend, | to hang (<i>intrans.</i>). |
| Pēr (<i>prep. with accus.</i>) | through. |
| Sāgittā, ae, | arrow. |
| Tondērē, tōtond, | to shear, shave. |

224. Exercises.

(a) 1. Equus per urbem cucurrit. 2. Sagittae ab humēro pependērunt. 3. Nox proelio (648) finem dedit. 4. Malus pastor oves non totondit. 5. Malus pastor deglupsit oves; non totondit.

6. Boni pastōris⁷ est tondēre oves, non deglubēre. 7. Pastōres agricōlas risērunt. 8. Lupus boni pastōris ovem momordērit. 9. Boni canis⁷ non est oves mordēre. 10. Servus portas urbis clausērit. 11. Puēri regis sceptrum vidēbunt. 12. Luscinae colōrem mutābunt. 13. Auctumno luscinae colōrem suum mutavērunt.

(b) 1. The dog has bitten the sheep. 2. Your dog had bitten the girl. 3. My horses have been running (have run). 4. Balbus has given his dog to your son. 5. They had given their dogs to the shepherd.

6. The wolf had bitten the sheep. 7. The shepherd will shear his sheep. 8. A shepherd does not shear

his sheep in the winter. 9. The wolves have bitten my dog. 10. Caius will shave (his) beard. 11. The cloak was hanging from (his) shoulder. 12. The dog has bitten the wolf. 13. They wrote the letter. 14. Balbus had shaved (his) beard. 15. The girls have plucked flowers in Caius's garden. 16. The girls will walk in the garden. 17. The queen was walking through the city. 18. They have surrounded the city with walls. 19. They have offended-against the laws of their country.

LESSON XLII.

*Formation of the Second Root.—Third Irregularity—
Second root after the analogy of other conjugations.*

225. A FEW verbs in each conjugation form the second root according to the *analogy* of one or more of the other conjugations.

- 1) A few in the first conjugation follow the analogy of the second; e. g.,

Mîcărě, *to glitter*: 1st root, *mîc*; 2d root, *mîcŭ*.

- 2) A few in the second follow the analogy of the third; e. g.,

Rîdērě, *to laugh*; 1st root, *rîd*; 2d root, *rîs* (*rids*).

Lŭgērě, *to mourn*; " *lŭg*; " *lŭx* (*lugs*).

- 3) A few in the third follow the analogy of the second or fourth; e. g.,

Cŏlērě, *to till*; 1st root, *cŏl*; 2d root, *cŏlŭ*.

Pětěrě, *to seek*; " *pět*; " *pětŭ*.

4) A few in the fourth follow the analogy of the second or third; e. g.,

Apĕrĭrĕ, to open; 1st root, *ăpĕr*; 2d root, *ăpĕrŭ*.

Vincĭrĕ, to bind; “ *vinc*; “ *vinx* (cs).

REM.—Verbs of the third conj. which have the 1st root in *sc*, together with a few others, generally change the consonant-ending of the 1st root into *v* in the 2d; as, *crescĕrĕ*, to increase; 1st root, *cresc*; 2d, *crĕv*. Most of these verbs are supposed to have been derived from pure roots.

226. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Length of time is generally expressed by the accusative; e. g.,

Caiŭs *annŭm ūnŭm* vixĭt.

(*Caius year one lived.*)

Caius lived *one year*.

227. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The name of a town (91) where any thing is or is done, if of the first or second declension, and singular number, is put in the genitive; otherwise, in the ablative; e. g.,

1. Caiŭs *annŭm ūnŭm Cortōnae* vixĭt.

Caius lived one year *at Cortona*.

2. Caiŭs *annŭm ūnŭm Tĭbŭrĕ* vixĭt.

Caius lived one year *at Tibur*.

REM.—In these examples, *Cortōnae* and *Tĭbŭrĕ* are names of towns, the first is put in the *genitive*, because it is of the first declension, and sing. number, and the second in the *ablative*, because it is of the third declension.

228. VOCABULARY.

Amittĕrĕ, amĭs,

to lose.

Annŭs, ĭ,

year.

Apĕrĭrĕ, ăpĕrŭ,

to open, to uncover.

Biennĭŭm,

two years, space of two years

Castigārĕ, ăv,

to chastise.

| | |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Invītūs, ā, ūm, | unwilling. |
| Lūgērē, lux, | to grieve, mourn, weep for. |
| Mānērē, mans, | to remain. |
| Matrōna, ae, | matron. |
| Rōmā, ae, | Rome, |
| | <i>a city of Italy, on the Tiber.</i> |
| Tībūr, ūris, | Tibur, |
| | <i>a town in Latium, in Italy.</i> |
| Tōtūs, ā, ūm (g. Iūs), | the whole, the entire. |

229. Exercises.

(a) 1. Balbus multos annos Romae mansērat. 2. Biennium Carthagīne mansērant. 3. Mater luxērit. 4. Matrōnae luxērunt. 5. Brutum Romānae matrōnae luxērunt. 6. Pastōres agricōlas risērunt. 7. Puēri capīta aperuērunt.

8. Domīnus servi sui epistōlam aperiet. 9. Domīnus servi sui epistōlas aperuērat. 10. Alīquid tempōris⁴ invītus (205) amittet. 11. Christiāni est nemīnem violāre. 12. Nemīnem violāvit. 13. Biennium Romae manēbit. 14. Biennium Carthagīne manēbunt.

(b) 1. They remained at Tibur many years. 2. Caius remained at Carthage for the space-of-two-years. 3. He has opened his father's letter. 4. They had opened the letters at Carthage.

5. My father will remain at Rome the whole winter. 6. He wrote the letters at Rome. 7. They are mourning for ' their son. 8. They have been in mourning two years. 9. The girls wore mourning for ' their mother. 10. My father values industry very highly. 11. Balbus has accused the shepherd's son of theft. 12. They have accused Caius of bribery.

LESSON XLIII.

Subjunctive Mood.

230. THE *Subjunctive Mood* represents the action or state expressed by the verb, not as a *fact*, but simply as a *possibility, wish, or conception of the mind*; e. g.,

- | | |
|----------------------|---|
| 1. Scribāt, | { he may write, may he write, let him write. |
| 2. Vēnit ūt scribāt, | { he has come <i>that he may write</i> , he has come <i>to write</i> . |

REM.—*Scribāt* in the above examples is in the present subjunctive.

231. The present subjunctive, when not preceded by *ūt*, generally expresses either a *wish* (to be translated by *may he*), or a *command* (to be translated by *let him*, &c.).

232. If the wish or command is to be expressed *negatively*, *nē* (never *nōn*) must be used with the subjunctive; e. g.,

Nē pūtēt, let him not think.

233. The tenses of the subjunctive mood* are the *present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect*.

234. The endings of the third persons sing. of the tenses of the subjunctive are as follows:

| | <i>Present.</i> | <i>Imperfect.</i> | <i>Perfect.</i> | <i>Pluperfect.</i> |
|------------|-----------------|-------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| | (1st root.) | (1st root.) | (2d root.) | (2d root.) |
| Conj. I. | ēt, | ārēt, | ērīt, | issēt. |
| Conj. II. | ēāt, | ērēt, | ērīt, | issēt. |
| Conj. III. | āt, | ērēt, | ērīt, | issēt. |
| Conj. IV. | iāt, | irēt, | ērīt, | issēt. |

* The subjunctive has *no futures*.

REM.—The third persons plural of the several tenses of the subjunctive are formed by inserting *n* before *t* in the ending of the third singular.

235. The English signs corresponding to the Latin subjunctive are as follows:

Present, *may* or *can*.

Imperfect, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should*.

Perfect, *may have*.

Pluperfect, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should have*.

236. Partial Paradigm of the Subjunctive Mood.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|---|--|
| Pres. Am-ēt, <i>he may or can love.</i> | Am-ent, <i>they may or can love.</i> |
| Imp. Am-ārēt, <i>he might, &c. love.</i> | Am-ārent, <i>they might, &c. love.</i> |
| Perf. Amāv-ērīt, <i>he may have loved.</i> | Amāv-ērint, <i>they may have loved.</i> |
| Plup. Amāv-issēt, <i>he might, &c. have loved.</i> | Amāv-issent, <i>they might, &c. have loved.</i> |

SECOND CONJUGATION.

| | |
|---|--|
| Pres. Mōn-eāt, <i>he may or can advise.</i> | Mōn-eant, <i>they may advise.</i> |
| Imp. Mōn-ērēt, <i>he might, &c. advise.</i> | Mōn-ērent, <i>they might, &c. advise.</i> |
| Perf. Mōnu-ērīt, <i>he may have advised.</i> | Mōnu-ērint, <i>they may have advised.</i> |
| Plup. Mōnu-issēt, <i>he might, &c. have advised.</i> | Mōnu-issent, <i>they might, &c. have advised.</i> |

THIRD CONJUGATION.

| | |
|--|---|
| Pres. Rēg-āt, <i>he may rule.</i> | Rēg-ant, <i>they may rule.</i> |
| Imp. Rēg-ērēt, <i>he might, &c. rule.</i> | Rēg-ērent, <i>they might, &c. rule.</i> |
| Perf. Rex-ērīt, <i>he may have ruled.</i> | Rex-ērint, <i>they may have ruled.</i> |
| Plup. Rex-issēt, <i>he might, &c. have ruled.</i> | Rex-issent, <i>they might, &c. have ruled.</i> |

PARADIGM—*continued.*

| FOURTH CONJUGATION. | |
|--|---|
| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
| Pres. Aud-iāt, <i>he may hear.</i> | Aud-iant, <i>they may hear.</i> |
| Imp. Aud-irēt, <i>he might, &c. hear.</i> | Aud-irent, <i>they might, &c. hear.</i> |
| Perf. Audīv-ērīt, <i>he may have heard.</i> | Audīv-ērint, <i>they may have heard.</i> |
| Plup. Audīv-issēt, <i>he might, &c. have heard.</i> | Audīv-issent, <i>they might, &c. have heard.</i> |

237. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Scribat. 2. Ne scribant. 3. Servus claudat portas. 4. Puēri ne claudant portas. 5. Cantet puella. 6. Ludant Puēri. 7. Pater scribēret. 8. Sripsissent. 9. Filium suum sepelīret. 10. Sepeliat filium.

11. Placet puēri anīmum. 12. Ne multa discat. 13. Fidem suam servāvit. 14. Fidem suam servavissent. 15. Fidem suam invīti servavērunt. 16. Puērum in urbe sepelivērunt. 17. Patres filios suos docuērant.

(b) 1. Let the slaves shut the gates of the city. 2. Do not let the slave see the letter. 3. Let him write a letter. 4. He might have come. 5. They may have read the book. 6. He would have broken his arm. 7. Do not let the dog bite the boy.

8. Balbus has kept his word. 9. He would have broken his word. 10. Let him appease his father's anger. 11. He remained at Carthage many years. 12. They would have remained at Rome two years. 13. They had remained in the city one year. 14. Let fathers teach their sons.

LESSON XLIV.

Subjunctive Mood.—Purpose.

238. THE present and imperfect subjunctive in Latin are often used to express a *purpose*.

239. The infinitive often denotes purpose in English, but never in Latin; accordingly, in expressions of purpose, the idioms of the two languages are entirely distinct from each other, and should be carefully studied.

240. *Eng. Id.* { I have come *to see* you.
 { I came *to see* you.

Lat. Id. { I have come *that I may see* you.
 { I came *that I might see* you.

241. When a purpose is to be expressed affirmatively, *ut* is used with the subj., when negatively, *nē*; e. g.,

1. Balbūm rōgāt *ut* puērūm dōceāt.
(*Balbus he asks that the boy he may teach.*)
He asks Balbus *to teach* the boy.

2. Balbūm rōgāt *nē* puērūm dōceāt.
He asks Balbus *not to teach* the boy.

242. The subjunctive expressing purpose must be in the *present tense*; unless the verb on which it depends is in a *past tense* (*imperfect, perfect indefinite, or pluperfect*), and then it must be in the *imperfect*.

REM.—The perfect definite (193, REM.), or perfect with have (which denotes that the action *has been done* in a period of time *still present*), is considered a *present tense*, and followed by the *present subjunctive*.

243. EXAMPLES.

1. Vēnīt ūt portās claudāt.
(*He is coming that the gates he may shut.*)
He is coming to shut the gates.
2. Vēnīt (*indef.*) ūt portās claudērēt.
(*He came that the gates he might shut.*)
He came to shut the gates.
3. Vēnīt (*def.*) ūt portās claudāt.
(*He has come that the gates he may shut.*)
He has come to shut the gates.

REM. 1.—In the 1st example the subjunctive is in the *present* tense, because the verb *vēnīt*, on which it depends, is present; while in the 2d, it is in the *imperfect*, because its verb, *vēnīt* (came), is in the *perfect indefinite*.

REM. 2.—In the 3d example the subjunctive is in the *present*, because the verb *vēnīt* (has come) is in the *perfect definite*, and, though in form the same as in the 2d example, really expresses different time.

REM. 3.—The Latin perfect, when followed by the present subjunctive, must be translated into English with the sign *have*, as in example 3.

244. VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|-------------------|---|-----------------------|
| Compārārē, āv, | to procure, to raise, to levy. | |
| Discērē, didīc, | to learn. | |
| Edēre, ēd, | to eat | (<i>edible</i>). |
| Evertēre, ēvert, | to overthrow, to pull down. | |
| Lēgērē, lēg, | to read | (<i>legible</i>). |
| Plūrīmūs, ā, ūm, | very much or great, <i>pl.</i> , very many. | |
| Quiescērē, quiēv, | to rest, be quiet | (<i>quiescent</i>). |
| Rōgārē, āv, | to ask, to entreat. | |
| Vivērē, vix, | to live | (<i>vivid</i>). |

245. Exercises.

(Construe *ūt* and the *subjunctive* by the infinitive.)

- (a) 1. Lēgit ut discat. 2. Lēgit* ut discat. Lēgit ut disceret (242). 3. Edit ut vivat. 4. Edit ut vivēret.

* See 243. REM. 3.

5. Servi veniunt ut portas claudant. 6. Veniat servus ut portas urbis cladat. 7. Caium rogat ut veniat.

8. Venit ut copias compāret. 9. Romae plurīmi vivunt ut edant. 10. Cantent puellae. 11. Quiescant servi. 12. Veniat Caius ut epistōlam sua manu scribat. 13. Venērat Caius ut Balbi animum donis placāret.

(b) 1. He has come to read (241) your letter. 2. They came to read your book. 3. They will come to accuse the judge of theft. 4. The boy will come to give his sister a garland.

5. Let the slaves shut the gates. 6. Do not let your dog bite the boy. 7. They had come to raise forces. 8. The enemy will think *little*³ of your forces. 9. He had come to surround the girl's head with a beautiful garland. 10. Let boys prize wisdom *very highly*.

LESSON XLV.

Persons of Verbs.—Indicative Mood.—First Conjugation.

246. It will be remembered that verbs have *three persons* (12): these are distinguished from each other by certain terminations called *Personal Endings*.

247. The three persons may be formed in the perfect indicative (which is somewhat irregular) by changing *it*, of the third person singular, into the following

PERSONAL ENDINGS.

| <i>Singular.</i> | | | <i>Plural.</i> | | |
|------------------|----------|----------|----------------|----------|-----------------|
| 1st Pers. | 2d Pers. | 3d Pers. | 1st Pers. | 2d Pers. | 3d Pers. |
| ī, | istī, | it. | imūs, | istīs, | erunt (or ērē). |

248. In all the tenses* of the indicative and subjunctive moods, except the perfect indicative, the three persons may be formed by changing *t* of the third singular into the following

PERSONAL ENDINGS.

| <i>Singular.</i> | | | <i>Plural.</i> | | |
|------------------|----------|----------|----------------|----------|----------|
| 1st Pers. | 2d Pers. | 3d Pers. | 1st Pers. | 2d Pers. | 3d Pers. |
| m, ō, | s, | t. | mūs, | tīs, | nt. |

a) The ending *o*, for the first person singular, belongs to the *indicative present, future perfect*, and, in the first and second conjugations, to the *future*. The vowel which stands before *t* in the third person is dropped before *o* in the first person, except in the present of the second and fourth conjugations (and in a few verbs of the third); e. g.,

| | <i>3d Person.</i> | <i>1st Person.</i> |
|-----------------|---------------------------|---|
| Pres. 1st Conj. | Amāt, <i>he loves,</i> | āmō (<i>ā</i> dropped), <i>I love.</i> |
| " 2d " | Mōnēt, <i>he advises,</i> | mōneō (<i>ē</i> not dropped), <i>I advise.</i> |
| " 3d " | Rēgīt, <i>he rules,</i> | rēgō (<i>ī</i> dropped), <i>I rule.</i> |
| " 4th " | Audīt, <i>he hears,</i> | audiō (<i>ī</i> not dropped), <i>I hear.</i> |

b) The ending *m*, for the first person singular, belongs to the *indicative imperfect, pluperfect*, and, in the third and fourth conjugations, to the *future*, and to the *subjunctive* throughout all its tenses. In the future of the third and fourth conjugations, the vowel *ē*, which stands before *t* in the third person, is changed into *ā* before *m* in the first person; e. g.,

| | <i>3d Person.</i> | <i>1st Person.</i> |
|---------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Imperf. | Amābāt, <i>he was loving,</i> | āmābām, <i>I was loving.</i> |
| Pluperf. | Amāvērāt, <i>he had loved,</i> | āmāvērām, <i>I had loved.</i> |
| Fut. 3d Conj. | Rēgēt, <i>he will rule,</i> | rēgām, <i>I will rule.</i> |
| " 4th " | Audiēt, <i>he will hear,</i> | audiām, <i>I will hear.</i> |

* We of course speak only of the *active* voice, as the *passive* has not yet been noticed.

c) In the *present* and *future* tenses of the *indicative*, if *i* stands before *t* in the third singular, it is changed into *iu* in the third plural, in the fourth conjugation, and into *u* in the other conjugations; e. g.,

Singular.

Plural.

| | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| Fut. 1st Conj. Amābīt, <i>he will love,</i> | āmābunt, <i>they will love.</i> |
| " 2d " Mōnēbīt, <i>he will advise,</i> | mōnēbunt, <i>they will advise.</i> |
| Pres. 3d " Rēgīt, <i>he rules,</i> | rēgunt, <i>they rule.</i> |
| " 4th " Audīt, <i>he hears,</i> | audiunt, <i>they hear.</i> |

249. The vowel before the personal endings *mūs* and *tīs*, is *long* in the imperfect and pluperfect of the indicative, and in all the tenses of the subjunctive, except the perfect, in which it is common* (long or short).

250. Paradigm of the Indicative Mood—First Conjugation.

Amārē, *to love*: 1st root, *ām*; 2d, *āmāv*.

PRESENT (1st root).

| <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. Am-ō, <i>I love.</i> | 1. Am-āmūs, <i>we love.</i> |
| 2. Am-ās, <i>thou lovest.</i> | 2. Am-ātīs, <i>ye or you love.</i> |
| 3. Am-āt, <i>he loves.</i> | 3. Am-ant, <i>they love.</i> |

IMPERFECT (1st root).

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Am-ābām, <i>I was loving.</i> | Am-ābāmūs, <i>we were loving.</i> |
| Am-ābās, <i>thou wast loving.</i> | Am-ābātīs, <i>ye or you were loving.</i> |
| Am-ābāt, <i>he was loving.</i> | Am-ābānt, <i>they were loving.</i> |

FUTURE (1st root).

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Am-ābō, <i>I shall love.</i> | Am-ābīmūs, <i>we shall love.</i> |
| Am-ābīs, <i>thou wilt love.</i> | Am-ābītīs, <i>ye or you will love.</i> |
| Am-ābīt, <i>he will love.</i> | Am-ābunt, <i>they will love.</i> |

* The vowel is also generally considered common before these endings in the *future perfect*; the old grammarians, however, make it *long*.

PARADIGM—continued.

PERFECT (2d root).

| | |
|--|---|
| Amāv-ī, <i>I loved or have loved.</i> | Amāv-īmūs, <i>we loved or have loved.</i> |
| Amāv-istī, <i>thou lovedst or hast loved.</i> | Amāv-istīs, <i>ye or you loved or have loved.</i> |
| Amāv-īt, <i>he loved or has loved.</i> | Amāv-ērunt (ērē), <i>they loved or have loved.</i> |

PLUPERFECT (2d root).

| | |
|--|---|
| Amāv-ērām, <i>I had loved.</i> | Amāv-ērāmūs, <i>we had loved.</i> |
| Amāv-ērās, <i>thou hadst loved.</i> | Amāv-ērātīs, <i>ye or you had loved.</i> |
| Amāv-ērāt, <i>he had loved.</i> | Amāv-ērant, <i>they had loved.</i> |

FUTURE PERFECT (2d root).

| | |
|--|---|
| Amāv-ērō, <i>I shall have loved.</i> | Amāv-ērīmūs, <i>we shall have loved.</i> |
| Amāv-ērīs, <i>thou wilt have loved.</i> | Amāv-ērītīs, <i>ye or you will have loved.</i> |
| Amāv-ērīt, <i>he will have loved.</i> | Amāv-ērint, <i>they will have loved.</i> |

251. VOCABULARY

| | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| Ad (<i>prep. with acc.</i>), | to. | |
| Dūcērē, dux, | to lead | (<i>duke</i>). |
| Hesternūs, ā, ūm, | of yesterday. | |
| Incolūmīs, ē, | safe, uninjured. | |
| Lēgātūs, ī, | ambassador | (<i>legate</i>). |
| Mittērē, mīs, | to send. | (<i>mission</i>). |
| Praemittērē, | to send before. | |
| Primūs, ā, ūm, | first | (<i>prime</i>). |

252. Exercises.

(a) 1. Violābas legem. 2. Violavisti leges. 3. Balbum vocāvi. 4. Hesterno die Balbum vocavīmus. 5. Urbem servāvi. 6. Cives incolūmes servavīmus. 7. Caium, summo ingenio (213) virum, ambītus accusaverātis. 8. Balbum capītis damnabītis.

9. Legātos ad Caesārem mittunt. 10. Prima luce omnem equitātum praemīsīt. 11. Christiānus nemīnem violābit. 12. Nemīnem violavisti. 13. Multos annos regnābis. 14. Balbus parvo (181) contentus est. 15. Servus multa laude dignus est.

(b) 1. You have kept your word. 2. I will not break my word. 3. You (*pl.*) have violated the laws of the state. 4. You (*pl.*) prize money very highly. 5. We shall condemn avarice. 6. I have never accused the queen. 7. We shall accuse the priest of treachery.

8. They appeased the anger of Caesar. 9. We will appease your anger. 10. Caesar thought very highly of his army. 11. We will send ambassadors to the king. 12. It is the duty of a Christian⁷ to keep his word. 13. It is the part of a wise man to be content with little.

LESSON XLVI.

Indicative Mood.—Four Conjugations.—Personal Pronouns.

253. PARADIGM of the Indicative Mood.

| PRESENT (1st root), <i>am, is, &c., loving.</i> | | | | |
|---|-----------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| | <i>Conj. I.</i> | <i>Conj. II.</i> | <i>Conj. III.</i> | <i>Conj. IV.</i> |
| S. 1. | Am-ō, | Mōn-eō, | Rēg-ō, | Aud-iō, |
| 2. | Am-ās, | Mōn-ēs, | Rēg-is, | Aud-is, |
| 3. | Am-āt; | Mōn-ēt; | Rēg-īt; | Aud-it; |
| P. 1. | Am-amūs, | Mōn-emūs, | Rēg-imūs, | Aud-imūs, |
| 2. | Am-ātis, | Mōn-ētis, | Rēg-ītis, | Aud-ītis, |
| 3. | Am-ant. | Mōn-ent. | Rēg-unt. | Aud-iunt. |

PARADIGM—continued.

IMPERFECT (1st root), *was, did.*

| | Conj. I. | Conj. II. | Conj. III. | Conj. IV. |
|-------|------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| S. 1. | Am-ābām, | Mōn-ēbām, | Rēg-ēbām, | Aud-iēbām, |
| 2. | Am-ābas, | Mōn-ēbās, | Rēg-ēbas, | Aud-iēbas, |
| 3. | Am-ābāt ; | Mōn-ēbāt ; | Rēg-ēbāt ; | Aud-iēbāt ; |
| P. 1. | Am-ābāmus, | Mōn-ēbāmus, | Rēg-ēbāmus, | Aud-iēbāmus, |
| 2. | Am-ābātis, | Mōn-ēbātis, | Rēg-ēbātis, | Aud-iēbātis, |
| 3. | Am-ābant. | Mōn-ēbant. | Rēg-ēbant. | Aud-iēbant. |

FUTURE (1st root), *shall or will.*

| | | | | |
|-------|------------|-------------|-----------|------------|
| S. 1. | Am-ābō, | Mōn-ēbō, | Rēg-ām, | Aud-iām, |
| 2. | Am-ābis, | Mōn-ēbis, | Rēg-es, | Aud-iēs, |
| 3. | Am-ābit ; | Mōn-ēbit ; | Rēg-et ; | Aud-iēt ; |
| P. 1. | Am-ābimūs, | Mōn-ēbimūs, | Rēg-emūs, | Aud-iēmūs, |
| 2. | Am-ābitis, | Mōn-ēbitis, | Rēg-etis, | Aud-iētis, |
| 3. | Am-ābunt. | Mōn-ēbunt. | Rēg-ent. | Aud-ient. |

PERFECT (2d root), *have.*

| | | | | |
|-------|-----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| S. 1. | Amāv-ī, | Mōnu-ī, | Rex-ī, | Audiv-ī, |
| 2. | Amāv-istī, | Mōnu-istī, | Rex-istī, | Audiv-istī, |
| 3. | Amāv-it ; | Mōnu-it ; | Rex-it ; | Audiv-it ; |
| P. 1. | Amāv-imūs, | Mōnu-imūs, | Rex-imūs, | Audiv-imūs, |
| 2. | Amāv-istis, | Mōnu-istis, | Rex-istis, | Audiv-istis, |
| 3. | Amāv-erunt or ērē. | Mōnu-erunt or ērē. | Rex-erunt or ērē. | Audiv-erunt or ērē. |

PLUPERFECT (2d root), *had.*

| | | | | |
|-------|--------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| S. 1. | Amāv-ērām, | Mōnu-ērām, | Rex-ērām, | Audiv-ērām, |
| 2. | Amāv-ērās, | Mōnu-ērās, | Rex-ērās, | Audiv-ērās, |
| 3. | Amāv-ērāt ; | Mōnu-ērāt ; | Rex-ērāt ; | Audiv-ērāt ; |
| P. 1. | Amāv-ērāmus, | Mōnu-ērāmus, | Rex-ērāmus, | Audiv-ērāmus, |
| 2. | Amāv-ērātis, | Mōnu-ērātis, | Rex-ērātis, | Audiv-ērātis, |
| 3. | Amāv-erant. | Mōnu-erant. | Rex-erant. | Audiv-erant. |

FUTURE PERFECT (2d root), *shall or will have.*

| | | | | |
|-------|--------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| S. 1. | Amāv-ērō, | Mōnu-ērō, | Rex-ērō, | Audiv-ērō, |
| 2. | Amāv-eris, | Mōnu-eris, | Rex-eris, | Audiv-eris, |
| 3. | Amāv-erit ; | Mōnu-erit ; | Rex-erit ; | Audiv-erit ; |
| P. 1. | Amāv-erimūs, | Mōnu-erimūs, | Rex-erimūs, | Audiv-erimūs, |
| 2. | Amāv-eritis, | Mōnu-eritis, | Rex-eritis, | Audiv-eritis, |
| 3. | Amāv-erint. | Mōnu-erint. | Rex-erint. | Audiv-erint. |

PRONOUNS.

254. *Pronouns* are words which supply the place of nouns; as, *ěgŏ*, I; *tū*, thou, &c.

255. Pronouns are divided into two classes; viz.,

1) *Substantive Pronouns*; as, *ěgŏ*, *tū*, &c.

2) *Adjective Pronouns*; as, *hīc*, this; *illě*, that.

256. Substantive Pronouns are three in number, viz.: *ěgŏ*, I (*which is of course of the first person*); *tū*, thou (*second person*); and *suī*, of himself (*third person*). These from their signification are often called *Personal Pronouns*.

257. Substantive Pronouns are declined as follows:

| SINGULAR. | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|---|
| 1st Person. | 2d Person. | 3d Person. |
| N. <i>Egŏ</i> , I. | <i>Tū</i> , thou. | |
| G. <i>Meī</i> , of me. | <i>Tuī</i> , of thee. | } <i>Suī</i> , of himself, herself, itself. |
| D. <i>Mihī</i> , to or for me. | <i>Tībī</i> , to or for thee. | |
| A. <i>Mē</i> , me. | <i>Tē</i> , thee. | <i>Sībī</i> , to himself, &c. |
| V. <i>Tū</i> , O thou. | | <i>Sē</i> , himself. |
| A. <i>Mē</i> , with, &c. me. | <i>Tē</i> , with thee. | <i>Sē</i> , with himself. |
| PLURAL. | | |
| | | |
| N. <i>Nŏs</i> , we. | <i>Vŏs</i> , ye or you. | |
| G. <i>Nostrŭm</i> , } of us. | <i>Vestrŭm</i> , } of you. | <i>Suī</i> , of themselves. |
| or <i>Nostri</i> , } | or <i>Vestri</i> , } | |
| D. <i>Nŏbis</i> , to us. | <i>Vŏbis</i> , to you. | <i>Sībī</i> , to themselves. |
| A. <i>Nŏs</i> , us. | <i>Vŏs</i> , you. | <i>Sē</i> , themselves. |
| V. <i>Vŏs</i> , O ye or you. | | |
| A. <i>Nŏbis</i> , with us. | <i>Vŏbis</i> , with you. | <i>Sē</i> , with themselves. |

258. As the ending of the verb shows the person of its subject, the nominative of pronouns is seldom expressed as the subject, except for the sake of *emphasis* or *contrast*.

259. VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Agĕrĕ, ĕg, | to drive, to lead, to do. | |
| Dĕ (<i>prep. with abl.</i>), | from, concerning. | |
| Dĕdĕrĕ, dĕdid, | to surrender. | |
| Dĕmonstrārĕ, āv, | to show, to demonstrate | (<i>demonstration</i>). |
| Egō, | I. | |
| Errārĕ, āv, | to err | (<i>error</i>). |
| Expōnĕrĕ, expōsū, | to set forth, to explain | (<i>expose</i>). |
| Fācĕrĕ, (iō), fĕc, | to make, to do, to act. | |
| Grātiā, ae, | gratitude, favor, <i>pl.</i> thanks. | |
| Gratias āgĕrĕ, | to give thanks. | |
| Itĕr, itinĕrĭs, <i>n.</i> | journey, route | (<i>itinerant</i>). |
| Jūdicārĕ, āv, | to judge | (<i>judicature</i>). |
| Occultārĕ, āv, | to conceal | (<i>occultation</i>) |
| Poscĕrĕ, pōpose, | to demand. | |
| Rĕs, rĕī, | thing, affair, subject. | |
| Sĕd, | but. | |
| Sensūs, ūs, | feeling, perception | (<i>sense</i>). |
| Tū | thou, you. | |

260. Exercises.

(a) 1. Rem omnem exposui. 2. Errāvi. 3. Ego de meo sensu iudico. 4. Ego misi viros: pueros tu misisti. 5. Hesterno die Balbum ad me vocavi. 6. Vos iudicavistis. 7. Nos iudicabimus. 8. Mihi gratias egistis.

9. Caius itinera nostra servabat. 10. Fidem suam inviti servaverunt. 11. Agricola est laborare. 12. Caius, ut demonstravimus, itinera nostra servabat. 13. Caesar servos poposcit. 14. Nos servos non poposcimus.

(b) 1. We have read your letters. 2. You were playing, but I was writing. 3. He has given me a beautiful book. 4. He will give you (*to you*) thanks. 5. We shall thank you. 6. I had called the boy to me

7. Yesterday you called the girls to you. 8. We have never opened your letters.

9. I have kept my word. 10. You have never broken your word. 11. They have accused you of theft. 12. The judge has condemned us to death (215). 13. We will not accuse you of treachery. 14. We shall not remain in the city.

LESSON XLVII.

Subjunctive Mood.—Four Conjugations.

261. PARADIGM of the Subjunctive Mood.

| PRESENT (1st root), <i>may or can.</i> | | | |
|--|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| Conj. I. | Conj. II. | Conj. III. | Conj. IV. |
| Am-ēm, | Mön-eām, | Rēg-ām, | Aud-iām, |
| Am-ēs, | Mön-eās, | Rēg-ās, | Aud-ias, |
| Am-ēt ; | Mön-eāt ; | Rēg-āt ; | Aud-iāt ; |
| Am-ēmūs, | Mön-eāmūs, | Rēg-āmūs, | Aud-iāmūs, |
| Am-ētīs, | Mön-eātīs, | Rēg-ātīs, | Aud-iātīs, |
| Am-ent. | Mön-eant. | Rēg-ant. | Aud-iant. |
| IMPERFECT (1st root), <i>might, could, would, or should.</i> | | | |
| Am-ārēm, | Mön-ērēm, | Rēg-ērēm, | Aud-irēm, |
| Am-ārēs, | Mön-ērēs, | Rēg-ērēs, | Aud-irēs, |
| Am-ārēt ; | Mön-ērēt ; | Rēg-ērēt ; | Aud-irēt ; |
| Am-ārēmūs, | Mön-ērēmūs, | Rēg-ērēmūs, | Aud-irēmūs, |
| Am-ārētīs, | Mön-ērētīs, | Rēg-ērētīs, | Aud-irētīs, |
| Am-arent, | Mön-arent. | Rēg-arent. | Aud-irent. |
| PERFECT (2d root), <i>may have.</i> | | | |
| Amāv-ērīm, | Mönu-ērīm, | Rex-ērīm, | Audiv-ērīm, |
| Amāv-ērīs, | Mönu-ērīs, | Rex-ērīs, | Audiv-ērīs, |
| Amāv-ērīt ; | Mönu-ērīt ; | Rex-ērīt ; | Audiv-ērīt ; |
| Amāv-ērīmūs, | Mönu-ērīmūs, | Rex-ērīmūs, | Audiv-ērīmūs, |
| Amāv-ērītīs, | Mönu-ērītīs, | Rex-ērītīs, | Audiv-ērītīs, |
| Amāv-erint. | Mönu erint, | Rex-erint. | Audiv-erint. |

PARADIGM—*continued.*

| PLUPERFECT (2d root), <i>might, could, would, or should have.</i> | | | |
|---|---------------|--------------|----------------|
| Conj. I. | Conj. II. | Conj. III. | Conj. IV. |
| Amāv-issēm, | Mōnu-issēm, | Rex-issēm, | Audīv-issēm, |
| Amāv-issēs, | Mōnu-issēs, | Rex-issēs, | Audīv-issēs, |
| Amāv-issēt; | Mōnu-issēt; | Rex-issēt; | Audīv-issēt; |
| Amāv-issēmūs, | Mōnu-issēmūs, | Rex-issēmūs, | Audīv-issēmūs, |
| Amāv-issētīs, | Mōnu-issētīs, | Rex-issētīs, | Audīv-issētīs, |
| Amāv-issent. | Mōnu-issent. | Rex-issent. | Audīv-issent. |

REM.—It will be observed that throughout the subjunctive the 1st person sing. ends in *m*.

262. The subjunctive with *ūt* is used to express a *result*; e. g.,

Tantūm est frīgūs ūt nix nōn līquescāt.

The cold is so great that the snow does not melt.

263. The subjunctive with *ūt*, denoting result, generally depends upon a proposition which contains some word signifying *so, such, so great, &c.*; thus, in the above example, it depends upon *tantūm* (*so great, or such*).

264. Hence, in turning English into Latin, *that* after *so, such, so great, &c.*, must be translated by *ūt*, and the verb which follows must be put in the subjunctive. (See example above.)

265. When the subjunctive depends upon a verb in the *present, perfect definite, or future*, it must be put in the *present* tense, unless it represents its action as *completed* at the time denoted by the principal verb; and then it must be in the *perfect*; e. g.,

1. Tantă est puērī industriă ūt multă discăt.

The boy's industry is so great that he learns much.

2. Nesciō quid dixērīt.

I do not know what he has said.

REM.—In the first example, the subjunctive *discāt* (learns) is in the *present* tense, because the time of its action is the same as that of *est* (*pres.*) on which it depends, and in the second example *dixērīt* (he has said) is in the *perfect*, because it represents its action as *completed* at the time denoted by *nesciō* (i. e. *pres.*).

266. When the subjunctive depends upon a verb in the *imperfect*, *perfect indefinite*, or *pluperfect*, it must be put in the *imperfect* tense, unless it represents its action as completed at the time denoted by the principal verb, and then it must be in the *pluperfect*, e. g.,

1. Tantă ărat puērī industriă ūt multă discērēt.

The boy's industry *was* so great that he *learned* much.

2. Nescīvī quid dixissēt.

I *did* not know what he *had* said.

REM.—The imperf. *discērēt* represents its action as *not completed*, while the pluperfect *dixissēt* represents its action as *completed*.

266. A few adjectives in Latin are often used merely to specify some particular part of the nouns to which they belong; e. g.,

In summō { on the highest mountain (*Lat. Id.*).

montē, { on the top of the mountain (*Eng. Id.*).

In mediis { in the middle waters (*Lat. Id.*).

ăquīs, { in the middle (or midst) of the waters
(*Eng. Id.*).

268. VOCABULARY.

Alpēs, Alpiūm,

Alps.

Conservăre, ăv,

to preserve

(*conservative*).

Frangăre, frēg,

to break.

| | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------|
| Frigŭs, ōrīs, | cold | (<i>frigid</i>). |
| Ibī, | there. | |
| Līquescēre, licŭ, | to melt | (<i>liquid</i>). |
| Mēdiŭs, ā, ūm, | middle, midst of, middle of (267). | |
| Nārē, āv, | to swim. | |
| Nondŭm, | not yet. | |
| Piscīs, īs, <i>m.</i> , | fish. | |
| Summŭs, ā, ūm, | highest, top (267) | (<i>summit</i>) |
| Tantŭs, ā, ūm, | so great. | |

269. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Venit ut me audiāt. 2. Veni ut vos audiam. 3. Venērunt ut nos audiant. 4. Venērunt ut te audīrent. 5. Ne violētis fidem. 6. In summo monte tantum est frigus ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat.

7. In summis Alpibus tantum erat frigus ut nix ibi nunquam liquesceret. 8. Venit ut patriam auro vendat. 9. Venisti ut patriam auro vendēres. 10. Avis in summa arbore cantābat. 11. Multum voluptātis cepēram.

(b) 1. The cold is so great that the snow does not melt (265). 2. The cold has been so great that the snow has not yet melted (265). 3. The cold was so great on the top of the mountain that the snow did not melt there (266). 4. The cold was so great on the top of the Alps that the snow did not melt there (266). 5. I have come to learn. 6. You have come to play.

7. Let him keep his word. 8. Do not break your word. 9. Do not sell your country for gold. 10. On the top¹⁰ of the mountain the snow never melts. 11. On the top of the Alps the snow never melts. 12. The fish is swimming in the middle¹⁰ of the water.

LESSON XLVIII.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Verbs in io of the Third Conjugation.—Demonstrative Pronouns.

270. A FEW verbs of the third conjugation are inflected (i. e. form their tenses, numbers, and persons) in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and in the present subjunctive, like verbs of the fourth conjugation. The following is an example.

REM. In the present, first and second persons plural, the *i* in the penult is short; as, *căpîmûs, căpîtiis*.

271. Paradigm of Verbs in *iô* of the Third Conjugation.

Căpěřě, to take; 1st root, căp; 2d, cěp.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

Căp-iô, I take.

Cap-îmûs, we take.

Căp-îis, thou takest.

Cap-îtiis, ye or you take.

Căp-ît, he takes.

Cap-iunt, they take.

IMPERFECT.

Căp-iěbăm, I was taking.

Căp-iěbămûs, we were taking.

Căp-iěbās, thou wast taking.

Căp-iěbătis, ye or you were taking.

Căp-iěbăt, he was taking.

Căp-iěbant, they were taking.

FUTURE.

Căp-iăm, I shall take.

Căp-iēmûs, we shall take.

Căp-iēs, thou wilt take.

Căp-iētis, ye or you will take.

Căp-iět, he will take.

Căp-ient, they will take.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Căp-iăm, I may take.

Căp-iămûs, we may take.

Căp-iās, thou mayest take.

Căp-iătis, ye or you may take.

Căp-iăt, he may take.

Căp-iant, they may take.

REM.—The remaining parts of the indicative and subjunctive moods, in verbs in *iō*, are entirely regular.

272. It has been stated (255) that pronouns are divided into two classes, viz., *Substantive Pronouns* and *Adjective Pronouns*.

273. Adjective pronouns are so called, because they are sometimes used as *pronouns to supply the place of nouns*, and sometimes as *adjectives to qualify nouns*. These are divided into several classes.

274. *Demonstrative Pronouns*, so called because they point out or specify the objects to which they refer, are *hic, illē, istē, is*, and *their compounds*, and are declined as follows:

| 1. <i>Hic, this.</i> | | | | | |
|---|----------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | | | <i>Plural.</i> | | |
| <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> |
| N. <i>Hic,</i> | <i>haec,</i> | <i>hōc.</i> | <i>Hi,</i> | <i>hae,</i> | <i>haec.</i> |
| G. <i>Hujūs,</i> | <i>hujūs,</i> | <i>hujūs.</i> | <i>Hōrūm,</i> | <i>hārūm,</i> | <i>hōrūm.</i> |
| D. <i>Huīc,</i> | <i>huīc,</i> | <i>huīc.</i> | <i>Hīs,</i> | <i>hīs,</i> | <i>hīs.</i> |
| A. <i>Hunc,</i> | <i>hanc,</i> | <i>hōc.</i> | <i>Hōs,</i> | <i>hās,</i> | <i>haec.</i> |
| V. | | | | | |
| A. <i>Hōc,</i> | <i>hāc,</i> | <i>hōc.</i> | <i>His,</i> | <i>hīs,</i> | <i>hīs.</i> |
| 2. <i>Illē, he or that.</i> | | | | | |
| <i>Singular.</i> | | | <i>Plural.</i> | | |
| <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> |
| N. <i>Illē,</i> | <i>illā,</i> | <i>illūd.</i> | <i>Illī,</i> | <i>illae,</i> | <i>illā.</i> |
| G. <i>Illīūs,</i> | <i>illīūs,</i> | <i>illīūs.</i> | <i>Illōrūm,</i> | <i>illārūm,</i> | <i>illōrūm.</i> |
| D. <i>Illī,</i> | <i>illī,</i> | <i>illī.</i> | <i>Illīs,</i> | <i>illīs,</i> | <i>illīs.</i> |
| A. <i>Illūm,</i> | <i>illām,</i> | <i>illūd.</i> | <i>Illōs,</i> | <i>illās,</i> | <i>illā.</i> |
| V. | | | | | |
| A. <i>Illō,</i> | <i>illā,</i> | <i>illō.</i> | <i>Illīs,</i> | <i>illīs,</i> | <i>illīs.</i> |
| 3. <i>Istē, that.</i> | | | | | |
| <p><i>Istē, that,</i> is declined like <i>illē</i>. It usually refers to objects which are present to the person addressed, and sometimes expresses contempt.</p> | | | | | |

PARADIGMS—continued.

4. Is, *he or that.*(Less specific than *illă*.)

| <i>Singular.</i> | | | <i>Plural.</i> | | |
|------------------|-----------|-----------|----------------|-------------|-------------|
| <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> |
| N. Is, | eă, | îd. | Îi, | cae, | eă. |
| G. Ejüş, | ejüş, | ejüş. | Eörüm, | eărüm, | eörüm. |
| D. Ei, | eî, | eî. | Iis or eîs, | iis or eîs, | iis or eîs. |
| A. Eüm, | eăm, | îd. | Eös, | eăs, | eă. |
| V. | | | | | |
| A. Eö, | eă, | eö. | Iis or eîs, | iis or eîs, | iis or eîs. |

5. Idēm, *the same.*(Formed by annexing *dēm* to *îs*.)

| <i>Singular.</i> | | | <i>Plural.</i> | | |
|------------------|-----------|-----------|----------------|------------|------------|
| <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> |
| N Idēm, | eădēm, | îdēm. | Idēm, | eaedēm, | eădēm. |
| G Ejusdēm, | ejudēm, | ejudēm. | Eörundēm, | eărundēm, | eörundēm. |
| D. Eidēm, | eîdēm, | eîdēm. | Eisdēm, or | eisdēm, or | eisdēm, or |
| A. Eundēm, | eandēm, | îdēm. | Iisdēm, | iisdēm, | iisdēm. |
| V. | | | Eösdēm, | eäsdēm, | eădēm. |
| A. Eödēm, | eädēm, | eödēm. | Eisdēm, or | eisdēm, or | eisdēm, or |
| | | | Iisdēm, | iisdēm, | iisdēm. |

275. VOCABULARY.

| | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Ab (<i>prep. with abl.</i>), | from. |
| Castră, örüm (<i>plur.</i>), | camp. |
| Cělëritër, | quickly. |
| Clémentiă, ae, | mildness, clemency. |
| Confügerë (iö), confüg, | to flee for refuge. |
| Cüm (<i>prep. with abl.</i>), | with. |
| Dimittëřë, dimîs, | dismiss. |
| Ex (<i>prep. with abl.</i>), | from. |
| Impëtüs, üs, | attack (impetus). |
| Impërată, örüm, | commands. |
| Löcüs, î, | place, position (local). |
| Mövēřë, möv, | to move, to put in motion. |

| | |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Postĕrā, ūm (<i>mas. not used</i>), | next, following. |
| Postŭlārĕ, āv, | to demand. |
| Prōmittĕrĕ, prōmīs, | to promise. |
| Prōmōvĕrĕ, prōmōv, | to move forward, to advance. |
| Vĕrō, | indeed, truly. |

276. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Postĕro die castra ex eo loco movent. 2. Idem facit Caesar. 3. Idem faciēbant. 4. Ego vero istud non postŭlo. 5. Veni ut legĕrem. 6. Haec promistis. 7. Eōdem die castra promōvit.

8. Hi primi (205) cum gladiis impĕtum fecērunt. 9. Illi imperāta celerĭter fecērunt. 10. Ibi me non occidisti. 11. Eum ab se dimittit. 12. Venisti ut eum vidĕres. 13. Hunc capĭtis damnābunt. 14. Illos proditionis invĭti accusaverātis.

(b) 1. I will give you this book. 2. We prize these beautiful books very highly. 3. They will think little of those beautiful books. 4. You have condemned this man to death. 5. I will entreat him not to do (that he may not do) this.

6. I have unwillingly condemned him to death. 7. We will not accuse you of treachery. 8. You have accused him of bribery. 9. We entreated him not to accuse his son. 10. We did not make the attack. 11. They asked us to make an attack.

LESSON XLIX.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Intensive Pronoun.

277. THE *Intensive Pronoun*, *ipsĕ*, himself, is so called because it is used to render an object *emphatic*;

it is also called an *adjunctive* pronoun, because it is usually joined to a noun, or to some other pronoun; as, *Rōmūlūs ipsē*, Romulus himself; *tū ipsē*, you yourself.

278. *Ipsē*, when joined to a noun or pronoun, may sometimes be translated by *very*; as, *hōc ipsūm*, this *very* thing.

279. *Ipsē* is declined as follows:

| <i>Singular.</i> | | | <i>Plural.</i> | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> |
| N. <i>Ipsē</i> , | <i>ipsā</i> , | <i>ipsūm</i> . | <i>Ipsī</i> , | <i>ipsae</i> , | <i>ipsā</i> . |
| G. <i>Ipsīūs</i> , | <i>ipsīūs</i> , | <i>ipsīūs</i> . | <i>Ipsōrūm</i> , | <i>ipsārūm</i> , | <i>ipsōrūm</i> . |
| D. <i>Ipsī</i> , | <i>ipsī</i> , | <i>ipsī</i> . | <i>Ipsīs</i> , | <i>ipsīs</i> , | <i>ipsīs</i> . |
| A. <i>Ipsūm</i> , | <i>ipsām</i> , | <i>ipsūm</i> . | <i>Ipsōs</i> , | <i>ipsās</i> , | <i>ipsā</i> . |
| V. | | | | | |
| A. <i>Ipsō</i> , | <i>ipsā</i> , | <i>ipsō</i> . | <i>Ipsīs</i> , | <i>ipsīs</i> , | <i>ipsīs</i> . |

REM.—The substantive pronouns are rendered *intensive* by annexing the syllable *mēt*; as, *ēgōmēt*, I myself. In the substantive pronoun of the third person, *sēsē* is used *intensively* in the accusative and ablative of both numbers.

280. VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------|----------------------|
| Accēdērē, access, | to approach | (<i>access</i>). |
| At, | but, yet. | |
| Fortūnā, ae, | fortune. | |
| Fūgā, ae, | flight. | |
| Gēnūs, gēnērīs, | kind, nature. | |
| Justūs, ā, ūm, | just, fair. | |
| Nūmērūs, ī, | number | (<i>numerous</i>). |
| Occultārē, āv, | to conceal | (<i>occult</i>). |
| Respondērē, respond, | to answer | (<i>respond</i>) |
| Usquē, | as far as; <i>usque ad</i> , even to. | |

281. Exercises.

(a) 1. Ipse fuga mortem vitavērat. 2. Ipse ad castra hostium accessit. 3. Ipsi usque ad castra hostium

accessērant. 4. Caius sese occultābat. 5. Servi nostri sese occultābunt. 6. Ipse dixit. 7. Hoc ipsum justum est. 8. At te eādem tua fortūna servāvit. 9. Caesar haec promīsit. 10. Ad haec legāti respondērunt.

(b) 1. He himself accused the son of the king. 2. We shall accuse the king himself. 3. You yourself gave me this book. 4. They will read this very (*ipsē*) book. 5. We ourselves will go to see the queen. 6. They have gone to see the queen herself.

7. You promised this. 8. We will ourselves do the same. 9. You have said nothing of (*de*) the nature of the war. 10. We shall say nothing of the war itself. 11. They had come to condemn me to death.

LESSON L.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Relative and Interrogative Pronouns.

282. THE *Relative Pronoun*, *quī*, who, is so called, because it always relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent. It is declined as follows :

| <i>Singular.</i> | | | <i>Plural.</i> | | |
|------------------|-----------|-----------|----------------|-----------|-----------|
| <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> |
| N. Quī, | quae, | quōd. | Quī, | quae, | quae. |
| G. Cujūs, | cujūs, | cujūs. | Quōrūm, | quārūm, | quōrūm. |
| D. Cuī, | cuī, | cuī. | Quībūs, | quībūs, | quībūs. |
| A. Quēm, | quām, | quōd. | Quōs, | quās, | quae. |
| V. | | | | | |
| A. Quō, | quā, | quō. | Quībūs, | quībūs, | quībūs. |

283. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The relative agrees with its antecedent in *gender* and *number*; as, *Puēr quī scribīt, the boy who writes.*

REM.—*Quī* is in the masculine singular, to agree with its antecedent *puēr*; but it is in the *nominative* because it is the subject of *scribīt*, and not because its antecedent is in the nominative.

284. The *Interrogative* Pronouns, *quīs* and *quī*, are so called because they are used in asking questions. *Quī* (which? what?) is used *adjectively*, and is declined like the relative. *Quīs* (who? which? what?) is generally used *substantively*, and is declined like the relative, except the forms *quīs*, *quīd*, as follows:

| <i>Singular.</i> | | | <i>Plural.</i> | | |
|------------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> |
| N. <i>Quīs,</i> | <i>quae,</i> | <i>quīd.</i> | <i>Quī,</i> | <i>quae,</i> | <i>quae.</i> |
| G. <i>Cujūs,</i> | <i>cujūs,</i> | <i>cujūs.</i> | <i>Quōrūm,</i> | <i>quārūm,</i> | <i>quōrūm.</i> |
| D. <i>Cuī,</i> | <i>cuī,</i> | <i>cuī.</i> | <i>Quībūs,</i> | <i>quībūs,</i> | <i>quībūs.</i> |
| A. <i>Quēm,</i> | <i>quām,</i> | <i>quīd.</i> | <i>Quōs,</i> | <i>quās,</i> | <i>quae.</i> |
| V. | | | | | |
| A. <i>Quō,</i> | <i>quā,</i> | <i>quō.</i> | <i>Quībūs,</i> | <i>quībūs,</i> | <i>quībūs.</i> |

285. VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--|---------------------------|
| <i>Ampliūs</i> (<i>comp. adv. from ample</i>), | more, further. |
| <i>Cōgītārē, āv,</i> | to think, to think about. |
| <i>Cōgnoscērē, cōgnōv,</i> | to ascertain. |
| <i>Cōrām,</i> | openly, in person. |
| <i>Exspectārē, āv,</i> | to await, expect. |
| <i>Nuntiūs, ī,</i> | messenger. |
| <i>Parvūs, ā, ūm,</i> | little, small. |
| <i>Perspicērē, perspex,</i> | to perceive, to see. |
| <i>Plānē,</i> | plainly. |
| <i>Vocārē, āv,</i> | to call. |

286. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Quis nos vocābit? 2. Quid dixisti? 3. Quid cogitas? 4. Quid times? 5. Quis tibi hunc librum dedit? 6. Eādem quae ex nuntiis cognovērat, coram perspicit. 7. In qua urbe vivimus? 8. Illi, quod nemo fecerat, fecerunt. 9. Quid est quod amplius expectes? 10. Quam urbem habemus? 11. Quis Caium proditionis (214) accūsat? 12. Quem ambītus accusavisti? 13. Carthagīne invītus manēbo. 14. Bienium Romae invīti manēbant. 15. Summam prudentiam simulatiōne stultitiae texistis.

(b) 1. Whom do you love? 2. I see the slave whom you punished. 3. Who has sold his country for gold? 4. Who gave the boy this beautiful book? 5. Who will show me the way? 6. I will show you the house which my father built.

7. Which book were you reading? 8. I was reading the book which you gave me. 9. We all read to learn (that we may learn). 10. You have remained at Rome many years. 11. How much time you have lost!

LESSON LI.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Interrogative Particles.

287. *Nē* and *nūm* are interrogative particles; and when a question has no interrogative pronoun (284) or interrogative adverb, one of these particles must be used.

288. If *ně* is used, it must *follow* and be joined to some other word; and, if there is a *not* in the sentence, it must be joined to the *nōn* (not), making *nonnē*; e. g.,

1. Scribit*ně* Caiūs? Is Caius writing?
2. Nonnē scribīt? Is not he writing?
3. Nūm scribīt Caiūs? Is Caius writing? [No.]

REM.—A question *with* *ně* and *without* *nōn* asks for information (Ex. 1), with *nōn* expects the answer *yes* (Ex. 2), and with *nūm* expects the answer *no* (Ex. 3); thus, Nūm scribīt Caiūs, means, *Caius is not writing, is he?*

289. VOCABULARY.*

| | |
|---|---|
| Aspergērē, aspers, <i>sprinkle.</i> | accus., <i>to, into, against</i> ; with |
| Arā, ae, <i>altar.</i> | abl., <i>in.</i> |
| Auctumnūs, ī, <i>autumn.</i> | Nidūs, ī, <i>nest.</i> |
| Construērē, construx, <i>to build, construct.</i> | Pēriculōsūs, ā, ūm, <i>dangerous.</i> |
| Immergērē, immers, <i>to plunge into.</i> | Sanguīs, īnis, <i>m., blood.</i> |
| In (<i>prep. with accus. or abl.</i>), with | Sēmēn, īnis, <i>seed.</i> |
| | Spargērē, spars, <i>to scatter, to sow.</i> |
| | Victimā, ae, <i>victim.</i> |

290. Exercises.

(In construing, omit the *ně* or *nūm*, but make the sentence a question.)

- (a) 1. Scripsitne Caius?† 2. Num scripserātis? 3. Num rex portas urbis sua manu claudet? 4. Quid rides?

* It has been thought unnecessary longer to insert *key-words* in the Vocabularies, but it is hoped the pupil will still continue to accustom himself to associate with his Latin at least some of the more common English words which have been derived from it.

† In construing a question, the auxiliary verb (*does, do, did, has, have*) must be put before the subject; as, Scripsitne puer, *Has the boy written?* or, *Did the boy write?*

5. Caius se in flumen immersit. 6. Periculōsum est hiēme se in flumen immergēre. 7. Puer se in flumen immergat. 8. *Agricolārum est*⁷ semina auctumno spargēre. 9. Nonnē in *summīs Alpibus* tantum est frigus, ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat? 10. Sacerdos victimārum sanguine aram aspersit. 11. Nonnē boni est pastōris⁷ tondēre oves, non deglubēre?

(b) 1. Does he live to eat? [No.] 2. Does not he eat to live? 3. The husbandman has scattered seeds. 4. Have not the husbandmen scattered seeds? 5. He has plunged the body into *the middle of the waters*. 6. Let fish swim in the *midst of the waters*. 7. They *have come* to condemn (239) you *to death*.⁸ 8. Can he swim in the *middle of the waters*?¹⁰ [No.] 9. The boy's industry is so great, that he can learn all things. 10. Has not a wolf bitten the sheep? 11. Are you shearing the sheep?

LESSON LII.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Pronouns, Indefinite and Possessive.

291. *Indefinite Pronouns* are so called because they do not definitely specify the objects to which they refer; e. g., *quīdām*, a certain one; *āliquis*, some one; *quisquē*, every one; *siquis*, if any, &c.

292. The *indefinite pronouns* are compounds either of *quis* or *quī*, and are declined in nearly the same manner as the simple pronouns.

293. *Quīdām*, compounded of *quī* and *dām*, is declined like *quī*, except in the neuter singular, where it

takes *quīd* (instead of *quōd*) when used *substantively* and in the accusative singular and genitive plural, where *m* before *d* is changed into *n*; as, *quendām* (not *quem-dām*), *quōrundām* (not *quōrumdām*).

294. *Aliquīs*, compounded of *āliūs* and *quīs*, is declined like *quīs*, except in the neuter singular, nominative and accusative, where it has *āliquōd* adjective, and *āliquīd* substantive; and in the feminine singular and neuter plural, where it has *āliquā*. It is declined as follows:

| SINGULAR. | | | |
|-----------|------------|------------|----------------------------|
| | <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> |
| N. | Alīquīs, | ālīquā, | ālīquōd <i>or</i> ālīquīd. |
| G. | Alīcujūs, | ālicujūs, | ālicujūs. |
| D. | Alīcui, | ālicui, | ālicui. |
| A. | Alīquēm, | ālīquām, | ālīquōd <i>or</i> ālīquīd. |
| V. | | | |
| A. | Alīquō, | ālīquā, | ālīquō. |
| PLURAL. | | | |
| | <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> |
| N. | Alīquī, | ālīquae, | ālīquā. |
| G. | Alīquōrūm, | ālīquārūm, | ālīquōrūm. |
| D. | Alīquībūs, | ālīquībūs, | ālīquībūs. |
| A. | Alīquōs, | ālīquās, | ālīquā. |
| V. | | | |
| A. | Alīquībūs, | ālīquībūs, | ālīquībūs. |

295. The *Possessive Pronouns* (so called because they denote possession), *meūs*, *meā*, *meūm*; *tuūs*, *tuā*, *tuūm*; *suūs*, *suā*, *suūm*; *nostēr*, *nostrā*, *nostrūm*; *vestēr*, *vestrā*, *vestrūm*, are declined, as we have already seen (114, REM. 3), like adjectives of the first and second declension.

296. VOCABULARY.

A (*prep. with abl.*), *from.*Argentūm, ī, *silver.*Conciliūm, ī, *council.*Continēre, ū, *to restrain, confine.*Culpā, ae, *fault.*Indicēre, indix, *to declare (as war).*Infligēre, inflix, *inflict.*Si, *if.*Ullūs, ā, ūm (113, REM.), *any.*Vulnūs, ěris, *wound.*

297. Exercises.

(a) 1. Aliquid tempōris invītus amittes. 2. Non est tua ulla culpa, si te aliqui timuērunt. 3. Aliquis est in horto tuo. 4. Caesar suos a proelio continēbat. 5. Legātos ad Caesārem misit. 6. Legāti ad concilium venērunt. 7. Christianōrum est fidem suam servāre. 8. Turpe est patriae tuae leges violāre. 9. Rex urbi bellum indicet. 10. Anguis agricōlae vulnus infligēbat. 11. Tanta est industria tua, ut multa discas. 12. Tanta fuit industria tua ut multa discērēs.

(b) 1. Some one has accused you of bribery. 2. They have accused certain persons of theft. 3. He will condemn some one to death. 4. We have lost some time. 5. The shepherd has sold his dog for gold. 6. It is the duty of a father to instruct his sons. 7. Who has accused you of theft? 8. No one has accused me of theft. 9. Some one has accused you of treachery. 10. Who has accused me of treachery? 11. The king himself has accused you of treachery.

LESSON LIII.

Verb.—Essē.

298. THE verb *essē*, to be, is called a substantive verb, except when used as an auxiliary in the passive

voice (not yet examined) of other verbs. Its conjugation is quite irregular.

299. Paradigm of the verb *Essē*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (*am*).

| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Sūm, I am.</i> | <i>Sūmūs, we are.</i> |
| <i>Es, thou art.</i> | <i>Estīs, you are.</i> |
| <i>Est, he is.</i> | <i>Sunt, they are.</i> |

IMPERFECT (*was*).

| | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Erām, I was.</i> | <i>Erāmūs, we were.</i> |
| <i>Erās, thou wast.</i> | <i>Erātīs, you were.</i> |
| <i>Erāt, he was.</i> | <i>Erant, they were.</i> |

FUTURE (*shall or will be*).

| | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Erō, I shall be.</i> | <i>Erimūs, we shall be.</i> |
| <i>Eris, thou wilt be.</i> | <i>Eritīs, you will be.</i> |
| <i>Erit, he will be.</i> | <i>Erun, they will be.</i> |

PERFECT (*have been or was*).

| | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <i>Fuī, I have been.</i> | <i>Fuīmūs, we have been.</i> |
| <i>Fuistī, thou hast been.</i> | <i>Fuistīs, you have been.</i> |
| <i>Fuīt, he has been.</i> | <i>Fuerunt, } they have been.</i> <i>Fuērē, }</i> |

PLUPERFECT (*had been*).

| | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>Fuērām, I had been.</i> | <i>Fuērāmūs, we had been.</i> |
| <i>Fuērās, thou hadst been.</i> | <i>Fuērātīs, you had been.</i> |
| <i>Fuērāt, he had been.</i> | <i>Fuērant, they had been.</i> |

FUTURE PERFECT (*shall or will have been*).

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>Fuērō, I shall have been.</i> | <i>Fuērīmūs, we shall have been.</i> |
| <i>Fuērīs, thou wilt have been.</i> | <i>Fuērītīs, you will have been.</i> |
| <i>Fuērīt, he will have been.</i> | <i>Fuērint, they will have been.</i> |

PARADIGM—continued.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (*may or can be*).

| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Sī</i> m, <i>I may be.</i> | <i>Sī</i> mūs, <i>we may be.</i> |
| <i>Sīs</i> , <i>thou mayest be.</i> | <i>Sīt</i> is, <i>you may be.</i> |
| <i>Sīt</i> , <i>he may be.</i> | <i>Sī</i> nt, <i>they may be.</i> |

IMPERFECT (*might, could, would, or should be*).

| | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Essēm</i> , <i>I might be.</i> | <i>Essēm</i> ūs, <i>we might be.</i> |
| <i>Essēs</i> , <i>thou mightest be.</i> | <i>Essēt</i> is, <i>you might be.</i> |
| <i>Essēt</i> , <i>he might be.</i> | <i>Essent</i> , <i>they might be.</i> |

PERFECT (*may have been*).

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>Fuērīm</i> , <i>I may have been.</i> | <i>Fuērīm</i> ūs, <i>we may have been.</i> |
| <i>Fuērīs</i> , <i>thou mayest have been.</i> | <i>Fuērīt</i> is, <i>you may have been.</i> |
| <i>Fuērīt</i> , <i>he may have been.</i> | <i>Fuērīnt</i> , <i>they may have been.</i> |

PLUPERFECT (*might, could, would, or should have been*).

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Fuissēm</i> , <i>I might have been.</i> | <i>Fuissēm</i> ūs, <i>we might have been.</i> |
| <i>Fuissēs</i> , <i>thou mightest have been.</i> | <i>Fuissēt</i> is, <i>you might have been.</i> |
| <i>Fuissēt</i> , <i>he might have been.</i> | <i>Fuissent</i> , <i>they might have been.</i> |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.*

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Es</i> , or <i>estō</i> , <i>be thou.</i> | <i>Estē</i> or <i>estōtē</i> , <i>be ye.</i> |
| <i>Estō</i> , <i>let him be.</i> | <i>Suntō</i> , <i>let them be.</i> |

INFINITIVE MOOD.

| | |
|----------|--|
| PRESENT, | <i>Essē</i> , <i>to be.</i> |
| PERFECT, | <i>Fuissē</i> , <i>to have been.</i> |
| FUTURE, | <i>Fūtūrūs</i> (ā, ūm) <i>essē</i> , <i>to be about to be.</i> |

PARTICIPLE.

| | |
|---------|---|
| FUTURE, | <i>Fūtūrūs</i> , ā, ūm, <i>about to be.</i> |
|---------|---|

* The remaining forms are given here in order to complete the Paradigm of the verb *essē*, although the nature and use of the *imperative* and *infinitive* moods, and of the *participles*, have not yet been examined; a word of explanation will be sufficient for this place.

300. The *Imperative Mood* denotes a command, and of course is never used in the first person.

301. The *Infinitive Mood*, as we have already seen (9), represents simply the meaning of the verb, without person or number. It has three tenses, *present*, *perfect*, and *future*.

302. The *Participle* is that part of the verb which has the form and inflection of an adjective; thus, the participle *fūtūrūs*, *ā*, *ūm*, is declined like the adjective *bōnūs*, *ā*, *ūm* (112).

303. VOCABULARY.

Absolvērē, absolvi, *to acquit*.

Admiratiō, ōnis, *admiration*.

Brēvis, ē, *short*.

Dignūs, ā, ūm, *worthy*.

Ferrūm, ī, *iron*.

Hābitārē, āvi, *to dwell, to inhabit*.

Hōnōr, ōris, *honor*.

Incertūs, ā, ūm, *uncertain*.

Indignūs, ā, ūm, *unworthy*.

Mens, tīs, *mind, reasoning faculty*.

Opūs, ēris, *work*.

Tranquillūs, ā, ūm, *calm, tranquil*.

Utilīs, ē, *useful*.

304. Exercises.

(a) 1. Mens sapientis semper erit tranquilla. 2. Est tuum* iter facere. 3. Puer in horto fuerat. 4. His honoribus (181) digni sitis. 5. Caius vita indignus est. 6. Ferrum et aurum sunt utilia. 7. Haec opera sunt admiratione digna. 8. Vita est brevis et incerta. 9. Improborum⁷ est malos laudare. 10. Venimus ut patriae tuae leges violaremus. 11. Veniant servi ut portas urbis claudant. 12. Multos annos Romae habitaveratis.

(b) 1. The good will be happy. 2. May you be happy. 3. We all might have been happy. 4. It is

* Est tuum, it is yours; i. e., your duty.

my duty to keep the laws of my country. 5. May he ever be worthy of this honor. 6. He would have been unworthy of his father.

7. He had been king many years. 8. We will never praise the bad. 9. They will condemn us to death. 10. We will never accuse the good. 11. He had broken his arm at Athens. 12. Virtue is the highest wisdom. 13. We will acquit you of bribery (214.)

LESSON LIV.

Verb Essē, continued.—Comparison of Adjectives.

305. ADJECTIVES in Latin, as in English, may express different degrees of the quality which they denote; e. g.,

| | | |
|--------|---------|-------------|
| Altūs, | altiör, | altissimūs. |
| High, | higher, | highest. |

REM.—In this example, *altūs* (high) is said to be in the *positive degree*; *altiör*, in the *comparative*; and *altissimūs*, in the *superlative*.

306. In Latin, adjectives are compared by adding to the root of the positive the following endings:

| Comparative. | | | Superlative. | | |
|------------------------|--------------|------|---------------------|---------------------|----------|
| M. | F. | N. | M. | F. | N. |
| iör, | iör, | iūs. | issimūs, | issimā, | issimūm. |
| <i>Examples.</i> | <i>Root.</i> | | <i>Comparative.</i> | <i>Superlative.</i> | |
| Altūs (<i>high</i>), | alt. | | altiör (iör, iūs), | altissimūs (ā, ūm). | |
| Mitis (<i>mild</i>), | mit. | | mitiör (iör, iūs), | mitissimūs (ā, ūm). | |

REM. 1.—Adjectives in *ēr* add *rimūs* (ā, ūm) to the positive, to form the superlative; e. g.,

Pulchēr, pulchriör, pulcherrīn ūs.

REM. 2.—A few adjectives in *ūs* form the superlative by adding *rimūs* to the root of the positive; e. g.,

| | | |
|----------------------------------|--------------|----------------|
| Fácilis (<i>easy</i>), | făciliör, | făcillimüs. |
| Diffícilis (<i>difficult</i>), | diffíciliör, | diffícillimüs. |
| Símilis (<i>like</i>), | símiliör, | símillimüs. |
| Dissímilis (<i>unlike</i>), | dissímiliör, | dissímillimüs. |

REM. 3.—The following adjectives are quite irregular in their comparison, viz. :

| | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------|
| Bönūs (<i>good</i>), | mēliör, | optīmūs. |
| Mālūs (<i>bad</i>), | pejör, | pessīmūs. |
| Māgnūs (<i>great</i>), | majör, | maxīmūs. |
| Parvūs (<i>little</i>), | mīnör, | mīnimūs. |
| Multūs (<i>much</i>), | plūs (pl. plūrēs, } plūrā), { | plūrīmūs. |

307. The conjunction *quām* is generally used with the comparative degree, unless one of the persons or things compared is the subject of the proposition, in which case *quām* is usually omitted, though sometimes used; e. g.,

1. Nihil est clēmentia dīvīniūs.
Nothing is more godlike than clemency.
2. Eurōpā mīnōr est quā Asiā.
Europe is smaller than Asia.

308. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The comparative degree without *quā̃m* is followed by the ablative.

REM. 1.—Clēmēntiā in the first example is in the ablative by this rule.

REM. 2.—If *quām* is expressed, the following noun will be in the same case as that which precedes: thus, *Asiā*, which follows *quām* in the second example, is in the same case as *Eurōpā*, which precedes.

309. The conjunction *quām* before a superlative renders it intensive; e. g.,

Quăm plūrimī, $\begin{cases} \text{Eng. Id.} & \text{As many as possible.} \\ \text{Lat. Id.} & \text{As the most.} \end{cases}$

Quăm maxĩmũs, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} Eng. Id. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{As great as possible.} \\ \text{The greatest possible.} \end{array} \right. \\ Lat. Id. \quad \text{As the greatest.} \end{array} \right.$

REM.—The superlative may often be best translated by *very* instead of *most*; as, *mons altissimūs*, a very high mountain.

310. VOCABULARY.

| | |
|---|---|
| Amplūs, ā, ūm, <i>extensive, great.</i> | Ignorātiō, ōnīs, <i>ignorance.</i> |
| Argentūm, ī, <i>silver.</i> | Mālūm, ī, <i>an evil.</i> |
| Cēlēbēr, brīs, brē, <i>celebrated.</i> | Prētiōsūs, ā, ūm, <i>valuable.</i> |
| Cicērō, ōnīs, <i>Cicero.</i> | Quām, <i>than.</i> |
| Divinūs, ā, ūm, <i>divine.</i> | Quām maxīmūs, ā, ūm, <i>as great as possible.</i> |
| Fūtūrūs, ā, ūm, <i>future.</i> | Rātiō, ōnīs, <i>reason.</i> |
| Grāvīs, ē, <i>heavy.</i> | Scientiā, ae, <i>knowledge.</i> |
| Impendēre, to overhang, to threaten. | Turrīs, īs, <i>tower.</i> |

311. Exercises.

(a) 1. Aurum gravius est argento. 2. Ignoratio futurorum malorum utilior est quam scientia. 3. Difficillimum est iram placare. 4. In summis montibus¹⁰ acerrimum est frigus.

5. Veniunt ut copias comparent. 6. Venit ut quam maximas⁹ copias compararet. 7. Turris est altior muro. 8. Quid est in homine ratione divinius? 9. Mons altissimus impendebat. 10. Cicero erat orator celebrissimus. 11. Romani ampliores copias expectabant.

(b) 1. Gold is very heavy. 2. Gold is more valuable than silver. 3. Wisdom is more valuable than gold and silver. 4. You are building a very high wall. 5. You have your wall higher than your tower. 6. We shall raise very large forces. 7. You have raised larger forces than the king himself.

8. We have come to raise as large forces as possible.⁹ 9. Let them raise as large forces as possible. 10. It is⁶ very easy to keep one's word. 11. It is easier to keep one's word than to appease anger. 12. Who was more celebrated than Cicero? 13. He was a very celebrated orator.

LESSON LV.

Compounds of Essě.—Comparison of Adverbs.—Numeral Adjectives.

312. THE compounds of *essě* (except *possě*, to be able, which is irregular, and will be noticed hereafter) are conjugated like the simple *essě*. *prōdessě*, however (compounded of *prō*, for, and *essě*, to be), inserts *d* after *prō* in those parts which in the simple verb begin with *e*; as,

Pres. *Prōsūm*, *prōdēs*, *prōdest*, *prōsūmūs*, *prōdestīs*, *prōsunt*, &c.

313. The compounds of *essě* (*except possě*) are followed by the dative, as they take *only* an indirect object (82 and 643, 2); e. g.,

Mihī prōfuīt.

It profited me (*did good to me*).

REM.—Here it is plain that *mihī* (to me) is not a *direct*, but only an *indirect* object.

314. Most adverbs are derived from adjectives, and are dependent upon them for their comparison: the comparative of the adverb being the same as the neuter comparative of the adjective, and the superlative being formed from that of the adjective by changing the ending *ūs* into *ē*; as,

Adj. *Altūs*, *altiōr* (*iūs neut.*), *altissīmūs*.

Adv. *Altē*, *altiūs*, *altissīmē*.

NUMERALS.

315. Numerals comprise,

(a) Numeral adjectives, consisting of three distinct classes; viz.,

- 1) *Cardinals*, which denote simply the *number* of objects; as, *ūnūs*, one; *duō*, two, &c.
- 2) *Ordinals*, which denote the *position* of any object in a *series*; as, *prīmūs*, first; *secundūs*, second.
- 3) *Distributives*, which denote the *number* of objects which are taken *at a time*; as, *singulī*, one by one; *binī*, two by two.

(b) Numeral adverbs; as, *sēmēl*, once; *bīs*, twice. (See Numerals, 583.)

316. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs; e. g., *Milēs fortitēr pūgnāt*, *the soldier fights bravely*. *Haud diffīcīlīs*, *not difficult*.

317. (a) The first three cardinals, *ūnūs*, *duō*, and *trēs*, are declined as follows:

1. Paradigm of *ūnūs*, *one*.

| | | | | | |
|-----------|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|
| N. Unūs, | ūnā, | ūnūm. | Unī, | ūnae, | ūnā. |
| G. Unīūs, | ūnīūs, | ūnīūs. | Unōrūm, | ūnārūm, | ūnōrūm. |
| D. Unī, | ūnī, | ūnī. | Unīs, | ūnīs, | ūnīs. |
| A. Unūm, | unām, | ūnūm. | Unōs, | unās, | ūnā. |
| V. Unē, | ūnā, | ūnūm. | | | |
| A. Unō, | ūnā, | ūnō. | Unīs, | ūnīs, | ūnīs. |

REM.—The plural of *ūnūs*, as a numeral, is used only with nouns which have no singular.

2. Paradigms of *duō*, *two*, and *trēs*, *three*.

| | | | | |
|-----------------------|---------|---------|-----------------|---------|
| N. Duō, | duae, | duō. | Trēs (m. & f.), | triā. |
| G. Duōrūm, | duārūm, | duōrūm. | Triūm, | triūm. |
| D. Duōbūs, | duābūs, | duōbūs. | Tribūs, | tribūs. |
| A. Duōs and } duō, | duās, | duō. | Trēs, | triā. |
| V. Duō, | duae, | duō. | Trēs, | triā. |
| A. Duōbūs, | duābūs, | duōbūs. | Tribūs, | tribūs. |

REM.—*Trēs* is declined like the plural of *tristis* (153).

(b) Cardinal numbers, from four to one hundred, are indeclinable; those denoting hundreds are declined like the plural of *bōnūs* (112); e. g., *dūcentī*, ae, ā, *two hundred*.

318. Ordinals are declined like *bōnūs*. Distributives are declined like the plural of *bōnūs*.

319. Whenever the same noun belongs to both members of a comparison in Latin, it is generally expressed in the first and omitted in the second; in English, however, it is expressed in the first, and represented in the second by the pronoun *that* or *those*; e. g.,

Māris sūpĕrfīciēs majōr est quā́m terrae.

The sea's surface is greater than (*that**) of the land.

REM.—Hence, in translating English into Latin, *that*, *those*, after *than*, should be omitted.

320. VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--|---|
| Concertāre, āv, <i>to contend, quarrel.</i> | Omnīnō, <i>altogether, in all.</i> |
| Continuūs, ā, ūm, <i>successive.</i> | Prōdessē, prōfu, <i>to do good, to profit.</i> |
| Dēcēm, <i>ten.</i> | Prōducērē, prōdux, <i>to lead forward or out.</i> |
| Dēcīmūs, ā, ūm, <i>tenth.</i> | Quartūs, ā, ūm, <i>fourth.</i> |
| Duō, duae, duō, <i>two.</i> | Quinquē, <i>five.</i> |
| Intēressē, interfū, <i>to be engaged in.</i> | Sūpĕrfīciēs, ēī, <i>surface.</i> |
| Māre, īs, <i>sea.</i> | Terrā, ae, <i>earth.</i> |
| Obessē, obfu, <i>to be prejudicial to.</i> | |

321. Exercises.

(a) 1. Milītes fortīter pugnant. 2. Romāni fortius quam hostes pugnavērunt. 3. Ex eo die dies continuos quinque Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit. 4. Erant omnīno itinēra duo. 5. Caesar *quam max.*

* Here *that* stands for *the surface*.

īmas copias comparavērat. 6. Caius, vir summo ingenio praeditus, Romae habitat. 7. Servus meus proelio interfuit. 8. Fides plurimis profuit. 9. Christianorum est⁷ avaritiam damnare. 10. Caius multis proeliis interfuerat. 11. Terrae superficies minor est quam maris. 12. Caesar decimam legiōnem misit.

(b) 1. They will fight bravely. 2. You fought more bravely than the Romans. 3. The king himself was engaged in the battle. 4. He fought very bravely. 5. Ten legions were engaged in the first battle. 6. The soldiers of the tenth legion fought more bravely than those^b of the fourth. 7. Anger has often *been prejudicial* to states. 8. It is the part of a Christian to do good to as many as possible. 9. Caesar raised the greatest forces possible. 10. Many states relying on their strength will raise forces.

LESSON LVI.

Passive Voice.—Third Persons of Tenses for continued Action.

322. A TRANSITIVE verb (72) may represent its subject,

- 1) As acting upon some object; as, Pāter filiū docēt, *the father teaches his son*; it is then said to be in the *Active Voice*.
- 2) As acted upon by some other person or thing; as, Filiū ā patrē docētūr, *the son is taught by his father*; it is then said to be in the *Passive Voice*.

REM.—The forms which have been used in the previous exercises all belong to the active voice : we shall now consider the formation and use of the passive.

323. The third persons (singular and plural) of the tenses for continued action (190), both in the indicative and subjunctive moods, are formed in the passive voice, by adding the ending *ūr* to the corresponding forms of the active.

a) But observe that the vowel before the *t* in the singular is long, except from *ū* in the third conjugation, and from *ābū* and *ēbū*.

324. The following table presents the formation of the third persons of the passive in the moods and tenses just mentioned.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (1st root), *is, are loved, &c.*

| Conj. I. | Conj. II. | Conj. III. | Conj. IV. |
|-----------|------------|------------|-------------|
| Am-āt, | Mōn-ēt, | Rēg-īt, | Aud-īt, |
| Am-ātūr. | Mōn-ētūr. | Rēg-ītūr. | Aud-ītūr. |
| Am-ant, | Mōn-ent, | Rēg-unt, | Aud-iunt, |
| Am-antūr. | Mōn-entūr. | Rēg-untūr. | Aud-iuntūr. |

IMPERFECT (1st root), *was, were loved, &c.*

| | | | |
|-------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|
| Am-ābāt, | Mōn-ēbāt, | Rēg-ēbāt, | Aud-iēbāt, |
| Am-ābātūr. | Mōn-ēbatūr. | Rēg-ēbatūr. | Aud-iēbatūr. |
| Am-ābant, | Mōn-ēbant, | Rēg-ēbant, | Aud-iēbant, |
| Am-ābantūr. | Mōn-ēbantūr. | Rēg-ēbantūr. | Aud-iēbantūr. |

FUTURE (1st root), *shall or will be loved.*

| | | | |
|-------------|--------------|------------|-------------|
| Am-ābīt, | Mōn-ēbīt, | Rēg-ēt, | Aud-iēt, |
| Am-ābītūr. | Mōn-ēbītūr. | Rēg-ētūr. | Aud-iētūr. |
| Am-ābunt, | Mōn-ēbunt, | Rēg-ent, | Aud-ient, |
| Am-ābuntūr. | Mōn-ēbuntūr. | Rēg-entūr. | Aud-ientūr. |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (1st root), *may or can be loved.*

| | | | |
|-----------|-------------|------------|-------------|
| Am-ēt, | Mōn-eāt, | Rēg-āt, | Aud-iāt, |
| Am-ētūr. | Mōn-eātūr. | Rēg-ātūr. | Aud-iātūr. |
| Am-ent, | Mōn-eant, | Rēg-ant, | Aud-iant, |
| Am-entūr. | Mōn-eantūr. | Rēg-antūr. | Aud-iantūr. |

PARADIGM—*continued.*

| IMPERFECT (1st root), <i>might, could, &c., be loved.</i> | | | |
|---|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| Am-ārēt, | Mōn-ērēt, | Rēg-ērēt, | Aud-irēt, |
| Am-ārētūr. | Mōn-ērētūr. | Rēg-ērētūr. | Aud-irētūr. |
| Am-arent, | Mōn-arent, | Rēg-arent, | Aud-irent, |
| Am-arentūr. | Mōn-arentūr. | Rēg-arentūr. | Aud-irentūr. |

325. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Passive verbs are followed by the same cases as the active, except the direct object, which becomes the subject of the passive (322);
e. g.,

Act. Illī Balbūm furtī accūsant.

They accuse Balbus of theft.

Pass. Balbūs āb illīs furtī accūsātūr.

Balbus is accused of theft by them.

REM.—Observe that the agent is put in the ablative with *āb* (ab illis)
a, however, is often used before a consonant.

326. VOCABULARY.

| | |
|---|--|
| Cōlērē, ū, <i>to cultivate, to practise.</i> | Rhēnūs, ī, <i>Rhine, a river.</i> |
| Dēmōstrārē, āv, <i>to show.</i> | Rēliquūs, ā, ūm, <i>the rest, the other</i> |
| Interficērē (iō), interfēc, <i>to kill, to</i> | Sex, <i>six.</i> |
| <i>slay.</i> | Sūprā, <i>above.</i> |
| Mittērē, mīs, <i>to send.</i> | Tangērē, tētīg, <i>to touch, reach.</i> |
| Prō (<i>prep. with abl.</i>), <i>for, before.</i> | Unūs, ā, ūm, <i>one, single, single one.</i> |

327. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caius filios docet. 2. Filii a Caio docentur.
3. Legātos ad Caesārem mittent. 4. Legāti ad Caesārem mittentur. 5. Mittantur legāti. 6. Relīquas sex legiōnes pro castris in acie constituet. 7. Caium capītis damnābunt. 8. Caius capītis damnabitur. 9. Haec civitas Rhenum tangit. 10. Haec civitas Rhenum, ut supra demonstravimus, tangit. 11. Virtus ab omnibus colātur.

(b) 1. Balbus will kill Caius. 2. He will be killed by Balbus. 3. Caius accuses me of theft. 4. He is accused of theft by Caius. 5. Let him be accused of bribery. 6. Let them be condemned to death. 7. They are killed in the first battle. 8. Let not the king be condemned to death. 9. The law will be broken. 10. Will not the laws be broken by wicked (men)? 11. Let not the laws of the city be broken by us.

LESSON LVII.

Passive Voice.—Third Persons of Tenses for Completed Action.

328. THE tenses for completed action in the passive voice are called *Compound Forms*, and consist of the perfect participle with certain parts of the verb *essē* (299). We must accordingly notice here the formation of this participle.

329. The perfect participle is formed from what is called the *third root*, by the addition of the ending *ūs* (ă, ūm), and is declined like *bōnūs*.

330. The third root is formed from the first,

- 1) In the first, second, and fourth conjugations by the addition of the respective endings, *āt*, *īt*, and *ūt*; e. g.,

| | | |
|---------|------|--------|
| Amārē, | ăm, | ămāt. |
| Mōnērē, | mōn, | mōnīt. |
| Audīrē, | aud, | audīt. |

- 2) In the third conjugation, by the addition of *t*, or sometimes *s* (especially to the *t*-sounds).

- a) Any *p*-sound before *t* is *p* (i. e., *pt* or *bt* becomes *pt*).
 b) Any *k*-sound before *t* is *c* (i. e., *ct*, *gt*, or *qt* becomes *ct*).
 c) *D*, and sometimes *g*, is dropped before *s* (see 208, c, and 211).

Scribĕrĕ, scrib, script (*b* changed to *p*).

Rĕgĕrĕ, rĕg, rect (*g* changed to *c*).

Claudĕrĕ, claud, claus (*d* dropped).

331. The third persons singular of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect of the passive indicative are formed respectively from the third singular of the present, imperfect, and future* of the indicative of the verb *essĕ* and the perfect participle; and the plural is formed in the same way, by using the plural of the participle and verb.

332. The third persons of the perfect and pluperfect passive subjunctive, are formed by a similar combination of the perfect passive participle with the third persons of the present and imperfect† subjunctive of *essĕ*.

PARADIGM.

| Conj. I. | Conj. II. | Conj. III. | Conj. IV. |
|--|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| Amāre. | Mōnĕre. | Rĕgĕre. | Audire. |
| 1st root, <i>ām</i> , | 1st root, <i>mōn</i> , | 1st root, <i>rĕg</i> , | 1st root, <i>aud</i> , |
| 3d " <i>āmāl</i> . | 3d " <i>mōnīt</i> . | 3d " <i>rect</i> . | 3d " <i>audīt</i> . |
| INDICATIVE MOOD. | | | |
| PERFECT (<i>has been or was loved, &c.</i>). | | | |
| S. Amātus† est, | Mōnītus est, | Rectus est, | Auditus est, |
| P. Amātī† sunt. | Mōnītī sunt. | Rectī sunt. | Auditī sunt. |

* Instead of the present, imperfect, and future, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect are sometimes used.

† Instead of the present and imperfect, the perfect and pluperfect are sometimes used.

‡ These participles, which, it must be remembered, are declined like *bōnūs* (302), are always of the same gender and number as the subject of the verb, thus:

PARADIGM—*continued.*PLUPERFECT (*had been loved, &c.*).

| |
|--|
| S. Amātūs ērāt, Mōnītūs ērāt, Rectūs ērāt, Auditūs ērāt, |
| P. Amāti ērant. Mōnīti ērant. Recti ērant. Auditī ērant. |

FUTURE PERFECT (*shall or will have been loved, &c.*).

| |
|--|
| S. Amātūs ērit, Mōnītūs ērit, Rectūs ērit, Auditūs ērit, |
| P. Amāti ērunt. Mōnīti ērunt. Recti ērunt. Auditī ērunt. |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PERFECT (*may have been loved, &c.*).

| |
|--|
| S. Amātūs sīt, Mōnītūs sīt, Rectūs sīt, Auditūs sīt, |
| P. Amāti sint. Mōnīti sint. Recti sint. Auditī sint. |

PLUPERFECT (*might have been loved, &c.*).

| |
|--|
| S. Amātūs essēt, Mōnītūs essēt, Rectūs essēt, Auditūs essēt, |
| P. Amāti essent. Mōnīti essent. Recti essent. Auditī essent. |

333. VOCABULARY.

| | |
|---|---|
| Acstīmārē, av, at, <i>to value, to prize.</i> | Interficērē (iō), fēc, fect, <i>to kill.</i> |
| Collōquiūm, i, <i>conference, meeting.</i> | Intērīm, <i>in the mean time, mean-while.</i> |
| Conspicērē (iō), conspex, con- spect, <i>to see, discover.</i> | Lenīs, ē, <i>mild, merciful.</i> |
| Dēcernērē, dēcrēv, dēcrēt, <i>to de- cree.</i> | Litērae, arūm (pl.), <i>letter, epistle.</i> |
| Dicērē, dix, dict, <i>to say, speak, name.</i> | Mittērē, mīs, miss, <i>to send.</i> |
| Fācērē (iō), fēc, fact, <i>to do, make, perform.</i> | Pārārē, av, at, <i>to prepare.</i> |
| Frangērē, frēg, fract, <i>to break, to violate.</i> | Quintūs, ā, ūm, <i>fifth.</i> |
| | Sēcundūs, ā, ūm, <i>second.</i> |
| | Sententiā, ae, <i>sentiment.</i> |
| | Supplicātiō, ōnīs, <i>thanksgiving.</i> |
| | Vīginti, <i>twenty.</i> |

Amātūs est, *he has been loved.*Amātā est, *she has been loved.*Amātūm est, *it has been loved.*Amāti sunt, *they (men) have been loved.*Amātae sunt, *they (women) have been loved.*Amātā sunt, *they (things) have been loved.*

334. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Supplicatio decreta est. 2. Mors omnibus parata est. 3. Dies colloquio dictus erat ex eo die quintus. 4. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt. 5. Faciam id quod est lenius et utilius. 6. Mittuntur ad Caesarem a Balbo litterae. 7. Interim milites legionum duarum ab hostibus conspiciebantur. 8. Milites legionum duarum conspecti sunt.

(b) 1. A thanksgiving had been decreed to Caesar. 2. Twenty soldiers of the tenth legion had been killed in the second battle. 3. Money has ever been valued very highly. 4. Has not money always been valued very highly? 5. Were not the laws broken at Athens? 6. The laws had been broken at Rome. 7. We will appoint the tenth day for a conference. 8. Messengers had been sent to the king. 9. A soldier was sent to the king.

LESSON LVIII.

Indicative Mood of the Passive Voice.

335. THE persons of the tenses for continued action in the indicative and subjunctive moods may be formed from the corresponding parts of the active, as follows:

- a) The first persons, by dropping the final consonant (when there is one), and adding *r*; e. g.,

Amō (*act.*), *āmōr* (*pass.* *r* added).

Amābām (*act.*), *āmābār* (*pass.* *m* dropped, *r* added).

- b) The second persons, by changing *s* (*sing.*) into *rīs* (or *rē*), and *tīs* (*plur.*) into *mīnī*; e. g.,

Amās (act.), *ămārīs (or rē) (pass. s changed to rīs or rē).*

Amātīs (act.), *ămāmīnī (pass. tīs “ “ mīnī).*

c) The third persons, by adding *ūr* (323); e. g.,

Amăt (act.), *ămătūr (pass. ūr added).*

Amant (act.), *ămantūr (pass. ūr added).*

336. The personal endings of the tenses for continued action, in the indicative and subjunctive moods, active and passive, are as follows:

| <i>Singular.</i> | | | | <i>Plural.</i> | | | |
|------------------|-------|----------|------|----------------|-------|-------|--|
| | 1. | 2. | 3. | 1. | 2. | 3. | |
| Act. | ō, m, | s, | t, | mūs, | tīs, | nt, | |
| Pass. | r. | rīs, rē. | tūr. | mūr. | mīnī. | ntūr. | |

337. The first and second persons of the passive may accordingly be formed directly from the third (as already obtained), by changing its ending into those of the first and second, and observing the same principles for vowel changes as apply to the active (248); e. g.,

| | <i>3d Pers.</i> | <i>1st Pers.</i> | <i>2d Pers</i> |
|--------------|-----------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Amătūr,</i> | <i>ămōr (vowel changed)</i> | <i>ămārīs (rē).</i> |
| <i>Plur.</i> | <i>Amantūr,</i> | <i>ămāmūr,</i> | <i>ămāmīnī.</i> |

338. The first and second persons of the tenses for completed action may be obtained directly from the third person, by simply changing the third person of the proper tense of *esse* into the first and second; e. g.,

| | | | |
|--------------|--------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Amătūs est,</i> | <i>ămătūs sūm,</i> | <i>ămătūs ēs.</i> |
| <i>Plur.</i> | <i>Amătī sunt,</i> | <i>amătī sūmūs,</i> | <i>ămătī estīs.</i> |

339. Paradigm of the Indicative Passive.

| PRESENT (1st root), <i>am loved, &c.</i> | | | |
|---|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| Conj. I. | Conj. II. | Conj. III. | Conj. IV. |
| Am-ör, | Mön-eör, | Rëg-ör, | Aud-iör, |
| Am-är̄is (rë), | Mön-ēr̄is (rë), | Rëg-ēr̄is (rë), | Aud-ir̄is (rë), |
| Am-ätür ; | Mön-etür ; | Rëg-itür ; | Aud-itür ; |
| Am-amür, | Mön-emür, | Rëg-imür, | Aud-imür, |
| Am-am̄inī, | Mön-eminī, | Rëg-iminī, | Aud-iminī, |
| Am-antür. | Mön-entür. | Rëg-untür. | Aud-iuntür. |
| IMPERFECT (1st root), <i>was loved, &c.</i> | | | |
| All-äbär, | Mön-ebär, | Rëg-ebär, | Aud-iēbär, |
| Am-äbar̄is (rë), | Mön-ebār̄is (rë), | Rëg-ebār̄is (rë), | Aud-iēbar̄is (rë), |
| Am-äbatür ; | Mön-ebätür ; | Rëg-ebaür ; | Aud-iēbatür ; |
| Am-äbamür, | Mön-ebāmür, | Rëg-ebāmür, | Aud-iēbāmür, |
| Am-äbam̄inī, | Mön-ebāminī, | Rëg-ebāminī, | Aud-iēbāminī, |
| Am-äbantür. | Mön-ebantür. | Rëg-ebantür. | Aud-iēbantür. |
| FUTURE (1st root), <i>shall or will be loved.</i> | | | |
| Am-äbör, | Mön-ebör, | Rëg-är, | Aud-iär, |
| Am-äber̄is (rë), | Mön-ebēr̄is (rë), | Rëg-ēr̄is (rë), | Aud-iēr̄is (rë), |
| Am-äbitür ; | Mön-ebitür ; | Rëg-etür ; | Aud-iētür ; |
| Am-äbimür, | Mön-ebimür, | Rëg-emür, | Aud-iēmür, |
| Am-äbim̄inī, | Mön-ebiminī, | Rëg-eminī, | Aud-iēminī, |
| Am-äbuntür. | Mön-ebuntür. | Rëg-entür. | Aud-iēntür. |
| PERFECT (3d root, <i>perf. part. and sūm*</i>), <i>was or have been loved.</i> | | | |
| Amāt-ūs sūm,* | Mönit-ūs sūm, | Rect-ūs sūm, | Audit-ūs sūm, |
| Amāt-ūs ës, | Mönit-ūs ës, | Rect-ūs ës, | Audit-ūs ës, |
| Amāt-ūs est ; | Mönit-ūs est ; | Rect-ūs est ; | Audit-ūs est ; |
| Amāt-i sūmūs, | Mönit-i sūmūs, | Rect-i sūmūs, | Audit-i sūmūs, |
| Amāt-i estis, | Mönit-i estis, | Rect-i estis, | Audit-i estis, |
| Amāt-i sunt. | Mönit-i sunt. | Rect-i sunt. | Audit-i sunt. |
| PLUPERFECT (3d root, <i>perf. part. and ěrām†</i>), <i>had been loved.</i> | | | |
| Amāt-ūs ěrām,† | Mönit-ūs ěrām, | Rect-ūs ěrām, | Audit-ūs ěrām, |
| Amāt-ūs ěrās, | Mönit-ūs ěrās, | Rect-ūs ěrās, | Audit-ūs ěrās, |
| Amāt-ūs ěrāt ; | Mönit-ūs ěrāt ; | Rect-ūs ěrāt ; | Audit-ūs ěrāt ; |
| Amāt-i ěrāmūs, | Mönit-i ěrāmūs, | Rect-i ěrāmūs, | Audit-i ěrāmūs, |
| Amāt-i ěrātis, | Mönit-i ěrātis, | Rect-i ěrātis, | Audit-i ěrātis, |
| Amāt-i ěrant. | Mönit-i ěrant. | Rect-i ěrant. | Audit-i ěrant. |

* Fuī is sometimes used instead of sūm (331, N.).

† Fuěrām is sometimes used instead of ěrām (331, N.).

PARADIGM—continued.

FUTURE PERFECT (3d root, perf. part. and *ērō**), shall or will have been loved, &c.

| | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| Amat-ūs ērō,* | Mōnīt-ūs ērō, | Rect-ūs ērō, | Audit-ūs ērō, |
| Amat-ūs ēris, | Mōnīt-ūs ēris, | Rect-ūs ēris, | Audit-ūs ēris, |
| Amat-ūs ērit; | Mōnīt-ūs ērit; | Rect-ūs ērit; | Audit-ūs ērit; |
| Amāt-ī ērimūs, | Mōnīt-ī ērimūs, | Rect-ī ērimūs, | Audit-ī ērimūs, |
| Amāt-ī ēritis, | Mōnīt-ī ēritis, | Rect-ī ēritis, | Audit-ī ēritis, |
| Amāt-ī ērunt. | Mōnīt-ī ērunt. | Rect-ī ērunt. | Audit-ī ērunt. |

340. VOCABULARY.

Accūsārē, av, at, to accuse.

Admōnērē, u, it, to admonish,
warn.

Bēnē, well.

Carthāgīniēnsīs, is, a Carthagi-
nian.

Clipeūs, ī, shield.

Damnārē, av, at, to condemn.

Discērē, didīcē, to learn.

Dōnārē, av, at, to give, present.

Excītārē, av, at, to excite, arouse.

Finīrē, iv, it, to finish.

Graeci, ōrūm, the Greeks.

Hastā, ae, spear.

Laudārē, av, at, to praise.

Mēnsīs, is, m., month.

Mūtārē, av, at, to change.

Nōvembēr, brīs (abl. ī), November.

Pūgnārē, av, at, to fight.

Pūnīrē, iv, it, to punish.

Sūpērārē, av, at, to surpass, con-
quer, to go over.

341. Exercises.

(a) 1. Tempōra mutantur et nos mutāmur in illis.
2. Finītur labor agricōlae mense Novembri. 3. Vos
laudamīni, puēri qui bene didicistis. 4. Donābor clipeo
et hasta, si bene pro patria pugnāvērō. 5. Admonebē-
ris, ne iram excītes.¹ 6. Graeci a Romānis superāti
sunt. 7. Eōdem anno Carthaginienses et Graeci a Ro-
mānis superāti sunt. 8. Prodiōnis accusāti estis. 9.
Ambītus accusāti sumus.

(b) 1. You will be punished. 2. Has he not been
punished? 3. We have been admonished not to ac-

* Fuērō is sometimes used instead of ērō (331, N.).

cuse the king. 4. Has the queen been condemned to death? (No.) 5. Who will be condemned to death? 6. Who have been accused of treason? 7. We shall be presented with two beautiful books. 8. Have you not been presented with a very fine dog? 9. Had not the Greeks been conquered by the Romans? 10. By whom were the Romans conquered? 11. We shall be conquered by the enemy.

LESSON LIX.

Subjunctive Mood of the Passive Voice.

342. PARADIGM of the Subjunctive Passive.

| PRESENT (1st root), <i>may or can be loved, &c.</i> | | | |
|---|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| Conj. I. | Conj. II. | Conj. III. | Conj. IV. |
| Am-ēr, | Mōn-eār, | Rēg-ār, | Aud-iār, |
| Am-ērīs (rē), | Mōn-eārīs (rē), | Rēg-ārīs (rē), | Aud-iārīs (rē), |
| Am-ētūr ; | Mōn-eātūr ; | Rēg-ātūr ; | Aud-iatūr ; |
| Am-ēmūr, | Mōn-eāmūr, | Rēg-amūr, | Aud-iamūr, |
| Am-ēmīnī, | Mōn-eāmīnī, | Rēg-amīnī, | Aud-iamīnī, |
| Am-entūr. | Mōn-eantūr. | Rēg-antūr. | Aud-iantūr. |
| IMPERFECT (1st root), <i>might, could, &c., be loved, &c.</i> | | | |
| Am-arēr, | Mōn-ērēr, | Rēg-ērēr, | Aud-irēr, |
| Am-arērīs (rē), | Mōn-ērērīs (rē), | Rēg-ērērīs (rē), | Aud-irērīs (rē), |
| Am-arētūr ; | Mōn-ērētūr ; | Rēg-ērētūr ; | Aud-irētūr ; |
| Am-arēmūr, | Mōn-ērēmūr, | Rēg-ērēmūr, | Aud-irēmūr, |
| Am-arēmīnī, | Mōn-ērēmīnī, | Rēg-ērēmīnī, | Aud-irēmīnī, |
| Am-arentūr. | Mōn-ērentūr. | Rēg-ērentūr. | Aud-irentūr. |
| PERFECT (3d root— <i>perf. part. and sim or fuērīm</i>), <i>may have been loved, &c.</i> | | | |
| Amāt-ūs sim, | Mōnīt-ūs sim, | Rect-ūs sim, | Audīt-ūs sim, |
| Amāt-ūs sīs, | Mōnīt-ūs sīs, | Rect-ūs sīs, | Audīt-ūs sīs, |
| Amāt-ūs sīt, | Mōnīt-ūs sīt, | Rect-ūs sīt, | Audīt-ūs sīt, |
| Amāt-ī simūs, | Mōnīt-ī simūs, | Rect-ī simūs, | Audīt-ī simūs, |
| Amāt-ī sītīs, | Mōnīt-ī sītīs, | Rect-ī sītīs, | Audīt-ī sītīs, |
| Amāt-ī sint. | Mōnīt-ī sint. | Rect-ī sint. | Audīt-ī sint. |

PARADIGM—continued.

PLUPERFECT (3d root—*perf. part. and* *essēm or fuissēm*), *might have been loved, &c.*

| | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| Amāt-ūs essēm, | Mōnīt-ūs essēm, | Rect-ūs essēm, | Audit-ūs essēm, |
| Amāt-ūs essēs, | Mōnīt-ūs essēs, | Rect-ūs essēs, | Audit-ūs essēs, |
| Amāt-ūs essēt; | Mōnīt-ūs essēt; | Rect-ūs essēt; | Audit-ūs essēt; |
| Amāt-ī essēmūs | Mōnīt-ī essēmūs | Rect-ī essēmūs | Audit-ī essēmūs |
| Amāt-ī essētis, | Mōnīt-ī essētis, | Rect-ī essētis, | Audit-ī essētis, |
| Amāt-ī essent. | Mōnīt-ī essent. | Rect-ī essent. | Audit-ī essent. |

343. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Verbs signifying *to separate from*, or *deprive of*, are followed by the *ablative* in addition to the *accusative* of the direct object; e. g.:

Mē lūcē prīvant.

They deprive me of light.

344. VOCABULARY.

Adulatiō, ōnis, *flattery.*

Contra (*prep. with acc.*), *against.*

Dēcīpērē (iō), dēcēp, dēcēpt, *to deceive.*

Fraudārē, āv, āt, *to defraud.*

Fūgērē (iō), fūg, fūgīt, *to flee.*

Grānūm, ī, *grain, grain of corn.*

Imprūdēns, tīs, *inconsiderate, imprudent.*

Nēquidēm,* *not even.*

Paupēr, ěris, *a poor man.*

Perfūgiūm, ī, *refuge.*

Præbērē, ū, īt, *to furnish, offer.*

Praepārārē, āv, āt, *to prepare.*

Princeps, principīs, *chief, leader.*

Prīvarē, āv, āt, *to deprive.*

Sancīrē, sanx, sanct, *to enact, confirm.*

Sēnectūs, ūtīs, *f. old age.*

Servārē, āv, āt, *to observe, keep.*

Spēcīōsūs, ā, ūm, *plausible, specious.*

Tām, *so.*

Verbūm, ī, *word.*

Vivērē, vix, vict, *to live.*

345. Exercises.

(a) 1. Non sum tam imprūdēns ut verbis speciōsis decipiar.ⁱ 2. Bonae leges a principībus sanciantur. 3.

* The emphatic word is generally written between the two parts of this word; thus, *nē grānō quidēm*, not even a grain.

Praeparētur anīmus contra omnia. 4. Praebeātur senectūti perfugium. 5. Ne me luce privētis. 6. Ne grano quidem uno paupĕres fraudētis. 7. Paupĕres ne grano quidem uno fraudentur. 8. Invitus^s te furti accusaverat. 9. Caius, vir summo ingenio, Romāe vivit.

(b) 1. Be not deceived. 2. Let him not be deceived. 3. I was so imprudent as to be deceived (that I was deceived) by specious words. 4. You will not be so imprudent as to be deceived by flattery. 5. Let all good laws be observed by the citizens. 6. The boys fled that they might not be punished. 7. Do not defraud the poor. 8. Let not the poor be defrauded. 9. May they never be defrauded by you. 10. You shall never be defrauded of even a single grain by us.

LESSON LX.

Imperative Mood — Active and Passive.

346. THE *Imperative* mood expresses a *command*, an *exhortation*, or *entreaty*. It is used only in the present tense, and in the second and third persons.

347. If a negative accompanies the imperative, it must be expressed in Latin by *nē* (instead of *nōn*); e. g.,

Nē peccātē, do not sin.

REM.—It will be remembered that a command or exhortation may also be expressed by the present subjunctive (231).

348. The imperative is formed from the first root by the addition of the following endings:

| ACTIVE. | | | | |
|----------|-----------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| | <i>Conj. I.</i> | <i>Conj. II.</i> | <i>Conj. III.</i> | <i>Conj. IV.</i> |
| S. 2. | a or atō, | ē or ētō, | ě or itō, | i or itō. |
| 3. | atō, | ētō, | itō, | itō. |
| P. 2. | atē, atōtē, | ētē, ētōtē, | itē. itōtē, | itē, itōtē. |
| 3. | antō, | entō, | untō, | iuntō. |
| PASSIVE. | | | | |
| S. 2. | ārē or atōr, | ērē or ētōr, | ěre or itōr, | irē or itōr. |
| 3. | atōr, | ētōr, | itōr, | itōr. |
| P. 2. | amini, | ēmini, | imini, | imini. |
| 3. | antōr, | entōr, | untōr, | iuntōr. |

349. Paradigm of the Imperative Mood.

| CONJUGATION I. | |
|--|---|
| <i>Active.</i> | <i>Passive.</i> |
| S. 2. Am-ā or ām-atō, <i>love thou, do thou love.</i> | Am-ārē or ām-atōr, <i>be thou loved.</i> |
| 3. Am-atō, <i>let him love.</i> | Am-ātor, <i>let him be loved.</i> |
| P. 2. Am-ātē or ām-atōtē, <i>love ye, do ye love.</i> | Am-amini, <i>be ye loved.</i> |
| 3. Am-antō, <i>let them love.</i> | Am-antōr, <i>let them be loved.</i> |
| CONJUGATION II. | |
| S. 2. Mōn-ē or mōn-ētō, <i>advise thou.</i> | Mōn-ērē or mōn-ētōr, <i>be thou advised.</i> |
| 3. Mōn-ētō, <i>let him advise.</i> | Mōn-ētōr, <i>let him be advised.</i> |
| P. 2. Mōn-ētē or mōn-ētōtē, <i>advise ye</i> | Mōn-ēmini, <i>be ye advised.</i> |
| 3. Mōn-entō, <i>let them advise.</i> | Mōn-entōr, <i>let them be advised.</i> |
| CONJUGATION III. | |
| S. 2. Rēg-ě or rēg-itō, <i>rule thou.</i> | Rēg-ērē or rēg-itōr, <i>be thou ruled.</i> |
| 3. Rēg-itō, <i>let him rule.</i> | Rēg-itōr, <i>let him be ruled.</i> |
| P. 2. Rēg-itē or rēg-itōtē, <i>rule ye.</i> | Rēg-imini, <i>be ye ruled.</i> |
| 3. Rēg-untō, <i>let them rule.</i> | Rēg-untōr, <i>let them be ruled.</i> |
| CONJUGATION IV. | |
| S. 2. Aud-ī or aud-itō, <i>hear thou.</i> | Aud-irē or aud-itōr, <i>be thou heard.</i> |
| 3. Aud-itō, <i>let him hear.</i> | Aud-itōr, <i>let him be heard.</i> |
| P. 2. Aud-itē or aud-itōtē, <i>hear ye.</i> | Aud-imini, <i>be ye heard.</i> |
| 3. Aud-iuntō, <i>let them hear.</i> | Aud-iuntōr, <i>let them be heard.</i> |

REM.—The second forms of the imperative (*to, tote, nto, &c.*) are used in laws, rules, and other formal expressions of duty or permission.

350. VOCABULARY.

Ac, and.
 Amēricānūs, ā, ūm, *American*.
 Audirē. iv, it, *to hear, listen to*.
 Castigārē, av, at, *to chastise*.
 Cōgitārē, av, at, *to think about*.
 Compescērē, compescu, *to restrain, repress*.
 Conjux, ūgīs, m. or f., *husband, wife, spouse*.
 Conservārē, av, at, *to preserve*.
 Consiliūm, ī, *advice, instruction*.
 Corrupērē, corrup, corrupt, *to mislead, corrupt*.
 Dēfendērē, dēfend, dēfens, *to defend*.
 Dēglūbērē, dēglups, dēglupt, *to flay, to skin*.

Exōrārē, av, at, *to supplicate*.
 Libērī, ōrūm (pl.), *children*.
 Nōmēn, īnīs, *name*.
 Pernīciēs, ēī, *destruction*.
 Pōpūlūs, ī, *people*.
 Quē (joined to the word it connects), and.
 Ruērē, ru, ruīt (or rūt), *to rush*.
 Sālūs, ūtīs, f., *safety*.
 Scribērē, scrips, script, *to write*.
 Sēpēlirē, iv, sēpult, *to bury, inter*.
 Tondērē, tōtōnd, tons, *to shear, shave*.
 Vestēr, trā, trūm, *your*.
 Vidērē, vid, vis, *to see*.

351. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caium ne accūsa. 2. Balbum ne accusāte. 3. Tonde oves: ne deglūbe. 4. Tondēte oves: ne deglubīte. 5. Audi, puer, consilia sapientium. 6. Audīte, pueri, consilia sapientium, et vidēte, ne in perniciem ruātis. 7. Exorāre, mi (115) pater, compesce iram. 8. Nemo in urbe sepelītor. 9. Lex erat his verbis scripta: "Nemo in urbe sepelītor." 10. Audi, mi fili (103, N.), ab imprōbis ne corrumpītor. 11. De vobis ac de libēris vestris cogitāte. 12. Conservāte vos, conjūges, libēros, fortunasque vestras. 13. Populi Romani nomen salutemque defendite.

(b) 1. Do not accuse me of theft. 2. Let him shear the sheep. 3. Let no one break the laws. 4. Let the laws be observed. 5. Do not chastise the slave. 6.

Let not the slaves be chastised. 7. Let him be buried in the city. 8. Defend (ye) the name and the safety of the American people. 9. Defend (ye) the American eagle. 10. Let the American eagle be defended by all. 11. Boys, listen to (hear) the instruction of your fathers. 12. Do not break your word.

LESSON LXI.

Infinitive Mood.

352. THE *Infinitive* mood (as already stated, 9) represents the simple meaning of the verb without reference to person or number.

353. The infinitive mood has in each voice three tenses; viz., the *present*, *perfect*, and *future*.

REM.—We must here give the formation of the *supine* and *future act. participle* (both of which we shall soon notice), as they are used in forming the future infinitive.

354. The *future active participle* and the *active supine* are formed from the third root; the former by the addition of *ūrūs* (ă, ūm); as, *ămăt* (3d root), *ămătūrūs* (ă, ūm); and the latter by the addition of *ŭm*; as, *ămăt*, *ămătŭm*.

355. The infinitives are formed as follows:

- 1) The present, from the first root by the addition of the endings:

| | <i>Conj. I.</i> | <i>Conj. II.</i> | <i>Conj. III.</i> | <i>Conj. IV.</i> |
|--------------|-----------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| <i>Act.</i> | ărě, | ērě, | ěrě, | īrě. |
| <i>Pass.</i> | ārī, | ērī, | ī, | īrī. |

- 2) The perfect active, from the second root by

the addition of the ending *issē*; and the *perfect passive* from the perfect participle and *essē*.

- 3) The future active, from the *future active participle* and *essē*; and the *future passive* from the *supine* and *īrī*.

356. Paradigm of the Infinitive Mood.

| CONJ. I. | | |
|------------|---|--|
| | <i>Active.</i> | <i>Passive.</i> |
| Pres. | Am-ārē, <i>to love.</i> | Am-ārī, <i>to be loved.</i> |
| Perf. | Amāv-issē, <i>to have loved.</i> | Amāt-ūs essē, <i>to have been loved.</i> |
| Fut. | Amāt-ūrūs essē, <i>to be about to love.</i> | Amāt-ūm īrī, <i>to be about to be loved.</i> |
| CONJ. II. | | |
| Pres. | Mōn-ērē, <i>to advise.</i> | Mōn-ērī, <i>to be advised.</i> |
| Perf. | Mōnu-issē, <i>to have advised.</i> | Mōnīt-ūs essē, <i>to have been advised.</i> |
| Fut. | Mōnīt-ūrūs essē, <i>to be about to advise.</i> | Mōnīt-ūm īrī, <i>to be about to be advised.</i> |
| CONJ. III. | | |
| Pres. | Rēg-ērē, <i>to rule.</i> | Rēg-ī, <i>to be ruled.</i> |
| Perf. | Rex-issē, <i>to have ruled.</i> | Rect-ūs essē, <i>to have been ruled.</i> |
| Fut. | Rect-ūrūs essē, <i>to be about to rule.</i> | Rect-ūm īrī, <i>to be about to be ruled.</i> |
| CONJ. IV. | | |
| Pres. | Aud-īrē, <i>to hear.</i> | Aud-īrī, <i>to be heard.</i> |
| Perf. | Audiv-issē, <i>to have heard.</i> | Audit-ūs essē, <i>to have been heard.</i> |
| Fut. | Audit-ūrūs essē, <i>to be about to hear.</i> | Audit-ūm īrī, <i>to be about to be heard.</i> |

357. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The subject of an infinitive must be put in the accusative; e. g.,

Vīdēt tē essē beātūm.

He sees that you are happy.

REM. 1.—The accusative *tē* is the subject of *esse*.

REM. 2.—The use of the infinitive, as the subject of a finite verb, has been already considered (184).

358. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The infinitive, either alone or with other words connected with it, may depend upon another verb; e. g.,

1. Cūpīt sǎpěřě.

He desires *to be wise*.

2. Spērāt sē victūrūm essē.

He hopes *that he shall live*.

REM. 1.—In most cases the infinitive is really the direct object of the verb on which it depends; thus *sǎpěřě* (to be wise) is really the object desired. He desires (what?) *to be wise*.

REM. 2.—In the compound infinitives (i. e., those which are made up of two words) the participles must agree in gender, number, and case with the subject of those infinitives; but of course the *supine* remains *unaltered*. Thus, in the second example, *victūrūm* is in the accusative masculine singular, to agree with *sē*, the subject of the infinitive.

359. Two or more English sentences, joined by the conjunction *that*, are often made one Latin sentence, by leaving out the conjunction, and turning the following nominative into the accusative and the verb into the infinitive.

360. VOCABULARY.

Certūs, ū, *certain*.

Clēmēs, tīs, *mild, merciful*.

Convertērē, *convert, convers, to turn, convert*.

Cūpěřē (iō), cūpiv (or i), cūpīt, *to desire*.

Dividěřē, divīs, divīs, *to divide*.

Dōcěřē, u, doct, *to teach*.

Ocūlus, ī, *ye*.

Pars, partīs, *part*.

Peccārē, āv, āt, *to sin*.

Praedā, ae, *booty*.

Sǎpěřē, iv, i, or u, *to be wise*.

Spērārē, āv, āt, *to hope*.

Tīměřē, ū, *to fear*.

Trēs, triā, *three*.

Venděřē, vendid, vendit, *to sell*.

361. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Balbi est omnia in tres partes dividere. 2. Nunquam utile est peccare. 3. Omnes homines beati esse cupiunt. 4. Cupio me esse clementem. 5. Docemus pueros ut sapere discant. 6. Video in me omnium vestrum oculos esse conversos. 7. Sperant se victuros esse. 8. Certum est Balbum patriam auro vendidisse.

(b) 1. He is said to have divided the booty into ten parts. 2. They are said to have lived at Rome five years. 3. We desire to be happy. 4. You all desire to be happy. 5. He is said to have been very happy. 6. He says, that all eyes were turned upon him. 7. He sees that you are happy. 8. It is certain, that a Christian does not fear death. 9. It is certain, that the boy has heard a voice. 10. It is certain, that Balbus will value my labors *very highly*.² 11. It is certain, that the avaricious value money *very highly*. 12. It is certain, that Balbus will be condemned to death.

LESSON LXII.*Participles.—Ablative Absolute.*

362. THE participle is that part of the verb which has the form and inflection of an adjective.

363. A verb may have four participles, viz.: the *present* and *future* in the *active* voice, and the *perfect* and *future* in the *passive*.

364. The participles are formed as follows:

- 1) The present active in the four conjugations, by the addition of the respective endings:

| 1. | 2. | 3. | 4. |
|------|------|------|-------|
| ans, | ens, | ens, | iens, |

to the first root; as,

Amans (loving), *mōnens*, *rēgens*, *audiens*.

- 2) The future active, from the third root, by the addition of the ending *ūrūs* (*ǎ, ũm*) (302); as, *Amātūrūs* (about to love), *mōnītūrūs*, *rectūrūs*, *audītūrūs*.

- 3) The perfect passive, from the third root, by the addition of the ending *ūs* (*ǎ, ũm*) (302); as, *Amātūs* (loved), *mōnītūs*, *rectūs*, *audītūs*.

- 4) The future passive in the four conjugations, by the addition of the respective endings :

| 1. | 2. | 3. | 4. |
|--------|--------|--------|---------|
| andūs, | endūs, | endūs, | iendūs, |

to the first root; as,

Amandūs (deserving to be loved), *mōnendūs*, *rēgendūs*, *audiendūs*.

365. The participle in *ns* answers to the English participle in *ing*. The participle in *us* answers to the English participle in *ed*, *en*, *t*, &c.

The participle in *dus* must be translated by the *present infinitive passive*, as used with a substantive. (A termination *to be desired*; a crime *to be abhorred*.)

The participle in *rus* must be translated by ‘*about to* (write);’ or, ‘*going to* (write).’

366. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun and a participle standing grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence are put in the ablative (called *absolute*); e. g.,

| | | |
|-----------------------------|---|--|
| Caesār, victīs hostībūs, | { | <i>Eng. Id.</i> , Caesar having conquered his enemies. |
| | | <i>Lat. Id.</i> Caesar his enemies being conquered. |

367. The want of a participle for the perfect active is supplied by the *ablative absolute*, or by *quum* (*when*) with the *perfect* or *pluperfect* subjunctive. The *perfect* subjunctive must be used, if the other verb is in the *present* tense; e. g.,

Caesar having conquered his enemies, { Caesār, quūm vīcissēt hostēs.
Caesār, victīs hostībūs.

368. VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--|--|
| Aequitas, atis, <i>equity, justice.</i> | Dēvincērē, devic, devict, <i>to conquer.</i> |
| Angustiae, arūm (pl.), <i>a narrow pass, defile.</i> | Exclamārē, āv, āt, <i>to cry out, exclaim.</i> |
| Cānērē, cēcīn, cant, <i>to sing.</i> | Immergērē, immers, immers, <i>to plunge into, immerse.</i> |
| Compellērē, compul, compuls, <i>to drive, compel.</i> | Lūdērē, lūs, lūs, <i>to play, to sport.</i> |
| Constituērē, constitu, constitūt, <i>to arrange, constitute.</i> | Mānērē, mans, mans, <i>to remain.</i> |
| Deprēhendērē, deprēhend, deprēhens, <i>to seize, catch.</i> | Quūm, <i>when.</i> |
| | Viōlārē, āv, āt, <i>to violate, to break.</i> |

369. Exercises.

(a) 1. In via ludentem puerum vidi. 2. In via ludentes deprehendimus. 3. Caesar fugientes hostes in angustias compulit. 4. Fracto puēri brachio, Romae manēbit. 5. Violātis patriae legībūs, vita indignus est. 6. Puer, quum manus in aquam immersisset, exclamāvit. 7. Caesar, quum devicisset hostes, summa aequitāte res constituit.

(b) 1. Did you hear the nightingales singing in the grove? 2. I saw the fishes swimming on the surface (top) of the water.¹⁰ 3. Did you see the girls playing in the garden? 4. Have you not seen the boys playing in the street? 5. Caius, having broken his arm, remained at Rome. 6. The slave, having killed his

master, was condemned. 7. They say that the slave has been condemned to death. 8. You are said to have been accused of treason. 9. Having violated the laws of the state, we shall all be punished.

LESSON LXIII.

Gerunds and Supines.

370. THE *Gerund* is that part of the verb which corresponds to the participial substantive in *ing* in English.

371. The gerund is really a verbal substantive of the neuter gender, used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular.

REM.—The infinitive supplies the place of the nominative of the gerund, as that is sometimes used as the subject of a verb (184).

372. The genitive of the gerund ends, in the four conjugations, respectively in

| 1. | 2. | 3. | 4. |
|-------|-------|-------|--------|
| andī, | endī, | endī, | iendī. |

Amandī (of loving), *mōnendī*, *rēgendī*, *audiendī*.

373. The gerund is declined in the parts in use precisely like a neuter noun of the second declension; e. g.,

| | | |
|-------------|-----------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Amandī,</i> | <i>of loving.</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Amandō,</i> | <i>to or for loving.</i> |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>Amandūm,</i> | <i>loving.</i> |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>Amandō,</i> | <i>by loving.</i> |

REM.—The gerund, being a part of the verb, of course governs the same case.

374. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The gerund is governed like a noun in the same case; e. g.,

Intēr lūdendūm.

(*During playing.*)

While they are playing.

375. The Latin verb has two *supines*; one in *ūm* and one in *ū*.

376. The supines are formed by adding the above endings to the third root; e. g.,

Amātūm (to love), mōnītūm, rectūm, audītūm.

Amātū (to be loved), mōnītū, rectū, audītū.

REM.—The supine in *ūm* is generally Englished by the present infinitive active, and that in *ū* by the present infinitive passive, though it may be translated by the active, if that gives better English. Both supines are really active; thus, *factūm* means *for doing*, and *factū* in *doing*.

377. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The supine in *ūm* follows verbs of motion, to express the purpose or object of that motion; e. g.,

Mittīt lēgātōs pācēm pētītūm.

He sends ambassadors *to sue for peace*.

378. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The supine in *ū* is used after adjectives signifying *good* or *bad*, *easy* or *difficult*, *agreeable* or *disagreeable*, &c.; e. g.,

Diffīcīlē est dictū.

It is difficult *to say*.

379. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Many adjectives signifying *desire*, *knowledge*, *skill*, *participation*, *recollection*, *fulness*,

and the *like*, together with their contraries, govern the genitive; e. g.,

Cūpīdūs laudīs, *desirous of praise.*

380. VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| Aquārī, at, to bring water. | Pābūlatūm (sup.), to forage. |
| Aquatūm (sup.), to bring water. | Pētērē, iv (i), it, to seek, ask, sue |
| Auxilium, ī, aid, help. | for. |
| Cūpīdūs, ā, ūm, desirous, desirous of. | Rōgārē, āv, at, to ask. |
| Jucundūs, ā, ūm, pleasant, delightful. | Sumptūs, ūs, expense. |
| Mirābilis, ē, wonderful. | Sūpervacuūs, ā, ūm, unnecessary |
| Pābūlarī, at, to forage. | Vēnārī, āt, to hunt. |
| | Vēnatūm (sup.), to hunt. |
| | Vitārē, āv, at, to avoid, shun. |

381. Exercises.

(a) 1. Cupīdi sunt docendi. 2. Num puēri ludendo discunt? 3. Puer cupīdus est discendi. 4. Misērunt legātos pacem petītum. 5. Legātos ad Caesārem mittunt rogātum auxilium. 6. Jucundum est audītu. 7. Diffīcile est factu. 8. Mittantur legāti pacem petītum. 9. Quantum tempōris ludendo amisērunt! 10. Multum tempōris ludendo amittēmus.

(b) 1. He learns by teaching. 2. Have we not learned by teaching? 3. Is there not much pleasure in learning? 4. How much pleasure (there) is in learning! 5. There is much pleasure in teaching. 6. Do not boys learn while playing? 7. The boy has been sent *a hunting*. 8. Caesar has sent the fourth legion *to forage*. 9. Ambassadors have been sent *to ask* peace. 10. It is difficult *to say*. 11. It is wonderful *to tell*. 12. Has not Caesar sent the fourth legion *to bring water?*

LESSON LXIV.

Participle in dus.

382. INSTEAD of a gerund governing its case, we may use a *participle in dus* agreeing with a noun; e. g.,

(*Eng.*) The intention of *writing* a letter.

(*Lat.*) Consiliū *scribendi* epistolām.

(or) Consiliū *scribendae* epistolae.*

383. Thus, then, *epistolā scribendā* may be declined throughout.

Sing.

N. Epistolā *scribenda*, a letter to be written.

G. epistolae *scribendae*, of writing a letter.

D. epistolae *scribendae*, to or for writing a letter.

Acc. (ad) epistolam *scribendam*, to write a letter (or for writing a letter).

Abl. epistolā *scribendā*, by writing a letter.

Plur.

N. epistolae *scribendae*, letters to be written.

G. epistolārum *scribendarum*, of writing letters.

D. epistolīs *scribendis*, to or for writing letters.

Acc. (ad) epistolas *scribendas*, to write letters (or for writing letters).

Abl. epistolīs *scribendis*, by writing letters.

384. VOCABULARY.

Adjumentum, i, *aid*, help.

Arripere (iō), arripu, arrept, to
snatch, seize.

Athēnae, arum, *Athens*, city of
Greece.

Augere, aux, auct, to increase.

* The real meaning of 'consilium scribendae epistolae' is 'the design of (= about) a letter to be written.'

Āpīdiōz, ōis (*comp.*), *fonder*.
 Elēgantiā, ae, *elegance*.
 Emērē, ēm, *empt, to buy, purchase*.
 Exercērē, exercu, exercīt, *to practise, exercise*.
 Gērērē, gess, gest, *to carry on, to wage*.
 Hābērē, ū, īt, *to have, enjoy*.

Lēgērē, lēg, leet, *to read*.
 Obtinērē, obtīnu, obtent, *to obtain, acquire*.
 Occāsiō, ōis, *opportunity*.
 Pērītūs, ā, ūm, *skilful, skilled in*.
 Rēgērē, rex, rect, *to govern, rule*.
 Stūdiōsūs, ā, ūm, *very fond*.

385. Exercises.

(a) 1. Balbus omnem occasiōnem *exercendae virtūtis* arripībat. 2. Multi cupidiōres sunt *emendōrum librōrum* quam *legendōrum*. 3. Caesar belli gerendi perītus fuit. 4. Omnis occasio *exercendae virtūtis* arripīatur. 5. Certum est, omnem occasiōnem *exercendae virtūtis* a Christiāno arripī. 6. Omnis dicendi elegancia augētur *legendis oratoribus* et *poētis*. 7. Homo magna habet adjumenta ad *obtinendam sapientiam*.

(b) 1. The boy is very fond of *writing letters*. 2. He was very fond of *hearing the orator*. 3. Seize every opportunity of *practising virtue*. 4. The Romans were fond of *waging war*. 5. Ambassadors are sent *to beg for peace*. 6. Ambassadors will be sent to *sue for peace*. 7. The law will be broken. 8. Will not the laws be broken by wicked (men)? 9. It is certain, that the laws are broken by the wicked at Rome and at Athens. 10. Let your word be kept. 11. Let the state be ruled by the wise.

LESSON LXV.

First Conjugation.

386. VOCABULARY.*

Adeō, *so, in such a manner.*Cantārē, *av, at, to sing.*Certāmēn, *inīs, contest.*Crābrō, *ōnīs, wasp.*Intēr, *between, during.*Intēr ambūlandūm, *while walking*Irrītārē, *av, at, to trouble, irritate.*Ornārē, *av, at, to adorn.*Rōbustūs, *ā, ūm, robust, strong.*Spōliārē, *av, at, to rob of, despoil.*387. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Sapiēntis est supervacuos sumptus vitāre. 2. Crabrōnem ne irrītes (232). 3. Crabrōnem ne irrītate (347). 4. Irritasne crabrōnes? 5. Nonne eam legem ipse violābas? 6. Inter ambulandum cantābant. 7. Hic miles est adeo robustus, ut nemo eum in certamīne superavērit. 8. Prata et agri pulcherrimis floribus ornantur. 9. Oculisne me, iudīces, privabītis? 10. Violātis patriae legibus (366), mea me laude spoliātis. 11. Num mea laude spoliābor?

(b) 1. It is the duty of a Christian⁷ to avoid unnecessary expense. 2. Did they not themselves violate those laws? 3. Let not the laws be violated by Christians. 4. We hope we shall never be accused. 5. Have you ever been accused? 6. Let your laws be kept. 7. Is it not certain that the laws are broken by the wicked? 8. Did they not condemn him to death? 9. Balbus is so strong that he has never been surpassed in a contest. 10. Have I not been deprived of my eyes?

* Preparatory to this exercise, the pupil is expected to review thoroughly the Paradigm of the First Conjugation. See 588.

LESSON LXVI.

Second Conjugation.

388. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Many verbs which signify *to ask, demand, or teach*, together with *cēlārē* (to conceal), take two objects, one of a person and another of a thing; e. g.,

Caesār frūmentūm Aeduōs flāgītābāt.

Caesar demanded corn of the Aedui.

389. VOCABULARY.*

| | |
|---|--|
| Divitiācūs, ī, <i>Divitiacus, man's name.</i> | Mordērē, mōmord, mors, <i>to bite.</i> |
| Impērārē, āv, āt, <i>to command, give commands.</i> | Pārērē, ū, īt, <i>to obey.</i> |
| Jūbērē, juss, juss, <i>to direct, order.</i> | Prōpensūs, ā, ūm, <i>inclined to.</i> |
| | Sānārē, āv, āt, <i>to cure, reform.</i> |
| | Tācērē, ū, īt, <i>to be silent, to pass over in silence.</i> |

390. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Hostes non timēmus. 2. Nonne respondēbis? 3. Docendo docēmur. 4. Ego multa tacui: multa sannāvi. 5. Ad docendum propensi sunt. 6. Pareat animus: non impēret. 7. Caesar Divitiācum ad se vocāri jubet. 8. Te haec docēbo. 9. Puēros haec docēbant. 10. Puēri haec docti sunt. 11. Canis puērum momordit. 12. Nonne oves totondistis?

(b) 1. Do you not fear the enemy? 2. Do not fear the enemy. 3. Who taught the boy this? 4. Did you teach those boys this? 5. Who sheared this sheep? 6. Let no one shear my sheep. 7. Did the dog bite you? 8. I have been bitten by your dog. 9. We

* The pupil will, of course, review Paradigm.* See 539.

have ourselves been taught by teaching. 10. Did you not laugh at your father?

LESSON LXVII.

Third Conjugation.

391. RULE OF SYNTAX.—After verbs of motion :

- 1) The place to which the motion is directed, if a town or small island, is put in the accusative without a preposition ; e. g.,

Rōmām vēnīrē, to come to Rome.

- 2) The place from which the motion proceeds, if a town or small island, is put in the ablative without a preposition ; e. g.,

Rōmā vēnīrē, to come from Rome.

REM.—Before other names of places the preposition is generally expressed.

(Review Paradigm 590.)

392. VOCABULARY.

Agērē, ēg, act, to do, act.
Committērē, mīs, miss, to engage.
Cūrārē, av, āt, to attend to, cause, &c.
Dārē, dēd, dāt, to give.
Equēs, itīs, horseman.
Grātiā, ae, favor ; pl., thanks.

Grātiās āgērē, to give thanks, to thank.
Injuriā, ae, injury, wrong done.
Pons, tīs, m., bridge.
Responsū, ī, answer, reply.
Tēgērē, tex, tect, to cover, conceal.
Unquām, ever.

393. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caium Athēnas mittat. 2. Servum Athēnas miserat. 3. Mihi gratias egistis. 4. Sicut vixi, ut

nemo unquam me ullius injuriae accusaverit. 5. Pontem in flumine faciendum curavit. 6. Equites proelium committunt. 7. Hoc responso dato, equites proelium committunt. 8. Certum est, Caesarem belli gerendi peritum fuisse. 9. Legatos ad eum miserunt. 10. Omnis dicendi elegantia augetur legendis oratoribus (382).

(b) 1. He has sent an ambassador to Rome. 2. Ambassadors will be sent to sue for (377) peace. 3. Ambassadors have been sent to sue for peace. 4. He has never been sent to Athens. 5. He is said to have been very desirous of (379) learning. 6. They say that you are desirous of engaging battle. 7. They are said to be skilful in waging war. 8. Having made this reply they engage battle. 9. It is disgraceful to cover a fault with a lie.

LESSON LXVIII.

Fourth Conjugation.

(Review Paradigm 591.)

394. VOCABULARY.

Antea, *before.*

Captivus, a, um, *captive.*

Claudere, claus, claus, *to shut.*

Fundus, i, *estate, farm.*

Hannibal, alis, *Hannibal.*

Intra (*prep. with accus.*), *within.*

Italia, ae, *Italy.*

Praeceptum, i, *precept, instruction.*

Praesens, tis, *present.*

Succurrere, curr, curs, *to aid, succor.*

Tarentum, i, *Tarentum, a town in Italy.*

Vetustus, a, um, *old, ancient.*

395. Exercises.

(a) 1. Haec ex captivis audiverat. 2. Venit sacerdos ut aram sanguine aspergat. 3. Miles Tarentum

vēnit. 4. Hunc audiēbant antea, nunc praesentē vident. 5. Fundo in tres partes divīso, Romam vēnit. 6. Veni ut mihi succurras. 7. Hannibal, Alpibus superātis, in Italiam venit. 8. Lex erat Romanōrum vetustissīma, ne quis intra urbem sepelirētur.

(b) 1. Have not the boys been sent to bring water? 2. They have come to shut the gates of the city. 3. Will you come to shut the gates? 4. Let them come to shut the gates. 5. Let all come to hear the instructions of the wise. 6. Let the instructions of the wise be always heard. 7. By hearing the instructions of the wise we shall learn wisdom. 8. He has buried his father. 9. Has he buried him within the city? 10. Do not bury him within the city.

LESSON LXIX.

Verbs with the Dative.—Indirect Object.

396. THE use of the *indirect object* has been already illustrated; but as some verbs in Latin are followed by the dative (the case of the indirect object) where we use no preposition, and should therefore be led by the English to put the accusative, it may be well to notice a few instances of this. The verbs of this class are principally such as signify:

*To command or obey, please or displease, favor or injure, serve or resist, together with to indulge, spare, pardon, envy, believe, persuade.**

* See 643

REM. 1.—Văcărē (to have leisure) and nūbērē (to marry, used of females), also take the dative.

REM. 2.—It will be readily perceived, in most cases, that the dative after the above verbs is really the *indirect* and not the *direct* object; thus, *impērārē* (to command) means to give a command *to*; *plācērē* (to please) to give pleasure *to*; and so of most, if not all, of the others.

397. VOCABULARY.

Ars, artīs, *art.*

Beatē, *happily.*

Crēdērē, crēdīd, crēdīt, *to believe, put confidence in.*

Cūpīditās, atīs, *desire, passion.*

Fāvērē, fav, faut, *to favor.*

Ignoscērē, nōv, nōt, *to pardon.*

Indulgērē, indulg, indult, *to indulge.*

Invidērē, vīd, vīs, *to envy.*

Nōcērē, nōcu, nōcīt, *to hurt.*

Parcērē, pēpere, parcīt, *to spare.*

Persuādērē, persuās, persuās, *to persuade.*

Rēsistērē, stīt, stīt, *to resist.*

Servīrē, īv (i), īt, *to serve, be a slave to.*

Stūdērē, u, *to study, strive for.*

Văcārē, āv, at, *to have leisure for.*

398. Exercises.

(a) 1. Irae multos annos serviēras. 2. Regendis anīmi cupiditatibus studeāmus. 3. Caesar legendo libro vacābit. 4. Christiāni est patriae suae legibus parēre. 5. Ignosce mihi. 6. Nemo tibi credet. 7. Imprōbus patriae legibus non parēbit. 8. Num legibus parēbunt imprōbi, violāta fide? 9. Discant Christiāni anīmis suis imperāre. 10. Sapientia ars est bene beateque vivendi.

(b) 1. I would have favored Caius. 2. You would have resisted anger. 3. You (*pl.*) would have hurt nobody. 4. We would have indulged the desire. 5. I was hurting myself. 6. You were hurting me. 7. You had hurt Caius. 8. You had been-the-slave-of passion. 9. Do not be-the slave-of passion. 10. You were sparing the enemies. 11. *It is the duty of* a Christian to envy nobody. 12. Do not envy the good. 13.

It is pleasant to succor the miserable. 14. Nobody will believe the wicked. 15. Death spares nobody. 16. They had spared the gate of the city. 17. He spares himself in the winter. 18. He does not spare even himself. 19. You will never have persuaded me. 20. Let the Christian learn to command himself.

LESSON LXX.

Deponent Verbs.

399. A DEPONENT verb is one which has a *passive form*, but an *active meaning*.

400. *Deponent verbs* have all the four participles; e. g.,

- 1) *Loquens*, ^{present} *speaking*; 2) *locūtus*, *having spoken*;
- 3) *locutūrus*, *about to speak*; 4) *loquendus*, *to be spoken*.

REM.—The past participle of a deponent verb is the participle of the *perfect active*, which other verbs do not have.

401. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The deponent verbs, *ūtōr*, *fruōr*, *fungōr*, *potiōr*, *vescōr*, *dignōr*, and their compounds, usually take the *ablative*; e. g.,

Vōluptatē fruītūr, *he enjoys pleasure*.

REM.—The ablative after the above is not strictly the object, but the *ablative of means*; thus, *to enjoy pleasure*, is *to be delighted with pleasure*.

402. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Verbs of *reminding*, *remembering*, *forgetting*, and *pitying*, usually take the *genitive* of the object remembered, forgotten, &c.; e. g.,

Rēmīniscōr bēnēficiī tuī, *I remember your kindness*.

REM.—Most of these verbs, except those signifying *to pity*, sometimes take the accusative instead of the genitive.

403. VOCABULARY.

Aliquandō, *some time or other.*

Beneficiū, *I, benefit.*

Flagitiū, *I, crime.*

Fungi, *funct, to discharge.*

Lōqui, *lōcūt, to speak.*

Mālē, *badly.*

Miserēri, *miserit, or misert, to pity.*

Oblivisci, *oblit, to forget.*

Odiū, *I, hatred.*

Officiū, *I, duty.*

Post (*prep. with accus.*), *after.*

Pōtiri, *pōtit, to get possession.*

Rēcordārī, *at, to remember, to recall to mind.*

Sempiternūs, *ā, ūm, eternal.*

Utī, *ūs, to use.*

404. Exercises.

(a) 1. Christianōrum est miserēri paup̄rum. 2. Homo imprōbus aliquando cum dolōre flagitiōrum suōrum recordabitur. 3. Multi beneficiis male utuntur. 4. Vincāmus odium, pacēque potiāmur. 5. Christiāni est injuriārum oblivisci. 6. Beātus est, qui omnibus vitae officiis fungitur. 7. Elegantiam loquendi legendis oratoribus et poētis auxērant.

(b) 1. Let the Christian discharge all the duties of life. 2. Let us use our horses. 3. The good after death will enjoy eternal life. 4. Will not the good after death enjoy eternal life? 5. Is the life that we now enjoy eternal? 6. Let boys learn to discharge all the duties of life. 7. Have you not spared the conquered?* 8. Spare (*pl.*) the conquered. 9. Let us spare the conquered. 10. We will resist anger. 11. Will you not resist anger? 12. Let Caius, who sold

* Participles as well as adjectives (117) are sometimes used substantively.

his country for gold, be condemned to death. 13. Let the wicked, who sold their country for gold, be accused of treason.

LESSON LXXI.

Irregular Verbs.

405. THE irregular verbs are those which deviate from the ordinary rules, not only in the formation of their roots, but also in the inflection of some of their tenses.

406. The irregular verb *possē* (to be able), compounded of *pōt* (*pōtīs*, able) and *essē* (to be), is conjugated like the simple *essē*, except,

- 1) *T* before *s* becomes *s*; as, *possūm* (*potsūm*).
- 2) The *f* in the second root is dropped; as, *pōtu* (*potfu*).
- 3) In the *present infinitive* and *imperfect subjunctive* there is a contraction; as, *possē* (for *pōtessē*), *possēm* (for *pōtessēm*).

407. Paradigm.

Possē, to be able; 2d root, pōtu.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. *Possūm, pōtēs, pōtest, possūmus, pōtestis, possunt.*

Imp. *pōtērām; Fut.* *pōtērō; Perf.* *pōtu-i; Pluperf.* *pōtu-ērām;*

Fut. Perf. *pōtu-ērō.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. *possīm; Imp.* *possēm; Perf.* *pōtu-ērīm; Pluperf.* *pōtu-issēm.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. *possē; Perf.* *pōtu-issē.*

PARTICIPLE.

Pōtens (used as an adjective, powerful).

408. The various forms of *possě* are often best translated by the auxiliaries, *can, could, &c.*; e. g.,

Egö făcěřě possŭm, *I can do* (am able to do).

REM.—When a past tense of *possě* is thus translated by *could*, any present infinitive depending upon it must be translated by the English perfect; e. g.,

Egö făcěřě pŏtuī, *I could have done.*

409. The irregular verb *vellě*, *to will, or be willing*, and its compounds, *nollě*, *to be unwilling* (from *nŏn* and *vellě*), and *mallě*, *to wish rather, to prefer* (from *măg* [*măgīs*, more] and *vellě*), are conjugated as in the following:

410. Paradigms.

| Vellě. 2d root, <i>vŏlu</i> . | Nollě. 2d root, <i>nŏlu</i> . | Mallě. 2d root, <i>mălu</i> . |
|---|---|--|
| INDICATIVE. | | |
| PRESENT. | | |
| Vŏlŏ, Vīs, Vult; Vŏlŭmŭs, Vultīs, Vŏlunt. | Nŏlŏ, Nonvīs, Nonvult; Nŏlŭmŭs, Nonvultīs, Nŏlunt. | Mălŏ, Măvīs, Măvult; Mălŭmŭs, Măvultīs, Mălunt. |
| IMPERFECT. | | |
| Vŏl'-ėbăm, băs, &c. Nŏl'-ėbăm, băs, &c. Măl'-ėbăm, băs, &c. | | |
| FUTURE. | | |
| Vŏl-ăm. | Nŏl-ăm. | Măl-ăm. |
| PERFECT. | | |
| Vŏlu-ī. | Nŏlu-ī. | Mălu-ī. |
| PLUPERFECT. | | |
| Vŏlu-ėřăm. | Nŏlu-ėřăm. | Mălu-ėřăm. |
| FUTURE PERFECT. | | |
| Vŏlu-ėřŏ. | Nŏlu-ėřŏ. | Mălu-ėřŏ. |

PARADIGMS—continued.

| SUBJUNCTIVE. | | |
|------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------|
| PRESENT. | | |
| Věĭ-ĭm, ĭs, &c. | Nōl-ĭm, ĭs, &c. } | Māl-ĭm, ĭs, &c. |
| IMPERFECT. | | |
| Vell-ēm, ēs, &c. | Noll-ēm. | Mall-ēm. |
| PERFECT. | | |
| Vōlu-ērĭm. | Nōlu-ērĭm. | Mālu-ērĭm. |
| PLUPERFECT. | | |
| Vōlu-issēm. | Nōlu-issēm. | Mālu-issēm. |
| IMPERATIVE. | | |
| | Nōl-ī or itō, Nōl-itē, itotē. | |
| INFINITIVE. | | |
| Pres. Vellē. | Nollē. | Mallē. |
| Perf. Vōlu-issē. | Nōlu-issē. | Mālu-issē. |
| PARTICIPLES. | | |
| Vōlens. | Nōlens. | |

411. VOCABULARY.

Animāl, alīs, *animal*.

Corrigērē, correx, *correct, to correct, reform*.

Cōr, cordīs, *n., heart*.

Mallē, mālu, *to prefer wish rather*.

Nollē, nōlu, *to be unwilling*.

Nullūs, ā, ūm (113, R.), *no, not any*.

Occidērē, occīd, occīs, *to kill*.

Possē, pōtu, *to be able*.

Praetērītūs, ā, ūm, *past; praeteritā (neut. pl.), the past*.

Prōbūs, ā, ūm, *honest, upright*.

Scīpiō, ōnīs, *Scipio, a distinguished Roman*.

Sinē, *without*.

Vellē, vōlu, *to wish*.

412. Exercises.

(a) 1. Haec facere possūmus. 2. Haec facere potuisti. 3. Multum discere vult. 4. Nolui hoc facere

5. Praeterīta mutāre non possūmus. 6. Nullum anīmal quod sanguīnem habet, sine corde esse potest. 7. Discat ut possit docēre. 8. Num puēri regendae civitātis (382) perīti esse possunt? 9. Si vis beātus esse, anīmo impēra. 10. Probi semper vitam corrigēre volunt. 11. Scipio dicēbat, malle se unum civem servāre, quam mille hostes occidēre.

(b) 1. Do you wish to change the past? 2. We do not wish to change the past. 3. You (*pl.*) cannot change the past. 4. We cannot shun death. 5. Let us learn, that we may be able to teach others. 6. They wish to be happy. 7. We all wish to be happy. 8. Could you not have seen the king? 9. We might have learned much. 10. We were unwilling to accuse you. 11. Were you not unwilling to accuse the king?

LESSON LXXII.

Irregular Verbs, continued.

413. THE irregular verb, *ferrĕ*, *to bear*, drops *e* between two *r*'s, as *ferrĕ* for *ferĕrĕ*, and *i* in the endings of the second and third sing. act., and of the third sing. pass. It borrows its second and third roots from other verbs.

414. Paradigm.

Ferrĕ, *to bear*; 2d root, *tŭl*; 3d, *lāt*.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Active.

Fĕr-ō, fer-s, fer-t, fĕr-īmŭs,
fer-tis, fĕr-unt.

Passive.

Fĕr-ōr, fer-ris, fĕr-tŭr, fĕr-īmŭr,
fĕr-īmīnī, fĕr-untŭr.

PARADIGM—continued.

IMPERFECT.

| <i>Active.</i> | | <i>Passive.</i> |
|--------------------|--|----------------------|
| Fēr-ēbām, bās, &c. | | Fēr-ēbār, bārīs, &c. |

FUTURE.

| | | |
|-----------------|--|-------------------|
| Fēr-ām, ēs, &c. | | Fēr-ār, ērīs, &c. |
|-----------------|--|-------------------|

PERFECT

| | | |
|------------------|--|---------------------|
| Tūl-ī, istī, &c. | | Lāt-ūs sūm, ēs, &c. |
|------------------|--|---------------------|

PLUPERFECT.

| | | |
|-------------------|--|------------------|
| Tūl-ērām, as, &c. | | Lāt-ūs ērām, &c. |
|-------------------|--|------------------|

FUTURE PERFECT.

| | | |
|--------------|--|-----------------|
| Tūl-ērō, &c. | | Lāt-ūs ērō, &c. |
|--------------|--|-----------------|

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

| | | |
|-----------------|--|-------------------|
| Fēr-ām, as, &c. | | Fēr-ār, arīs, &c. |
|-----------------|--|-------------------|

IMPERFECT

| | | |
|-------------------|--|---------------------|
| Fer-rēm, rēs, &c. | | Fer-rēr, rērīs, &c. |
|-------------------|--|---------------------|

PERFECT.

| | | |
|---------------|--|-----------------|
| Tūl-ērīm, &c. | | Lāt-ūs sīm, &c. |
|---------------|--|-----------------|

PLUPERFECT.

| | | |
|------------|--|-------------------|
| Tūl-issēm. | | Lāt-ūs essēm, &c. |
|------------|--|-------------------|

IMPERATIVE.

| | | |
|----------------------|--|---------------------|
| Fēr, or fertō, | | Fer-rē, or fer-tōr, |
| Fer-tō; | | Fer-tōr; |
| Fer-tē, or fer-tōtē. | | Fēr-imīnī, |
| Fēr-untō. | | Fēr-untōr. |

INFINITIVE.

| | | |
|----------------------------|--|--------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> Fer-rē, | | Fer-rī, |
| <i>Perf.</i> Tūl-isse, | | Lāt-ūs essē, |
| <i>Fut.</i> Lāt-ūrūs essē. | | Lāt-ūm irī. |

PARADIGM—continued.

| PARTICIPLES. | | | |
|------------------------|-------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| <i>Active.</i> | | <i>Passive.</i> | |
| <i>Pres.</i> | Fěr-ens, | <i>Perf.</i> | Lāt-ūs (ǎ, ūm). |
| <i>Fut.</i> | Lāt-ūrūs (ǎ, ūm). | <i>Fut.</i> | Fěr-endūs (ǎ, ūm). |
| GERUND. | | | |
| Fěr-endī, dō, dūm, dō. | | | |
| SUPINE. | | | |
| Lāt-ūm. | | Lāt-n. | |

REM.—The compounds of *ferrē* are conjugated like the simple verb.

415. The irregular verb, *fiērī*, *to become, be made*, is used as the passive of *fācērē*, and, in the tenses for completed action, has the regular forms of the passive of that verb.

416. Paradigm.

| <i>Fiērī, to become, be made.</i> | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| PRESENT. | |
| <i>Indicative.</i> | <i>Subjunctive.</i> |
| Fīō, fīs, fīt, &c. | Fī-ām, fī-ās, fī-āt, &c. |
| IMPERFECT. | |
| Fī-ēbām, ēbās, &c. | Fī-ērēm, ērēs, &c. |
| FUTURE. | |
| Fī-ām, ēs, &c. | |
| PERFECT. | |
| Fact-ūs sūm, &c. | Fact-ūs sīm, &c. |
| PLUPERFECT. | |
| Fact-ūs ērām, &c. | Fact-ūs essēm, &c. |
| FUTURE PERFECT. | |
| Fact-ūs ērō, &c. | |
| IMPERATIVE. | |
| <i>Sing.</i> Fī, or fī-tō, Fī-tō. | <i>Plur.</i> Fītē, or fī-tōtē, Fī-untō. |

PARADIGM—*continued.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Fiērī; *Perf.* Fact-ūs essē; *Fut.* Fact-ūm irī.

PARTICIPLES.

Perf. Fact-ūs (ā, ūm); *Fut.* Fāciendūs (ā, ūm).

417. VOCABULARY.

Afferre, attul, allat, *to bring, to bring to.*

Auctōr, ōrīs, *author.*

Cālāmitās, atīs, *misfortune, calamity.*

Crēbēr, brā, brūm, *frequent, numerous.*

Ferrē, tūl, lāt, *to carry, bear, endure.*

Fiērī, fact, *to become, be made.*

Inferre, intul, illat, *to bring against, to wage.*

Itērūm, *again.*

Rēferrē, rētūl, rēlat, *to bring back, to relate.*

Rūmōr, ōrīs, *report, rumor.*

Tertiūs, ā, ūm, *third.*

Utilitās, atīs, *profit, advantage.*

418. Exercises.

(a) 1. Quid fers manu, mi fili? 2. Is labor utilis est qui auctōri laudem fert, aliis utilitātem. 3. Tertio die auxilium tulērunt. 4. Crebri ad eum rumōres afferbantur. 5. Dixit Gallos sibi bellum intulisse. 6. His responsis ad Caesārem relātis, itērūm ad eum Caesar legātos mittit. 7. Brutus consul factus est.

(b) 1. He has been made king. 2. Do you wish to become king? (*No.*) 3. Many reports will be brought to you. 4. What reports have been brought to you? 5. Your father has become poor. 6. Shall you not bring us aid? 7. Do you not wish to carry aid to your brother? 8. Caesar waged many wars. 9. Caesar is said to have waged many wars. 10. He has endured many misfortunes. 11. Do you wish to wage war against your father? (*No.*) 12. We were unwilling to wage war against our country.

LESSON LXXIII.

Irregular Verbs, continued.

419 THE irregular verb, *īrě*, *to go*, is regular in the parts from the first root.

PARADIGM.

Irě, *to go*; 2d root, *iv*; 3d, *it*.

PRESENT.

| <i>Indicative.</i> | <i>Subjunctive.</i> |
|--|-----------------------|
| Eő, <i>ī</i> , <i>it</i> ; <i>imūs</i> , <i>itīs</i> , <i>eunt</i> . | Eām, <i>eās</i> , &c. |

IMPERFECT.

| | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| Ibām, <i>ibās</i> , &c. | Irēm, <i>irēs</i> , &c. |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|

FUTURE.

| |
|------------------------|
| Ibő, <i>ibīs</i> , &c. |
|------------------------|

PERFECT.

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Iv- <i>i</i> , <i>iv-istī</i> , &c. | Iv- <i>ērīm</i> , <i>ērīs</i> , &c. |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|

PLUPERFECT.

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Iv- <i>ērām</i> , <i>ērās</i> , &c. | Iv- <i>issēm</i> , <i>issēs</i> , &c. |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|

FUTURE PERFECT.

| |
|------------------------------------|
| Iv- <i>ērő</i> , <i>ērīs</i> , &c. |
|------------------------------------|

IMPERATIVE.

| <i>Sing. I, or itő,</i> | <i>Plur. Itě, or itőtě,</i> |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Itő.</i> | <i>Euntő.</i> |

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Irě; *Perf. Iv-issě*; *Fut. Itūrūs*, *essě*.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Iens (*gen. euntīs*); *Fut. Itūrūs*, *ā*, *ūm*.

GERUND.

Eundī, *dō*, *dūm*, *dō*.

SUPINE.

Itūm, *itū*.

REM.—The compounds of *irē* are conjugated like the simple verb, but generally contract the perfect *ivī* into *iī*, and* most of them want the supine.

420. *Edĕrĕ*, to eat, is conjugated regularly as a verb of the third conjugation, but has also certain forms like those of *essĕ*. These are as follows :

| <i>Regular.</i> | | <i>Irregular.</i> |
|-------------------|-------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | Edĕ, &c. | Es, est, estis. |
| <i>Imperat.</i> | Edĕ, &c. | Es, estĕ, estĕ, estĕtĕ. |
| <i>Sulj. Imp.</i> | Edĕrĕm, &c. | Essĕm, essĕs, &c. |
| <i>Infin.</i> | Edĕrĕ. | Essĕ. |

421. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The words *dŏmŭs* and *rŭs*, together with the genitives *hŭmī*, *bellī*, and *mīlītiæ*, are construed like names of towns (see 227); e. g.,

Dŏmŭm rĕdiit, he returned home.

422. VOCABULARY.

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>Abirĕ</i> , i, ĭt, to go away, depart. | <i>Irĕ</i> , iv, ĭt, to go. |
| <i>Dŏmī</i> (gen. of <i>dŏmŭs</i>), at home. | <i>Mīlītiæ</i> (gen. of <i>mīlītia</i>), on service, in the field. |
| <i>Edĕrĕ</i> (essĕ), ĕd, ĕs, to eat. | <i>Nĕc—nĕc</i> , neither—nor. |
| <i>Et—ĕt</i> , both—and. | <i>Rĕdirĕ</i> , i, ĭt, to return. |
| <i>Evolārĕ</i> , v, āt, to fly away, to flee. | <i>Rŭs</i> , rŭrīs, field, country. |

423. Exercises.

(a) 1. Fracto puĕri brachio, abit. 2. Fundo in tres partes divīso, redit Athenas. 3. Puĕri venātum¹⁸ ivērunt. 4. Est (*edit*) ut vivat. 5. Nonne estis ut vivātis? 6. Abeat Romam. 7. Scriptis epistŏlis, abiĕrunt. 8. Balbus, *quum* manus in aquam *immersisset*, abiit. 9. Caius rus ex urbe evolavĕrit. 10. Caius nondum rure rediit. 11. Et Caesar et Balbus Romam rediĕrunt. 12. Vĕnit sacerdos, ut aram florībus cingĕret.

(b) 1. Caesar has not yet returned to Rome. 2. The

boys have gone a hunting.¹¹ 3. Do you wish to go a hunting? 4. They say he has gone a hunting. 5. He says that he wishes to go a hunting. 6. Do you not eat to live? 7. He says that he eats to live. 8. Balbus, having crowned the boy's head with a garland, went away. 9. Caesar, having conquered his enemies, will return to Rome. 10. They all wish to return to Rome. 11. Do you wish to return home? 12. Balbus is at his own house. 13. He was with me both at home and on service. 14. You have lived many years in the country.

LESSON LXXIV.

Periphrastic Conjugations.

424. THERE are two periphrastic conjugations formed respectively from the future participles in *rūs* and *dūs*, combined with the various tenses of the verb *essē*. The first periphrastic conjugation represents the action as *future*, or as one that is about to be done; e. g., *Scriptūrūs sūm*, *I am about to write*.

425. The second periphrastic conjugation expresses *duty* or *necessity*; e. g., *Virtūs cōlendā est*, *virtue must be cultivated*.

426. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The agent, or *person by whom*, is put in the *dative* with the *part. in dūs*; with other words it is generally governed in the *ablative* by *ā* or *āb*.

427. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Many adjectives are followed by the *dative* of the object to which the quality

is directed, or for which it exists; e. g., *Pax mihi grātissimā ērāt, peace was very acceptable to me.*

428. VOCABULARY.

Bibērē, bīb, bībīt, *to drink.*

Delērē, ēv, ēt, *to destroy.*

Ignārūs, ā, ūm, *ignorant.*

Inūtilis, ě, *useless, unfit for.*

Mārīmūs, ā, ūm, *marine, of the sea.*

Prōpiōr, ūs (*comp.*), *nearer.*

Pūtārē, av, at, *to think, regard.*

Simplex, ěis, *simple.*

Subvēnīrē, vēn, vent, *to go to the assistance of, to aid.*

429. Exercises.

(a) 1. Tondendae sunt oves, non deglubendae. 2. Exercenda est virtus. 3. Nonnē claudendae sunt urbis portae? 4. Sapientia ars vivendi putanda est. 5. Puer Romam mittendus est. 6. Pauperībus qui ne grano quidem uno fraudandi sunt, subveniāmus. 7. Quid factūri estis? 8. Simplex cibus puēris utilissimū est. 9. Luna terrae propior est quam sol. 10. Aqua marīna inutilis est bibendo. 11. Inutīles sunt libri ignāro legendi.

(b) 1. They must be sent to Athens. 2. They must be sent into the country. 3. We must be taught by the wise. 4. The city must be destroyed. 5. The gates must be shut. 6. Must not virtue be learned? 7. Must not virtue be practised? 8. Every opportunity of practising virtue¹⁴ must be seized. 9. The poor must not be defrauded of even a single grain. 10. Has he not defrauded the poor? 11. Let not the poor be defrauded of a single grain. 12. Is not the moon nearer the earth than the sun?

LESSON LXXV.

Impersonal Verbs.

430. IMPERSONAL verbs are such as are used only in the third person singular, and never take a personal subject (as *I, thou, he*). The subject in English is generally expressed by the pronoun *it*; e. g.,

Oportēt, *it behooves.*

Taedēt mē, *it disgusts me* (I am disgusted with).

431. Besides the verbs which are strictly impersonal, many others are often used *impersonally*; e. g.,

Constāt, *it is known.*

Juvāt, *it delights.*

432. The impersonal verb *līcēt*, *it is lawful*, or *is allowed*, denotes *permission*, and may be translated by *may* and *might*; e. g.,

Līcēt, *may* (it is allowed).

Līcuīt, *might* (it was allowed).

| | |
|------------------|-----------------------------|
| Mihī irē līcēt, | <i>I may go.</i> |
| Tibī irē līcēt, | <i>You may go.</i> |
| Illī irē līcēt, | <i>He may go.</i> |
| Nōbīs irē līcēt, | <i>We may go.</i> |
| Vōbīs irē līcēt, | <i>You may go.</i> |
| Illīs irē līcēt, | <i>They may go.</i> |
| Mihī irē līcuīt, | <i>I might have gone.</i> |
| Tibī irē līcuīt, | <i>You might have gone.</i> |

REM. 1.—The dative in these examples is the indirect object after *līcēt*.

REM. 2.—The present infinitive must be translated by the English perfect after *līcuīt*, *might*, as in the above examples. (See also 408, Rem.)

(*Eng.*) I may go. (*Lat. Id.*) It is allowed me to go.

(*Eng.*) I might have gone. (*Lat. Id.*) It was allowed me (*then*) to go.

433. The impersonal verb *oportet*, *it behooves*, denotes *duty* or *propriety*, and may be translated by *ought*; e. g.,

| | |
|---------------------|--------------------------------|
| Mē irē oportet, | <i>I ought to go.</i> |
| Tē irē oportet, &c. | <i>You ought to go.</i> |
| Mē irē oportuit, | <i>I ought to have gone.</i> |
| Tē irē oportuit, | <i>You ought to have gone.</i> |

REM. 1.—Observe that here, too, the present infinitive is to be translated by the perfect after a past tense.

REM. 2.—The infinitive after *oportet* takes a subject accusative.

| 434. <i>English.</i> | <i>Latin Idiom.</i> |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| (a) I repent of my folly, | It repents me of my folly. |
| I am vexed at my folly, | It vexes me of my folly. |
| I am ashamed of my folly, | It shames me of my folly. |
| I pity the poor, | It pities me of the poor. |
| I am weary of life, | It irks me of life. |
| (b) Mē meae stultitiae poenitēt, | I repent of my folly. |
| Mē meae stultitiae pigēt, | I am vexed at my folly. |
| Mē meae stultitiae pudēt, | I am ashamed of my folly. |
| Misērēt mē paupērū, | I pity the poor. |
| Taedēt mē vitae, | I am weary of life. |

435. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The *impersonal* verbs of feeling, *misērēt*, *poenitēt*, *pudēt*, *taedēt*, and *pigēt*, take the accusative of the person, together with the genitive of the object which produces the feeling. (See examples above.)

436. VOCABULARY.

| | |
|---|---|
| Adessē, ādfu, <i>to be present.</i> | Diligens, entis, <i>diligent.</i> |
| Amicitia, ae, <i>friendship.</i> | Habitare, av, at, <i>to inhabit, dwell.</i> |
| Constāt, <i>it is known, is an admitted fact.</i> | Immortalis, ē, <i>immortal.</i> |
| | Licēt, <i>it is lawful, is permitted.</i> |

Miserēt, *one pities; tui mē misērēt, I pity you.*

Oportēt, *it behooves, one ought.*

Pigēt, *one is grieved at; mē pigēt, I am grieved.*

Poenītēt, *it repents, one repents.*

Praestāt, *it is better.*

Rēcīpērē (iō), cēp, cept, *to receive.*

Saepe, *often.*

Sōnūs, *I, sound, noise.*

Tardūs, ā, ūm, *slow.*

Vēlox, ocīs, *swift.*

437. Exercises.

(a) 1. Constat sonum luce tardiōrem esse. 2. Saepe facere praestat quam loqui. 3. Nonne licet Romae habitare? 4. Nonne licuit Athēnis habitare? 5. Nunquam licet peccare. 6. Num licet Christiānis gloriae servire? 7. Puēros oportet diligentes esse. 8. Amicitiam immortālem esse oportet. 9. Tui me miseret; mei piget. 10. Sapientia semper eo contenta est quod adest. 11. Ne multa loquere. 12. Miserere nostri. 13. Natūra omnes propensi sumus ad discendum.

(b) 1. It is well known that light is swifter than sound. 2. Is it not well known that the moon is nearer the earth than the sun? 3. Is it not well known that sound is slower than light? 4. He repents of his folly. 5. I repented of my folly. 6. Ought not Christians to do good to *as many as possible*? 7. Ought not Balbus to have kept^m his word? 8. Ought not Caius to have been condemned to death? 9. I have received many letters from you. 10. The bird has flown away from my hands.

LESSON LXXVI.

Impersonal Periphrastic.

438. THE second periphrastic conjugation is often used impersonally; e. g.,

| | |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Mihī scribendū est, | <i>I must or should write.</i> |
| Tibī scribendū est, | <i>you must or should write.</i> |
| Illī scribendū est, | <i>he must or should write.</i> |
| Nōbīs scribendū est, | <i>we must or should write.</i> |
| Vōbīs scribendū est, | <i>you must or should write.</i> |
| Illīs scribendū est, | <i>they must or should write.</i> |

439. Here too the agent is put in the dative (see 426) when expressed. It is omitted:

- 1) When it means every body or people in general, though it may be translated by *we* or *you*; e. g.,

Edendū est, *we or you (every body) must eat.*

- 2) When the persons meant are not likely to be mistaken.

440. In the impersonal periphrastic construction, if the verb is one which governs a dative (396), its *agent* (the person by whom) must not be expressed; e. g.,

Crēdendū est Caiō.

We must believe Caius (*not, Caius must believe*).

REM.—If, in any instance, it is necessary to express the agent, it must either be done by means of the ablative with *ā* or *ab*, or the form of the expression must be changed. The two datives would leave it doubtful *which* was the *agent*.

441. VOCABULARY.

Etiām, *even.*

Lāborārē, āv, āt, *to labor, to.*

Mētuērē, u, *to fear.*

Sēnex, sēnīs, *an old man*; pl. *the aged.*

442. Exercises.

(a) 1. Mihi discendum est. 2. Etiam senibus discendum est. 3. Improbis metuendum est. 4. Tibi evolandum est ex urbe. 5. Manendum est Romae. 6. Totam hiemem manendum est Carthagine. 7. Ambulandum est per urbem. 8. Laborandum est, ut discas. 9. Nonne laborandum est, ut discamus? 10.

Num semper ludendum est? 11. Nonne resistendum est irae? 12. Num credendum est imprōbis? 13. Nonne resistendum est anīno? 14. Non omnes ad discendum propensi sunt. 15. Discendum est, ut possis docēre. 16. Edendum est, ut possīmus vivēre.

(b) 1. We must dwell *in the country*. 2. We must remain *at home*. 3. We must fly from the city (into) the country. 4. The unlearned must labor, that they may learn. 5. We must fight, that we may preserve our lives. 6. The girls must walk through the city. 7. True greatness of mind must be valued at-a-very-high-price. 8. We should spare the conquered. 9. We should resist anger. 10. Should we not resist anger? 11. We should obey the laws of our country. 12. We must not spare even Balbus. 13. We must pardon both Caius and Balbus. 14. We must not believe even Caesar himself. 15. Having written his letter, he will go a-hunting.

LESSON LXXVII.

Impersonal Passive Verbs.—Prepositions.

443. THOSE verbs which take no direct object in the active, can only be used *impersonally* in the passive; e. g.,

| | |
|-----------------|---------------------------|
| Mihī crēdītūr, | <i>I am believed.</i> |
| Tībī crēdītūr, | <i>Thou art believed.</i> |
| Illī crēdītūr, | <i>He is believed.</i> |
| Nōbīs crēdītūr, | <i>We are believed.</i> |
| Vōbīs crēdītūr, | <i>You are believed.</i> |
| Illīs crēdītūr, | <i>They are believed.</i> |

444. Prepositions, as we have already seen (200), show the relation of objects to each other; e. g., *in urbē hābitāt, he dwells in the city.*

445. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The following twenty-six prepositions govern the accusative; viz., *Ad, adversus, antē, apud, circā cr circūm, cīs or cītrā, contrā, ergā, extrā, infrā, intēr, intrā, juxtā, ōb, pēnēs, pēr, pōnē, post, praetēr, prōpē, proptēr, sēcundūm, sūprā, trans, ultrā, versus (rare).*

446. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The following eleven prepositions govern the ablative; viz., *A (āb or abs), absquē, cōrām, cūm, dē, ē or ex, pālām, prae, prō, sīnē, tēnūs.*

447. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The five prepositions, *clām, īn, sūb, subtēr, and sūpēr*, take sometimes the accusative and sometimes the ablative.

REM.—*In* and *sūb* govern the accusative in answer to *whither* (i. e. after verbs of motion), and the ablative in answer to *where* (i. e. after verbs of rest). *Subtēr* generally takes the accusative. *Sūpēr* takes the accusative after verbs of motion and also when it signifies *upon*, and the ablative when it signifies *on* or *of* (as of a subject spoken or written about).

448 VOCABULARY.

Cīs, on this side.

Coelūm, ī, heaven, the heavens.

Cōrām, before, in the presence of.

Ergā, towards.

Firmūs, ā, ūm, firm, sure.

Infrā, below.

Intrā, within.

Paucūs, ā, ūm, few, little.

Piētās, ātis, loyalty, faithfulness.

Prae, before, in comparison with.

Suprā, above.

Terrā, ae, the earth.

449. Exercises.

(a) 1. *Vobis non credītur.* 2. *Bonis credītur.* 3. *Gloriae tuae invidētur.* 4. *Irae resistitur.* 5. *Pauci veniunt ad senectūtem.* 6. *Nulla est firma amicitia*

inter malos. 7. Piētas erga patriam conservanda est. 8. Galli eis Rhenum habitant. 9. Intra muros habitabat. 10. Coram popūlo loquētur. 11. Argentum prae auro contemnitur. 12. Caecus de coloribus judicāre non potest. 13. Supra nos coelum conspicimus; infra nos terram.

(b) 1. The good are always envied. 2. The wicked should never be believed. 3. The conquered must be spared. 4. We are envied. 5. They will be envied. 6. He was buried within the walls. 7. They wish to be buried on-this-side-of the Rhine. 8. Let us walk through the city. 9. They have returned from the city into the country. 10. Do you wish to go into the city? 11. My father will remain in the city the whole winter.

LESSON LXXVIII.

Conjunctions.

450. CONJUNCTIONS are merely *connectives*; as, pătēr et filiūs, *the father and son*. Certain combinations of these require some attention.

451. *Et* followed by another *et*; *tūm* or *quūm* followed by *tūm*, are *both—and*.

452. Nōn sōlūm—sēd etiām, *not only—but also*.

453. Tām—quām, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{so—as; as—as.} \\ \text{as well—as.} \\ \text{both—and.} \end{array} \right.$

454. Etiām, *even, also*; etiām atquē etiām, *again and again*; quōquē, *also, too* (follows the word it belongs to).

455. Aut, *or*; aut—aut, vēl—vēl, *either—or*.
 Sīvě—sīvě, seu—seu, *either—or, whether—or*.
456. Nēc—nēc, něquě—něquě, *neither—nor*.
 Věl, *or, sometimes even*; with superlatives, *very, extremely, possible*.
457. At, sěd, autěm, vērŭm, vērŏ, *but*.
 Attăměn, tăměn, vēruntăměn, *yet, but, but yet*.
458. Atquī, *but, now* (as used in reasoning).
459. Nām, namquě, ěnīm, *for*.
 Ergŏ, *therefore, then*.
 Igitŭr, ědeŏ, *therefore*.
 Ităquě, *accordingly, and so, therefore*.
 Quārě, *wherefore*.

460. VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--|---|
| Amphibiŭm, i, <i>amphibious animal</i> . | Nascī, nāt, <i>to be born</i> . |
| Audax, ācis, <i>audacious, daring</i> . | Nimiŭs, ā, ūm, <i>excessive, too much</i> . |
| Dēterrērě, u, ět, <i>to deter</i> . | |
| Inceptŭm, i, <i>purpose, undertaking</i> . | Pŭdŏr, ōrīs, <i>shame, sense of shame</i> . |
| Impēdirě, iv, ět, <i>to impede, hinder</i> . | Somnŭs, i, <i>sleep</i> . |

461. Exercises.

(a) 1. Et discet puer et docēbit. 2. Et Romae vixi et Carthagīne. 3. Lupus quum ovem tum canem mormordērat. 4. Ovem non solum totondit, sed etiam deglupsit. 5. Nec timīdus est, nec audax. 6. Nimiŭs somnus neque anīmo, neque corpŏri prodest. 7. Non deterreor ab incepto, sed pudŏre impediŏr. 8. Nihil labŏras; ideo nihil habes. 9. Nemo tam pauper vivit, quam natus est. 10. Amphibia et in aqua et in terra vivunt.

(b) 1. We shall go both to Rome and to Carthage. 2. Will you also accuse me? 3. Will they even con-

demn the king to death? [No.] 4. We must both learn and teach. 5. Do you not wish both to learn and to teach? 6. We might have condemned not only the father, but also the son. 7. He will either remain at Rome, or go to Athens. 8 Dogs as well as wolves sometimes bite sheep. 9. He sent his son to Rome, but was unwilling to go himself. 10. Caius has been accused of treason, but he will never be condemned. 11. He will not go a hunting, for he has buried his son.

LESSON LXXIX.

Subjunctive Mood with ūt, nē, and quō.

462. UT with subj. { 1. *in order that, that, so that.*
2. *the infin. (expressing purpose).*
3. *as, with infinitive.*
4. *granting that, although.*
5. *that, after to fear that not.*

463. When *ūt* introduces a *purpose*, the subjunctive may be rendered by *may, might*; when it introduces a *consequence* (as after *so, such*), it may be rendered by the *indicative or infinitive*.

464. Ut with the indicative is *as, when, since, after, how.*


465. Nē with subj. { 1. *lest, that not.*
2. *not with the infinitive.*
3. *not with the imperative.*
4. *after to fear that.*

466. Nē with the imperative or subjunctive used imperatively, is simply *not*; as, *nē scrībās*, or *nē scrībē*, do not write.

467. After verbs of fearing, *ut* and *nē* appear to change meanings; *ut*, *that—not*; *nē*, *that or lest*.

468. After verbs of fearing, the *subjunctive present* must generally be rendered by the *future*; as, *verēor ut faciām*, I fear that I shall *not* do, *verēor nē faciām*, I fear that I shall do.

469. *Quō* with the subjunctive is used to express purpose in sentences containing a comparative degree; as, *mēdicō aliquid dandū est, quō sūt studiōsiōr*, something should be given to the physician, that he may be the more attentive.

 For the use of tenses in the subjunctive, see 265 and 266.

470. VOCABULARY.

| | |
|---|--|
| Cāvērē, cāv, caut, <i>to take care,</i> <i>be careful.</i> | Multitūdō, īnis, <i>multitude.</i> |
| Cōgnītūs, ā, ūm, <i>known.</i> | Nūmērārē, āv, āt, <i>to number.</i> |
| Efficērē (iō), fēc, fect, <i>to effect,</i> <i>accomplish.</i> | Quō, <i>that, in order that.</i> |
| Fāmēs, īs, <i>hunger.</i> | Sātis (substantively), <i>enough.</i> |
| Incōgnītūs, ā, ūm, <i>unknown.</i> | Stellā, ae, <i>star.</i> |
| Mēdicūs, ī, <i>physician.</i> | Sustinērē, tīnu, tent, <i>to sustain,</i> <i>to endure.</i> |
| Mōnērē, mōnu, mōnīt, <i>to advise,</i> <i>warn.</i> | Vērērī, vērit, <i>to fear.</i> |

471. Exercises.

(a) 1. Multi alios laudant, ut ab aliis laudentur. 2. Stellārum tanta multitūdō est, ut numerārī non possint. 3. Mēdicis aliquid dandum est, quo sint studiōsiōres. 4. Cave ne incōgnīta pro cōgnītis habeas. 5. Ne tentes quod effīci non possit. 6. Vereor, ne labōres tuos augeam. 7. Vereor ne brevi tempōre fames in urbe sit. 8. Timeo ut labōres tantos sustineas. 9. Avārus semper verētur, ut satis habeat. 10. Verebamīni ut pax firma esset.

(b) 1. The cold is so great that the snow will not melt. 2. He praised us, in-order-that he might be praised by us. 3. The multitude of men was so great that it could not be numbered. 4. The multitude is so great that it cannot be numbered. 5. He has come to aid you. 6. They have gone to Rome to aid their father. 7. I sent him home, that he might not be bitten by the dog. 8. He warned his sons not to break the laws. 9. We fear we shall increase your labors. 10. They feared that he would not be acquitted.

LESSON LXXX.

Subjunctive with quōmīnūs, quīn, and other Conjunctions.

472. AFTER verbs of *hindering*, quōmīnūs is more common with the subjunctive than nē. It may generally be translated by *from*, the verb being turned into the participial substantive.

REM.—Quōmīnūs (quō and mīnūs) means literally, *by which the less*, or, *so that the less*; e. g.,

Caiō nihīl obstat quōmīnūs sīt beātūs.

(*Nothing opposes Caius by which he should be the less happy.*)

Nothing prevents Caius from being happy.

473. Quīn with subj.

- | | |
|---|---|
| { | 1. <i>but</i> (as used after <i>negatives</i>). |
| | 2. <i>the relative with not</i> . |
| | 3. <i>as not</i> with <i>infinitive</i> . |
| | 4. <i>that</i> after <i>doubt, deny</i> in <i>negative sentences</i> . |
| | 5. <i>from or without</i> with the <i>participial substantive</i> , after <i>prevent, escape, &c.</i> |

474. Quīn coincides very nearly with *but*; it is, however, generally better translated by some of the other forms given above; e. g.,

- 1) There is nobody, quīn pūtēt { *but thinks.*
who does not think.
- 2) No one is so mad, quīn pūtēt, *as not to think.*
- 3) I do not deny, quīn turpē sīt, *that it is disgraceful.*
- 4) They never saw him, quīn rīdērēt, *without laughing.*

REM.—Quīn with the subjunctive is generally used after negative expressions and those which imply doubt.

475. The following conjunctions are used with the subjunctive; viz.,

Dūm, mōdō, dummōdō, *provided, if only.*

Līcēt, *although.*

O sī (*O if*), ūtīnām, *would that.*

Quamvīs, *however much, however.*

Quāsi, tanquām, *as if.*

REM.—Not after *provided, &c.*, is expressed by *nē*.

476. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Verbs signifying to *abound*, or *be destitute of*, take the ablative; e. g., Nēmō āliōrūm ōpē cārērē pōtest, *no one can be (do) without the assistance of others.*

477. VOCABULARY.

Dūbitārē, āv, āt, *to doubt.*

Interdūm, *sometimes.*

Obstārē, stīt, stāt, *to oppose, prevent.*

Prōvidūs, ā, ūm, *prudent, cautious.*

Terrērē, terru, terrīt, *to terrify.*

478. Exercises.

- (a) 1. Nihil impēdit, quomīnus id facere possīmus.
2. Quid obstat, quomīnus Caius sit beātus? 3. Non

me terrēbis, quomīnus illud faciam. 4. Sapiens nunquam dubitābit, quin immortalis sit anīmus. 5. Nemo est tam bonus ac providus, quin interdum peccet. 6. O si sapiens virtūtem colat! 7. Utīnam hoc verum sit. 8. Sic agis, quāsi me ames.

(b) 1. Nothing prevents you from being happy. 2. Nothing prevents him from doing this. 3. Does any thing prevent you from doing this? 4. We have never doubted that the soul is immortal. 5. Do you doubt that the soul is immortal? 6. There is no one who does not think (473, 2) that you were engaged in the battle. 7. He never saw the shepherd without laughing at him (474, 4). 8. Would that all citizens would observe the laws.

LESSON LXXXI.

Interrogative Sentences.

479. ALL interrogatives take the indicative when the question is put *directly*; as, *nūm crēdīs*, do you believe?

480. *Nūm* and *nē* are merely interrogative particles, and are not construed in direct questions.

481. All interrogatives take the subjunctive when the question is put *indirectly* or *doubtfully*, especially when it depends upon another verb.

482. Double questions take two different constructions, viz.:

- 1) The first clause is introduced by *nūm*, *utrūm*, or *nē*, and the second by *ān*.

- 2) The first clause has no interrogative word, and the second has *an* or *nē*.

483. VOCABULARY.

| | |
|---|--|
| Enūmērārē, av, at, <i>to enumerate, to count up.</i> | Misēr, ěrā, ěrūm, <i>unhappy, miserable.</i> |
| Ignīs, is, m., <i>fire, heat.</i> | Mortālis, ě, <i>mortal.</i> |
| Immōbīlis, ě, <i>immovable, fixed.</i> | Nescirē, iv, it, <i>to be ignorant, not to know.</i> |
| Lōcūplēs, ětis, <i>rich.</i> | Olim, <i>formerly.</i> |
| Majōr, ūs, ōris (<i>comp. of magnus</i>), <i>larger, greater.</i> | Quaestiō, ōnis, <i>question.</i> |
| Mīnōr, ūs, ōris (<i>comp. of parvus</i>), <i>smaller.</i> | Rōtundūs, ā, ūm, <i>round.</i> |
| Mōbīlis, ě, <i>movable.</i> | Undē, <i>whence.</i> |

484. Exercises.

(a) 1. Estne aīmus immortālis? 2. Visne miser esse? 3. Quis enūmēret artium multitudīnem? 4. Nescio, unde sol ignem habeat. 5. Quid dicam nescio. 6. Olim quaestio erat, num terra rotunda esset. 7. Utrum major est sol, an minor, quam terra? 8. Num sol mōbīlis, an immōbīlis? 9. Sumusne immortāles, an mortāles?

(b) 1. Who has come? 2. I do not know who has come. 3. Do not all men wish to live? 4. Do you fear that the king will be conquered? 5. Do you not fear that we shall be condemned to death? 6. What did he say? 7. We do not know what he said. 8. Are they rich or poor? 9. You do not know whether we are rich or poor. 10. Whence does the moon derive (*habēre*) her light? 11. He does not know whence the moon derives her light. 12. Who knows whence the sun derives his light?

LESSON LXXXII.

*Conditional Sentences.—Subjunctive in Relative Clauses
and with Quum.*

485. EVERY conditional sentence consists of two parts, *the condition and the consequence*; e. g.,

Sī quīd hābeāt, dābīt.

If he has any thing, he will give it.

REM.—Here *sī quīd hābeāt* is the *condition*, and *dābīt* the *consequence*.

486. Conditional sentences are of three kinds:

- 1) Those which assume the *condition* to be *true*;
e. g.,

Sī quīd hābēt, dāt.

If he has any thing, he gives it.

- 2) Those which represent the condition as *possible*; e. g.,

Sī quīd hābeāt, dābīt.

If he has any thing, he will give it.

- 3) Those which represent the condition as *impossible*; e. g.,

1. Sī quīd hābērēt, dārēt.

If he had any thing, he would give it.

2. Sī quīd hābuisset, dēdisset.

If he had had any thing, he would have given it.

487. It must be observed:

- 1) That *the condition* is expressed in the first of the above classes by the *indicative*, in the second by the *subjunctive present* or *perfect*, and in the third by the *subjunctive imperfect* or *pluperfect*.

- 2) That *the consequence* is expressed in the first two of these classes by the *indicative* (or sometimes by the *imperative*), and in the third by the *subjunctive imperfect* or *pluperfect*.

488. The relative clause takes the subjunctive:

- 1) When it expresses a *purpose* or *result*; e. g.,
 1. Lēgātōs mīserunt, quī dīcērent.
They sent ambassadors to say (*that they might say*).
 2. Nēquē ēnīm tū īs ēs quī nesciās.
Nor indeed are you such an one as not to know (*who may not know*).
- 2) When it *defines* or *explains* some indefinite antecedent, whether affirmative or negative; e. g.,
 1. Sunt quī pūtent.
There are (some) who think, or some persons think.
 2. Nēmō est, quī haud intēllīgāt.
There is no one who does not understand.

489. Quūm (cūm) takes the subjunctive when it introduces a *cause* or *reason*, or in any way shows the dependence of one event upon another; e. g.,

Quae cūm itā sint.

Since these things (*lit. which things*) are so.

490. Quum, as an adverb of time (*when*), takes the indicative; e. g.,

Itēr faciēbām quūm Balbūm vīdēbām.

I was travelling *when* I saw Balbus.

The use of *quūm* with the *perfect* or *pluperfect subjunctive* to supply the place of a perfect active participle, has already been noticed (367).

491. VOCABULARY.

| | |
|---|--|
| Consulĕrĕ, sŭlu, sult, <i>to consult,</i> <i>ask advice.</i> | Suadĕrĕ, suās, suās, <i>to advise.</i> |
| Natiō, ōnīs, <i>nation.</i> | Sustinĕrĕ, tīnu, tent, <i>to sustain,</i> <i>withstand.</i> |
| Pertimescĕrĕ, tīmu, <i>to fear</i> <i>greatly.</i> | Vulnĕrārĕ, āv, āt, <i>to wound.</i> |

492. Exercises.

(a) 1. Peccāvit, si id fecit. 2. Peccābit, si id faciat. 3. Peccārent, si id facĕrent. 4. Peccavissent, si id fecissent. 5. Si vis beātus, impĕra anīmo. 6. Si me consŭlis, suadeo. 7. Patriam auro, si potuisset, vendidisset. 8. Sunt qui rideant. 9. Erant qui saltavissent. 10. Caesar equitātum, qui sustinĕret hostium impĕtum, misit. 11. Nulla est enim natio quam pertimescāmus.

(b) 1. If he is alive (*lives*), he is now at Athens. 2. If he remains at Athens, he will learn much. 3. If he had gone to Rome, he would have been killed. 4. They would have sold their country, if they could. 5. If the king had been in the city, he would have pardoned you. 6. There were some who were wounded. 7. Since we cannot remain at Rome, we will go to Athens. 8. Caesar had sent two legions to attack (make an attack upon) the enemy.

LESSON LXXXIII.

Participles.

493. PARTICIPLES assume an assertion, which may be formally stated in a sentence whenever it is necessary or convenient to do so; thus, *puĕr rīdens*, may be vari-

ously translated, according to the connection; as, *the boy who laughs, the boy when he laughs, &c.*

494. Participles may sometimes be translated by a relative clause; e. g.,

1. Puēr rīdens { *the boy who laughs.*
 the boy who was laughing.
2. Puēr rīsūrūs, { *the boy who is going to laugh.*
 the boy who will laugh.
3. Puēr āmātūs, *the boy who is (or was) loved.*
4. Puēr āmandūs, *the boy who ought to be loved.*

495. If no substantive is expressed, supply *man, men, he, she, or those, &c.*; e. g.,

1. Rīdentīs, *of him who laughs.*
2. Rīdentiūm, *of those who laugh.*

496. With a neuter plural participle, supply things e. g.,

- Praeterītūrā, { *things that will pass away.*
 what will pass away.

REM.—Participles, being parts of verbs, of course govern the same cases.

497. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs with *when* or *while*; e. g.,

- Rīdens, *when (or while) he is (or was) laughing.*

REM.—In a sentence with *when* or *while*, we often omit the auxiliary verb; e. g.,

Rīdens, *when laughing.*

498. If the participle stands alone, *he, they, a man, men, or one, &c.*, must be supplied as the subject of the verb; e. g.,

1. Rīdens, *when he (or one) is laughing.*
2. Rīdentēs, *when men (or they) are laughing.*

499. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs with *if*; e. g.,

1. Rīdens, *if a man (he or one) laughs.*
2. Amātūs, *if a man (he or one) is loved.*

500. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs with *because*, *for*, *since*, or by participial substantives with *from* or *through*.

501. Dūbītans, {
1. *because I doubt.*
 2. *for I doubt.*
 3. *since I doubt.*
 4. *from doubting.*
 5. *through doubting.*

502. VOCABULARY.

Adulātōr, ōrīs, *flatterer.*

Disjungērē, junx, junct, *to separate.*

Dūrārē, āv, āt, *to last.*

Expellērē, pūl, puls, *to expel, banish.*

Felicitās, ātis, *happiness.*

Immensūs, ā, ūm, *immense.*

Innoxius, ā, ūm, *harmless.*

Intervallūm, ī, *distance, space.*

Perfidiā, ae, *perfidy.*

Perpētuo, *for ever.*

Pervēnirē, vēm, vent, *to arrive at, reach.*

Piūs, ā, ūm, *pious.*

Plācēre, plācu, plācīt, *to please.*

Rēvertērē, vert, vers, *to return, turn back.*

Sātiārē, āv, āt, *to satisfy.*

Vidērī, vīs, *to seem.*

Vitūpērārē, āv, āt, *to reprove, criticise.*

503. Exercises.

(a) 1. Sapiens bona semper placitūra laudat. 2. Pii homīnes ad felicitātem perpetuo duratūram perveniunt. 3. Adulātor aut laudat vituperanda, aut vituperat laudanda. 4. Leōnes satiāti (497) innoxii sunt. 5. Equum emptūrus (499) cave ne decipiāris. 6. Roma expulsus Carthagine puēros docēbit. 7. Respondent

se perfidiam veritos (501) revertisse. 8. Stellae nobis parvae videntur, immenso intervallo a nobis disjunctae.

(b) 1. He who does wrong (494) is never happy. 2. Those who read this book will learn much. 3. There are some who think (488, 2) little of happiness which will not last. 4. The wise prize very highly the happiness which will last for ever. 5. They learned much while remaining at Rome (497). 6. If you love your parents (499), you will obey them. 7. We shall pardon him if condemned. 8. He fled from the city, because he had been accused of bribery (501).

LESSON LXXXIV.

Participles—continued.

504. PARTICIPLES may sometimes be translated by verbs with *though* or *although*; e. g.,

1. Rīdens, *though he laughs.*
2. Amātūs, *though he is (was, &c.) loved.*

505. We often omit the auxiliary verb after *though*, e. g.,

1. Rīdens, *though laughing.*
2. Amātūs, *though loved.*

506. Participles may sometimes be translated by verbs or participial nouns, with *after*; e. g.,

- | | | |
|-------------------|---|--|
| 1. Passūs (Act.), | { | 1. <i>after he has (had) suffered.</i> |
| | | 2. <i>after suffering.</i> |
| 2. Amātūs, | { | 1. <i>after he was (has been) loved.</i> |
| | | 2. <i>after he had been loved.</i> |
| | | 3. <i>after having been loved</i> |

507. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs followed by the conjunction *and*; e. g.

1. Rīdens exclāmāt.

He laughs and exclaims (lit. laughing he exclaims).

2. Rīdens exclāmāvīt.

He laughed and exclaimed.

REM.—In the above examples the participle is construed by the same tense as the accompanying verb; sometimes, however, a different tense must be used; e. g.,

Correptūm lēpōrēm lācērāt.

He has seized the hare and is mangling it.

508. Participles with *nōn* may be translated by participial substantives depending upon the preposition *without*; e. g.,

1. Nōn rīdens, *without laughing.*

2. Nōn amātūs, { 1. *without being loved.*
 { 2. *without loving him.*

3. Vītūpērāt lībrōs nōn intellectōs.

He censures books (not understood) without understanding them.

509. Participles in the ablative absolute may be construed like participles in any other construction, the Latin substantive being translated either by the nominative or the objective; e. g.,

Tarquīniō rēgnantē, *when Tarquin was king.*

Tē sēdentē, *as you were sitting.*

Captā Tŷrō, *after Tyre was taken.*

510. Participles may often be translated by substantives of kindred meaning; e. g.,

Lēgēs violātae, *the violation of the laws* (lit. *the violated laws*).

Vērē apprōpinquantē, *on the approach of spring*.

511. VOCABULARY.

Adventūs, ūs, *approach*.

Antē (*prep. with accus.*), *before*.

Apprōpinquārē, av, at, *to approach*.

Coenā, ae, *supper, feast*.

Cōgnoscērē, nōv, nīt, *to ascertain*.

Comprehendērē, hend, hens, *to arrest, comprehend*.

Intelligērē, lex, lect, *to understand*.

Pōnērē, pōsu, pōsīt, *to place*.

Prōficiscī, prōfect, *to set out, to start*.

Transīrē, i, īt, *to pass over*.

Vēr, vērīs, n., *spring*.

512. Exercises.

(a) 1. Ad coenam vocātus, nondum venit. 2. Multa transīmus ante oculos posīta. 3. Oculus, se non videns, alia videt. 4. Cum legionibus profectus celerīter adēro. 5. Comprehensum homīnem Romam ducēbant. 6. Non petens regnum accēpit. 7. Multi vitupērānt libros non intellectos. 8. His responsis datis, itērum ad eum Caesar legātos mittit. 9. Cognīto Caesāris adventu, legātos ad eum mittunt.

(b) 1. He will not be condemned, although he has been accused of treason. 2. Although invited to the feast, they will not come. 3. They were accused and (507) condemned. 4. He will receive the government without seeking it (508). 5. We censure these boys without knowing them. 6. They were put to death without having been condemned. 7. Having ascertained the approach of our army, the enemy fled. 8. Birds will return on the approach of spring.

LESSON LXXXV.

Derivation of Nouns.

513. WORDS may be formed in two ways; viz.,

- 1) By *derivation*, i. e., by the addition of certain endings to the roots of other words; e. g., *moerōr*, sadness, formed by the addition of *ōr* to *moer*, the root of *moerērē*, to be sad.
- 2) By *composition*, i. e., by the union of two or more words, or their roots; e. g., *běněvōlens*, benevolent, well-wishing, from *běně*, well, and *vōlens*, wishing.

514. Nouns may be derived from other nouns, and from adjectives and verbs.

515. The endings, *lūs*, *lā*, *lūm*, added to the root of nouns, with a connecting vowel (sometimes *ī* or *ō*, but generally *u*, which sometimes takes *c* before it), form *diminutives*; e. g., *hortūlūs* (*hortus*), a little garden.

516. The masculine endings, *īdēs* (or *īdēs*), *ādēs*, and *iādēs*, and the feminine *ās* and *īs*, added to the root of names of persons, form *patronymics* or *names of descent*; e. g., *Priāmīdēs* (*Priamus*), a son or descendant of *Priam*; *Tantālīs* (*Tantalus*), daughter of *Tantalus*.

517. *Atūs*, *ītās*, and *ūrā*, added to the root of nouns, denote *office*, *rank*, or *body of men*; e. g., *consūlātūs* (*consul*), consulship; *cīvītās* (*civis*), state, body of citizens.

518. *Iūm*, added to the root of nouns, denotes the *state* or *condition* of the objects expressed by the primitive; sometimes an *assemblage* of those objects; e. g., *servitiūm* (*servus*), either servitude or domestics.

519. The endings, *ītās*, *iā*, *ītiā*, *ītūdō*, and *tūs* (gen.

tūtīs), added to the root of adjectives, form *abstract nouns*; e. g., *bōnītās* (bonus), goodness; *diligentiā* (diligens), diligence; *multitūdō* (multus), multitude; *virtūs* (vir), virtue, manliness.

520. The endings, *ā* and *ō*, added to the first root of verbs, and *ōr* (fem. *rix*) to the third, denote the *agent* or *person who*; e. g., *scribā* (scribere), a scribe; *bībo* (bibere), a drunkard; *victōr* (vincere), a conqueror.

521. *Or* and *iūm*, added to the first root, and *iō*, *ūs*, and *ūrā* to the third, denote the *action* or *state* expressed by the verb; e. g., *pāvōr* (pavere), fear; *gaudium* (gaudēre), joy; *actiō* (agere, act), an action, &c.

522. *Idō* and *igō*, added to the first root, denote the *abstract* of the primitive; e. g., *cupīdō* (cupere), desire.

523. *Mēn* and *mentūm*, added to the first root, denote the *thing done*, *that by which it is done*, or *that which does*; e. g., *tēgmēn* (tegere), a covering; *flūmēn* (fluere), a stream, river.

524. *Um*, added to the third root, denotes the *action* of the verb, or the *means* or *result* of it; e. g., *tectūm* (tegere), roof, covering; *scriptūm* (scribere), a writing.

525. VOCABULARY.

Adjūvārē, jūv, jūt, *to aid, help.*

Adventūs, ūs (advenire), *approach, arrival.*

Circumdārē, dēd, dāt, *to surround.*

Civītās, ātis (civis), *state.*

Diligentiā, ae (diligens), *diligence.*

Fūgārē, av, at, *to put to flight.*

Hortulūs, ī (hortus), *a little garden.*

Impērātōr, ōris (imperare), *commander.*

Multitūdō, īnis (multus), *multitude.*

Nuntiārē, av, at, *to announce, report.*

Pastōr, ōris (pascere), *shepherd.*

Sēnātūs, ūs (senex), *senate.*

526. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Hortūli nostri multos flores habent. 2. Imperātor quam maxīmas copias comparāvit. 3. Dili-gentia tua labōrem patris adjūvit. 4. Hic nuntius ad-ventum tuum nuntiavērat. 5. Cicerōnem magna po-pūli multitūdo circumdēdit. 6. Pastor fugāvit lupum qui ovem unam momordērat.

(b) 1. Have you seen the shepherd's dog? 2. We went to see the boy's little garden. 3. Let them not come into the senate. 4. He has announced the arrival of the king. 5. Did you not announce the arrival of the leaders? 6. Caesar said that he would put to flight the forces of the enemy. 7. The commander has sent messengers to Rome. 8. The leaders will collect as large forces as possible. 9. The laws of the state have been violated by the commander.

LESSON LXXXVI.

Derivation of Adjectives.

527. ADJECTIVES may be derived from nouns and verbs.

528. The endings, *ālīs*, *ārīs*, *īcūs*, *īlīs*, and *iūs*, added to the root of nouns = *of*, *belonging to*, *related to*; e. g., *rēgālīs* (rex), regal; *pōpūlārīs* (populus), popular; *cīvīlīs* (civis), civil, &c.

529. *Accūs*, *iciūs*, *eūs*, and *inūs*, denote the *material*, the first two sometimes *origin*, and the last two some-times *similarity*; e. g., *pātrīciūs* (pater), patrician; *au-reūs* (aurum), golden, &c.

530. *Osus* and *lentus* (often with connecting vowel *u*), denote *fulness, abundance*; e. g., *āquōsūs* (aqua), watery; *lūtulentūs* (lutum), full of mud.

531. *Aeūs*, *ānūs* (*iānūs*), *iensīs*, and *īnūs*, added to the root of proper names of places, denote *native of, occupant of*; e. g., *Rōmānūs* (Roma), a Roman; *Athēniensīs* (Athenae), an Athenian, &c.

532. *Ariūs* (generally used substantively), denotes *occupation, sometimes pertaining to*; e. g., *consiliāriūs* (consilium), counselling, or a counsellor.

533. *Atūs*, *ītūs*, and *ūtūs* = *furnished with, &c.*; e. g., *aurātūs* (aurum), gilt; *turrītūs* (turreis), turreted, &c.

534. *Stūs* = *being in, having in one's self*; e. g., *rōbustūs* (robur), robust.

535. Adjectives may be derived from verbs by the use of the following endings:

- 1) *Ax* = *having a propensity to perform the action of the verb*; e. g., *ēdax* (edēre), voracious.
- 2) *Bundūs* and *cundūs* = *the strengthened meaning of the present participle used adjectively*; e. g., *mīrābundūs* (mirārī), full of admiration, &c.
- 3) *Idūs* (and sometimes *uūs*) = *the quality indicated by the verb*; e. g., *algīdus* (algēre), cold.
- 4) *Itīs* and *bītīs* = *capable of being, easy to be*; e. g., *dōcītīs* (docēre), easy to be taught, docile; *crēdībītīs* (credēre), capable of being believed, credible.

536. VOCABULARY.

Anūlūs, *i*, a ring.

Athēniensīs, *ē* (Athēnae), *Athenian*.

Carthāgīniensīs, *ē* (Cārthāgo), *Carthaginian*.

Civilīs, *ē* (civis), *civil*.

Fallax, *acīs* (fallēre), *false, deceptive*.

Fabulōsūs, *ā, ūm* (fabūla), *fabulous*.

Gallicūs, ā, ūm (Gallia), *Gallic*,
pertaining to Gaul.

Incredibilis, ē (in and credere),
incredible.

Narrārē, av, at, *to relate.*

Narrātiō, ōnis (narrāre), *narrative, story.*

Octō, *eight.*

Pōpŭlārīs, ē (popŭlus), *popular.*
 Sōcrātēs, īs, *Socrates*, a celebrated Athenian philosopher

Spēcīōsŭs, ā, ūm (species), *specious, plausible.*

Vinēīrē, vinx, vinet, *to bind.*

537. Exercises.

(a) 1. Haec narratio est fabulōsa. 2. Non sum tam imprūdēns, ut verbis speciōsis decipiar. 3. Spe fallāci decepti estis; cavēte ne itērum decipiamīni. 4. Quis credat illud quod incredibile est? 5. Caesar octo libris bellum Gallicum, tribus civīle narrāvit. 6. Athenienses Socrātis damnāti (506) pedem ferro vinxērunt.

(b) 1. Many have been deceived by false hopes. 2. Let us not be deceived by false words. 3. These narratives are incredible. 4. He has given his sister two gold rings. 5. The Romans waged many wars. 6. The Carthaginians were conquered by the Romans. 7. The Athenians condemned Socrates to death. 8. They cannot deceive the judge by specious words. 9. The senator wishes to be popular. 10. They are waging a civil war.

LESSON LXXXVII.

Derivation of Verbs and Adverbs.

538. VERBS may be derived from nouns and adjectives, and from other verbs.

539. Verbs derived from nouns and adjectives are generally called *denominatives*

540. Transitive denominatives end in *ārē* (dep. *ārī*) or *īrē*; e. g., *cūrārē* (cura), to take care of; *fīnārē* (finis), to finish.

541. Intransitive denominatives end in *ērē* or *scērē*; e. g., *flōrērē* (flos), to bloom; *mātūrescērē* (maturus), to become ripe.

REM.—The ending *scērē* is joined to the root by means of a connecting vowel; *e* is the connecting vowel in the above example.

542. Verbs derived from other verbs comprise four distinct classes, viz.: *frequentatives*, *inchoatives*, *desideratives*, and *diminutives*.

543. Frequentatives denote *repeated* or *continued* action, and are formed by the addition of *ārē* or *ītārē* to the third root, except in the first conjugation, where they add *ītārē* to the first root; e. g., *hābītārē* (habēre), to inhabit; *vōlītārē* (volāre), to fly often, to flit.

544. Inchoatives denote the *beginning* or *increase* of an action, and are formed by the addition of *scērē* to the first root with a connecting vowel; e. g., *clārescērē* (clārēre), to grow bright, or clear.

545. Desideratives denote a *desire* to do the action of the primitive, and are formed by adding *ūrērē* to the third root; e. g., *ēsūrērē* (edēre), to desire to eat.

546. Diminutives denote a *feeble* action, and are formed by adding *illārē* to the first root; e. g., *cantillārē* (cantāre), to sing in a feeble voice.

547. Derivative adverbs generally take one of the following endings, viz.:

- 1) When derived from nouns, *tīm*, *ītūs*; e. g., *grēgātīm* (grex), in flocks; *fundītūs* (fundus), from the foundation.
- 2) When derived from adjectives, *ē*, *ē*, *o*, *tēr* (con-

necting vowel *i* except after *n*); e. g., *vērē* (verus), truly; *fācīlē* (facilis), easily; *cītō* (citus), quickly; *fortītēr* (fortis), bravely.

- 3) When derived from verbs, *īm* added to the third root; e. g., *stātīm* (stare, stat), immediately.

548. VOCABULARY.

Cantārē, av, at (canēre), *to sing*.
Cūrārē, av, at (cura), *to take care of*. [guard.

Custōdīrē, iv, it (custos), *to*

Fīnīrē, iv, it (finis), *to finish*.

Flōrescērē (flōrērē), *to begin to bloom*.

Fortītēr (fortis), *bravely*.

Germaniā, ae, *Germany*.

Hābitārē, av, at (habēre), *to inhabit, dwell*.

Lūdūs, i, *play, sport*, pl. *games*.

Nuntiārē, av, at (nuntius), *to announce, report*.

Occultārē, av, at (occulēre), *to hide, conceal*.

Provinciā, ae (pro and vincēre), *province*.

Pūgnārē, av, at (pugna), *to fight*.

Saevīrē, iv or i, it (saevus), *to rage, to be cruel*.

Spectārē, av, at (spēcērē), *to see, look at*.

Stātīm (stare), *immediately*.

Tectūm, i (tegēre), *a covering, roof, house*.

Vigilārē, av, at (vigil), *to watch, remain awake*.

549. Exercises.

(a) 1. Labōrem nostrum finivīmus. 2. Canes tecta nostra custodivērunt. 3. Bellum saevit per Germaniam. 4. Dormivistīne, an vigilāsti? 5. Puellae in horto cantābant. 6. Corpōra nostra curaverāmus. 7. Puēri ludos spectavērunt. 8. Arbōres florescunt. 9. Hic ad summam gloriam florescēbat. 10. Decrevīmus habitāre in provincia. 11. Consilia sua occultavērunt. 12. Si te vidērit, statim curret ad te.

(b) 1. Have they announced your arrival? 2. Who will announce the arrival of the king? 3. Caesar sent

very large forces to guard the city. 4. They have gone into the country to witness the games. 5. They have finished the war. 6. We wish to finish the work. 7. The enemy are said to have fought bravely. 8. The flowers are beginning to bloom in our garden. 9. Do you wish to live (dwell) in the city? 10. We wish to live in the country.

LESSON LXXXVIII.

Composition of Words.

550. PREPOSITIONS often enter into composition with other words, as prefixes.

REM.—Many prepositions undergo no change of form on entering into composition, and merely impart to the simple word their own force. These, of course, require no special notice; others, however, present some peculiarities.

- 1) A, āb, abs = *away from*; e. g., abstīnērē (abs and tēnērē), to abstain from. In substantives and adjectives, it denotes privation; e. g., āmens (ā and mens), without mind, mad.
- 2) Ad = *to* (*d* often assimilated before consonants, except *d*, *j*, *m*, and *v*); e. g., accīpērē (ad and cāpērē), to accept.
- 3) Cōn (cūm) = *with, together*, sometimes *completely* (*co* before *h* and vowels; *com* before *b*, *p*, and sometimes before a vowel; *n* assimilated before *l*, *m*, and *r*); e. g., condūcērē (con and dūcērē), to lead together, collect.
- 4) Dē = *from, down*; e. g., dēdūcērē (dē and dūcērē), to deduce. In substantives and adjectives, *privation*; e. g., dēmens (de and mens), mad.
- 5) E, ex = *out of, thoroughly* (*e* before liquids and *b*, *d*, *g*, and *v*, *ef* before *f*); e. g., expugnāre (ex and pugnāre), to vanquish storm.
- 6) In = *into, on, against* (*im* before *b* and *p*; *i* before *gn*; *n* assimilated before *l*, *m*, and *r*); e. g., incurrērē (in and currērē).

to attack. In adjectives, *not*; e. g., *indignūs* (in and dignus), unworthy.

- 7) Ob = *against* (*b* assimilated before *c, f*, and usually *p*); e. g., *oppōnĕrĕ* (ob and ponĕrĕ), to place against, to oppose.
- 8) Prō = *for, forth* (*pro* before vowels); e. g., *prōpōnĕrĕ* (pro and ponĕrĕ), to set forth, propose.
- 9) Sūb = *under, from below, somewhat* (*b* assimilated before *c, f, g*, and sometimes *m, p*, and *r*; *sub* in a few words); e. g., *subjĕrĕ* (sub and jacĕrĕ), to throw under, to subject.

551. The inseparable prepositions, *amb*, around, about; *dīs* or *dī*, asunder; *rĕ* (*rĕd* before vowels), back, again, away; *sĕ*, without, apart from; and *vĕ*, not, often occur as prefixes in compound words; e. g., *ambīrĕ* (amb and ire), to go round; *dispōnĕrĕ* (dis and ponĕrĕ), to put asunder, to distribute; *rĕdīrĕ* (red and ire), to return; *sĕdūcĕrĕ* (se and ducĕrĕ), to lead apart; *vĕsānūs* (ve and sanus), not sane, insane.

552. Adverbs are sometimes used as prefixes; e. g., *bĕnĕvōlens* (bene and volens), benevolent; *mālĕvōlens* (male and volens), wishing ill, malevolent.

553. Certain vowel-changes often take place in forming compound words; thus, *a, e* and *ae* are often changed into *i* (*a* sometimes into *e*); e. g., *accĭpĕrĕ* (ad and capĕrĕ), *abstĭnĕrĕ* (abs and tenĕrĕ), *occĭdĕrĕ* (ob and caedĕrĕ).

REM. 1.—Having examined the prefixes, we pass to notice a few terminations of frequent occurrence in compound words.

REM. 2.—When the first part of a compound is a noun, the connecting vowel is generally short *i*, as in *āgrĭcŏlā* (ager and colĕrĕ), a husbandman.

554. From *facĕrĕ*, to do, are derived, (1) *fex*, agent; e. g., *artĭfex* (ars and facĕrĕ), an artist; (2) *fĭcĭŭm*, corresponding substantive of thing; e. g., *artĭfĭcĭŭm*, an art; (3) *fĭcŭs*, he who does (*adjectively*); e. g., *bĕnĕfĭcŭs*, beneficent.

555. From *căpěřě*, to take, are derived, (1) *ceps*, agent; e. g., *princeps* (primus and capěre), one who takes the first (place), a prince, a leader; (2) *cĭpiũm*, corresponding substantive of thing; e. g., *princĭpiũm*, a beginning.

556. From *dĭcěřě*, to speak, are derived, (1) *dex*, agent, one who speaks; e. g., *index*, an informer; (2) *dĭciũm*, corresponding substantive of thing; e. g., *indĭciũm*, a disclosure; (3) *dĭcũs* (adj.), speaking; e. g., *mălēdĭcũs*, slanderous.

557. From *căněřě*, to sing; *cěn*, agent; e. g., *tŭbĭcěn* (tuba and caněre), a trumpeter.

558. From *vellě*, to wish; *vĕlens* and *vŏlũs* (adj.), wishing; e. g., *běněvĕlens* and *běněvŏlũs* (bene and velle), benevolent.

559. From *ferrě* and *gěřěřě*, to bear; *fěr* and *gěr*, one who bears; e. g., *Lŭcĭfěr* (lux and ferre), Venus as morning star, the bearer of light; *armĭgěr* (arma and gěřěre), armor-bearer.

560. From *cŏlēřě*, to cultivate; *cŏlă*, one who cultivates, or dwells in; e. g., *ăgrĭcŏlă* (ager and colěre), a field-tiller, a husbandman.

561. VOCABULARY.

Addŭcěřě, dux, duct (ad and ducěre), to bring to.

Attingěřě, tĭg, tact (ad and tan-gěre), to reach, attain.

Conděřě, dĭd, dĭt (con and dare), to found.

Convěnĭřě, vĕn, vent (con and venĭre), to assemble, convene.

Expŭgnărě, av, at (ex and pug-năre), to take by storm.

Incertũs, ă, ũm (in and certus), uncertain.

Incŏlă, ae, m. & f. (in and colěre), an inhabitant.

Invăděřě, văs, văs (in and vaděre), to go against, invade.

Ităliă, ae, Italy.

Obsēs, ĭdĭs, m. & f., hostage.

Occĭděřě, cĭd, căs (ob and caděre), to fall, set.

Occidēre, cīd, cīs (ob and cae-
dēre), *to kill.*

Philōsōphūs, ī, *philosopher.*

Possidēre, ēd, ess, *to possess.*

Princeps, īpīs (primus and
capēre), *the first, a leader,*
chief.

Vērūm, ī, *truth.*

562. Exercises.

(a) 1. Multi philosophi verum non attigērunt. 2. Rex portas urbis clausit hostibus invadentibus. 3. Has terras possidēmus; illas expugnabīmus. 4. Galli Romam expugnavērunt. 5. Sol post montes illos in mare occīdit. 6. Hic unus miles duos aut tres occīdit. 7. Incōlae ad eum legātos misērunt. 8. Caesar omnem senātum ad se convenīre, principumque libēros obsīdes ad se addūci iussit. 9. Incertum est quo tempore Dido Carthagīnem condidērit.

(b) 1. The commander will collect large forces and invade Italy. 2. After having waged war for many years, they took the city by storm. 3. Caesar had ordered all the inhabitants to assemble in his presence. 4. Let us put the invading enemy to flight. 5. Romulus is said to have founded Rome. 6. It is uncertain at what time Carthage was founded. 7. I do not know at what time he returned home. 8. They say that Caius was killed in the first battle.

... the first of the year ...
... the second of the year ...
... the third of the year ...
... the fourth of the year ...
... the fifth of the year ...
... the sixth of the year ...
... the seventh of the year ...
... the eighth of the year ...
... the ninth of the year ...
... the tenth of the year ...
... the eleventh of the year ...
... the twelfth of the year ...
... the thirteenth of the year ...
... the fourteenth of the year ...
... the fifteenth of the year ...
... the sixteenth of the year ...
... the seventeenth of the year ...
... the eighteenth of the year ...
... the nineteenth of the year ...
... the twentieth of the year ...
... the twenty-first of the year ...
... the twenty-second of the year ...
... the twenty-third of the year ...
... the twenty-fourth of the year ...
... the twenty-fifth of the year ...
... the twenty-sixth of the year ...
... the twenty-seventh of the year ...
... the twenty-eighth of the year ...
... the twenty-ninth of the year ...
... the thirtieth of the year ...
... the thirty-first of the year ...

PARADIGMS.

Nouns.—Five Declensions.

563 ENDINGS of the Genitive Singular.

| Dec. I. | Dec. II. | Dec. III. | Dec. IV. | Dec. V. |
|---------|----------|-----------|----------|---------|
| ae, | ī, | īs, | ūs | ēī.* |

REM.—Some Greek nouns are exceptions.

564. Gender in Latin is,

- 1) Natural, when determined by sex, as in English; as, *hōmō* a man, *masc.*; *mūliēr*, a woman, *fem.*
- 2) Grammatical, when not determined by sex; as, *sermō*, a discourse, *masc.*; *laurūs*, a laurel, *fem.*

565. Natural Gender.

| Masculine. | Feminine. | Common. |
|-----------------|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| Names of males. | Names of females. | Names applicable to both sexes. |

566. The grammatical gender of nouns is determined partly by their signification, but principally by their endings.

567. Grammatical Gender, when not determined by nom. ending.

| Masculine. | Feminine. | Neuter. |
|--|---|---|
| Most names of rivers, winds, and months. | Most names of countries, towns, islands, and trees. | Indeclinable nouns and clauses used as nouns. |

REM.—Grammatical gender, as determined by the endings of nouns, will be noticed in connection with the several declensions.

568. *First Declension.*

1. Characteristic *ae*.
2. Nominative endings: Latin *a*; Greek *e*, *as*, and *es*.
3. Grammatical gender: *a* and *e*, *fem.*; *as* and *es*, *masc.*

REM.—Cases coming under previous rules (565 and 567) are, of course, excepted.

* In this ending *e* is long, except in *spēī*, *fīdēī*, and *rēī*.

4. Case-endings.

| | Nom. | Gen. | Dat. | Acc. | Voc. | Abl. |
|--------------|------|-------|------|------|------|------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | ă, | ae, | ae, | ăm, | ă, | ă |
| <i>Plur.</i> | ae, | ărŭm, | is, | ăs, | ae, | is. |

REM.—The declension of Greek nouns presents some exceptions

5. Paradigms.

| 1. Mūsă, a muse. | | | 2. Epitome, an abridgment. | | |
|------------------|--------------|--|----------------------------|--------------|--|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> | | <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> | |
| N. Mūs-ă, | Mūs-ae. | | N. Epitōm-ē, | Epitōm-ae. | |
| G. Mūs-ae, | Mūs-ărŭm. | | G. Epitōm-ēs, | Epitōm-ărŭm. | |
| D. Mūs-ae, | Mūs-is. | | D. Epitōm-ae, | Epitōm-is. | |
| A. Mūs-ăm, | Mūs-ăs. | | A. Epitōm-ēn, | Epitōm-is. | |
| V. Mūs-ă, | Mūs-ae. | | V. Epitōm-ē, | Epitōm-ae. | |
| A. Mūs-ă, | Mūs-is. | | A. Epitōm-ē, | Epitōm-is. | |

| 3. Aenēās (a man's name). | | | 4. Anchīsēs (a man's name). | | |
|---------------------------|--|--|-----------------------------|--|--|
| N. Aenē-ās. | | | N. Anchīs-ēs. | | |
| G. Aenē-ae. | | | G. Anchīs-ae. | | |
| D. Aenē-ae. | | | D. Anchīs-ae. | | |
| A. Aenē-ăm (ăn). | | | A. Anchīs-ēn. | | |
| V. Aenē-ă. | | | V. Anchīs-ē (ă). | | |
| A. Aenē-ă. | | | A. Anchīs-ē (ă). | | |

569. Second Declension.

1. Characteristic *ī*.
2. Nominative endings: Latin, *er, ir, us, um*; Greek, *os* and *on*.
3. Grammatical gender: *um* and *on*, neut.; the rest masculine, except,

- 1) Alvŭs, dŏmŭs, hŭmŭs, and vannŭs, which are *feminine*; pĕlă-gŭs and vĭrŭs, *neuter*; and vulgŭs, generally *neuter*, but sometimes *masculine*.
- 2) Such as come under previous rules.

4. Case-endings.

| | Nom. | Gen. | Dat. | Acc. | Voc. | Abl. |
|--------------|-----------------------|-------|------|------------------------|-----------------------|------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | Nom. end. | ī, | ō, | ŭm, | ē (or like nom.), | ō, |
| <i>Plur.</i> | ī (<i>neut. ā</i>), | ōrŭm, | is, | ōs (<i>neut. ā</i>), | ī (<i>neut. ā</i>), | is. |

REM.—A few Greek nouns are exceptions.

5. Paradigms.

| | | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------|
| Servūs, <i>slave.</i> | Rēgnūm, <i>king- dom.</i> | Gēnēr, <i>son-in- law.</i> | Agēr, <i>field.</i> |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------|

SINGULAR. -

| | | | |
|----------|----------|-----------|---------|
| Serv-ūs. | Rēgn-ūm. | Gēnēr. | Agēr. |
| Serv-ī. | Rēgn-ī. | Gēnēr-ī. | Agr-ī. |
| Serv-ō. | Rēgn-ō. | Gēnēr-ō. | Agr-ō. |
| Serv-ūm. | Rēgn-ūm. | Gēnēr-ūm. | Agr-ūm. |
| Serv-ē. | Rēgn-ūm. | Gēnēr. | Agēr. |
| Serv-ō. | Rēgn-ō. | Gēnēr-ō. | Agr-ō. |

PLURAL.

| | | | |
|------------|------------|-------------|-----------|
| Serv-ī. | Rēgn-ā. | Gēnēr-ī. | Agr-ī. |
| Serv-ōrūm. | Rēgn-ōrūm. | Gēnēr-ōrūm. | Agr-ōrūm. |
| Serv-īs. | Rēgn-īs. | Gēnēr-īs. | Agr-īs. |
| Serv-ōs. | Rēgn-ā. | Gēnēr-ōs. | Agr-ōs. |
| Serv-ī. | Rēgn-ā. | Gēnēr-ī. | Agr-ī. |
| Serv-īs. | Rēgn-īs. | Gēnēr-īs. | Agr-īs. |

REM.—Vīr, *a man*, is declined like *gēnēr*.

6. Paradigms of Greek nouns.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Iliōn, <i>n. (name of a city).</i> | 2. Dēlōs, <i>f. (name of an island).</i> |
| N. Ili-ōn. | N. Dēl-ōs. |
| G. Ili-ī. | G. Dēl-ī. |
| D. Ili-ō. | D. Dēl-ō. |
| A. Ili-ōn. | A. Dēl-ōn. |
| V. Ili-ōn. | V. Dēl-ē. |
| A. Ili-ō. | A. Dēl-ō. |

570. Third Declension.

1. Characteristic īs.

2. Nominative endings: *a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x.*

3 Table of gender in the third declension.

| Masculine. | [Feminine. | Neuter. |
|--|---|---|
| er, or, os, es <i>increasing in gen. and o, except do, go, and io.</i> | do, go, io, as, is, ys, aus, <i>s impure, es not in- creasing in gen. and x.</i> | a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, <i>ur, and us.</i> |

For exceptions, see 579.

4. Classification of nouns of the third declension, according to the formation of root from nominative ending.

| Class I.] | Class II. | Class III. | Class IV. |
|----------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| Root like Nom. | Root adds a let- ter. | Root drops nomi- nating. | Root changes nom. ending. |

5. Masculine and feminine case-endings.

| | Nom. | Gen. | Dat. | Acc. | Voc. | Abl. |
|--------------|------|-----------|-------|-----------|------|--------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | .. | īs, | ī, | ēm, (īm), | .. | ě (ī), |
| <i>Plur.</i> | ēs, | ūm (iūm), | ībūs, | ēs, | ēs, | ībūs. |

REM. 1.—The inclosed endings *īm* and *ī* belong only to a few words.

REM. 2.—The ending *iūm* of the genitive plural occurs in the following classes of nouns; viz.,

- 1) Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*; as, *mārē*, *māriūm*; *ānīmāl*, *ānīmālīūm*.
- 2) Nouns in *is* and *es* of Class III.; as, *hostīs*, *hostiūm*; *nūbēs*, *nūbiūm*.
- 3) All monosyllables in *s* or *x* preceded by a consonant; as, *urbis*, *urbiūm*; *arcis*, *arciūm*.
- 4) Nouns in *ns* and *rs* (though in these *ūm* is sometimes used); as, *cliens*, *clientiūm*; *cohors*, *cohortiūm*.

6. Neuter case-endings.

| | Nom. | Gen. | Dat. | Acc. | Voc. | Ab. |
|--------------|---------|-----------|-------|---------|---------|--------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | .. | īs, | ī, | .. | .. | ě (ī), |
| <i>Plur.</i> | ā (iā), | ūm (iūm), | ībūs, | ā (iā), | ā (iā), | ībūs. |

REM.—The inclosed endings belong to neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*.

571. CLASS I. comprises nouns in *c*,* *l*, *n*, *r*, *t*, and *y*. These either have the root the same as the nominative singular, or form it (with a few exceptions) by one of the following slight vowel-changes:

- 1) Nouns in *tēr* and *bēr* generally drop *e* in the root: as, *pātēr*, a father; root, *patr*.
- 2) Nouns in *ēr* generally change *ě* into *ī* in the root; as, *flūmēr*, a river; root, *flūmīn*.
- 3) Nouns in *ūt* change *ū* into *ī* in the root; as, *cāpūt*, a head; root, *cāpīt*.

REM.—The quantity of the radical vowel is sometimes changed; this is the case in most nouns in *āl* and *ōr*, which generally lengthen the vowel in the root.

572. CLASS II. comprises nouns of the third declension in *a*, *o*, and a few in *i*. These form the root by adding a letter to the nominative singular.

- 1) Nouns in *a*, and a few in *i*, add *t*; as, *poēmā*, a poem; root, *poēmāt*: *hydrōmēlī*, mead; root, *hydrōmēlīt*.
- 2) Nouns in *o* add *n*; as, *leō*, a lion; root, *leōn*.

REM. 1.—*O* is long in the root.

REM. 2.—Nouns in *do* and *go* change *o* into *ī*, before *n* in the root; as, *virgo*, a virgin; root, *virgin*.

* There are only two nouns of this ending, one of which belongs to Class II.

573 CLASS III. comprises nouns of the third declension in *bs*, *ms*, *p*, *x* (= *cs* or *gs*), *is*, *ys*, *e*, a few in *i*,* and a few in *es*. They form the root by dropping the nominative ending.

- 1) Nouns in *bs*, *ms*, *ps*, and *ys*, drop *s*; as, *urbs*, a city; root, *urb*; *hiems*, winter; root, *hiēm*.
- 2) Nouns in *x* (= *cs* or *gs*) drop the *s* in *x*; as, *vox* (*cs*), a voice; root, *vōc*; *rex* (*gs*), a king; root, *rēg*.
- 3) Nouns in *is*, *e*, and a few in *es*, drop those endings; as, *hostis*, an enemy; root, *host*: *nūbēs*, a cloud; root, *nūb*: *mārē*, a sea; root, *mār*.

574. CLASS IV. comprises nouns of the third declension in *as*, *os*, *us*, *ls*, *ns*, *rs*, and most of those in *es*. These form the root by changing *s* into *r*, *t*, or *d*.

- 1) Nouns in *as*, *ls*, *ns*, *rs*, and most of those in *es*, generally change *s* into *t*; as, *piētās*, piety; root, *piētāt*: *mons*, a mountain; root, *mont*: *ābiēs*, a fir-tree; root, *ābiēt*: *mīlēs*, a soldier; root, *mīlūt*. (See REM. 2, below.)

REM. 1.—Masculines in *as*, of Greek origin, insert *n* before *t* in the root; as, *elēphās*, an elephant; root, *elēphant*.

REM. 2.—Many nouns in *es* change *e* into *i*, before *t*, in the root; as, *mīlēs*; root, *mīlit*.

- 2) Nouns in *os* and *us* generally change *s* into *r* or *t*; as, *flōs*, a flower; root, *flōr*: *sācerdōs*, a priest; root, *sācerdōt*: *virtūs*, virtue; root, *virtūt*: *gēnūs*, a kind; root, *gēnēr*: *tempūs*, time; root, *tempōr*.

REM.—Most nouns in *us* change *s* into *r*, and *u* of the nominative becomes *ē* or *ō* in the root, as in these examples.

575. Paradigms.

| Mūliēr, <i>f.</i> , a woman. (root, same as nom. [126].) Singular. Plural. | | Virgō, <i>f.</i> , a virgin. (root, <i>virgīn</i> [131, 2. REM. 2].) Singular. Plural. | |
|---|--------------|---|--------------|
| N. Mūliēr, | Mūliēr-ēs. | N. Virgō, | Virgīn-ēs. |
| G. Mūliēr-īs, | Mūliēr-ūm. | G. Virgīn-īs, | Virgīn-ūm. |
| D. Mūliēr-ī, | Mūliēr-ībūs. | D. Virgīn-ī, | Virgīn-ībūs. |
| A. Mūliēr-ēm, | Mūliēr-ēs. | A. Virgīn-ēm, | Virgīn-ēs. |
| V. Mūliēr, | Mūliēr-ēs. | V. Virgō, | Virgīn-ēs. |
| A. Mūliēr-ē, | Mūliēr-ībūs. | A. Virgīn-ē, | Virgīn-ībūs. |

* Nouns in *i* are of Greek origin: most of these are indeclinable; a few form the root by dropping *i*, and a few by adding *t* (572, 1).

| Rex (gs), m., a king. (root, <i>rĕg</i> [134, 2].) | | Corpūs, n., a body. (root, <i>corpōr</i> [137, 2].) | |
|---|-----------|--|--------------|
| Singular. | Plural | Singular. | Plural |
| N. Rex, | Rĕg-ēs. | N. Corpūs, | Corpōr-ā. |
| G. Rĕg-īs, | Rĕg-ūm. | G. Corpōr-īs, | Corpōr-ūm. |
| D. Rĕg-i, | Rĕg-ībūs. | D. Corpōr-i, | Corpōr-ībūs. |
| A. Rĕg-ēm, | Rĕg-ēs. | A. Corpūs, | Corpōr-ā. |
| V. Rĕx, | Rĕg-ēs. | V. Corpūs, | Corpōr-ā. |
| A. Rĕg-ē, | Rĕg-ībūs. | A. Corpōr-ē, | Corpōr-ībūs. |

GREEK NOUNS.

| Pĕrīclēs (a man's name). | | Hērōs, a hero. | |
|--------------------------|--------|-----------------|---------------|
| Singular. | Plural | Singular. | Plural |
| N. Pĕrīcl-ēs. | | N. Hērō-s, | Hērō-ēs. |
| G. Pĕrīcl-īs. | | G. Hērō-īs, | Hērō-ūm. |
| D. Pĕrīcl-i. | | D. Hērō-i, | Hērō-ībūs. |
| A. Pĕrīcl-ēm (eā). | | A. Hērō-ēm (ā), | Hērō-ēs (ās). |
| V. Pĕrīcl-ēs (ē). | | V. Hērō-s, | Hērō-ēs. |
| A. Pĕrīcl-ē. | | A. Hērō-ē, | Hērō-ībūs. |

576. Fourth Declension.

1. Characteristic *ūs*.
2. Nominative endings: *us* and *u*.
3. Grammatical Gender: *u*, neuter; *us*, masculine; except
Acūs, a needle; *dōmūs*, a house; *mānūs*, a hand; *īdūs*, the *ides*
porticūs, a gallery; *tribūs*, a tribe; which are feminine.

4. Masculine and feminine case-endings.

| | Nom. | Gen. | Dat. | Accus. | Voc. | Abl. |
|--------------|------|------|---------------|--------|------|---------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | ūs, | ūs, | uī, | ūm, | ūs, | ū. |
| <i>Plur.</i> | ūs, | uūm, | ībūs (ūbūs*), | ūs, | ūs, | ībūs (ūbūs*). |

5. Neuter case-endings.

| | Nom. | Gen. | Dat. | Accus. | Voc. | Abl. |
|--------------|------|------|---------------|--------|------|---------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | ū, | ūs, | ū, | ū, | ū, | ū. |
| <i>Plur.</i> | uā, | uūm, | ībūs (ūbūs*), | uā, | uā, | ībūs (ūbūs*). |

* This ending is used only in a few words.

6. Paradigms.

| Fructūs, <i>m.</i> , <i>fruit</i> . (root, <i>fruct.</i>) | | Cornū, <i>n.</i> , <i>a horn</i> . (root, <i>corn.</i>) | |
|---|-------------|---|------------|
| Singular. | Plural. | Singular. | Plural. |
| N. Fruct-ūs, | Fruct-ūs. | N. Corn-ū, | Corn-uā. |
| G. Fruct-ūs, | Fruct-uūm. | G. Corn-ūs, | Corn-uūm. |
| D. Fruct-uī, | Fruct-ībūs. | D. Corn-ū, | Corn-ībūs. |
| A. Fruct-ūm, | Fruct-ūs. | A. Corn-ū, | Corn-uā. |
| V. Fruct-ūs, | Fruct-ūs. | V. Corn-ū, | Corn-uā. |
| A. Fruct-ū, | Fruct-ībūs. | A. Corn-ū, | Corn-ībūs. |

577. *Fifth Declension.*

1. Characteristic *ēī*.*
2. Nominative ending : *es*.
3. Grammatical gender *feminine*, except *diēs*, a day (*m.* and *f.* in singular, and *m.* in plural), and *mēridiēs*, mid-day (*masc.*).
4. Case-endings.

| | Nom. | Gen. | Dat. | Accus. | Voc. | Abl. |
|--------------|------|-------|-------|--------|------|-------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | ēs, | ēī,* | ēī,* | ēm, | ēs, | ē. |
| <i>Plur.</i> | ēs, | ērūm, | ēbūs, | ēs, | ēs, | ēbūs. |

5. Paradigms.

| Rēs, <i>f.</i> , <i>a thing</i> . (root, <i>r.</i>) | | Diēs, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i> , <i>a day</i> . (root, <i>di.</i>) | |
|---|---------|---|----------|
| Singular. | Plural. | Singular. | Plural. |
| N. R-ēs, | R-ēs. | N. Di-ēs, | Di-ēs. |
| G. R-ēī, | R-ērūm. | G. Di-ēī, | Di-ērūm. |
| D. R-ēī, | R-ēbūs. | D. Di-ēī, | Di-ēbūs. |
| A. R-ēm, | R-ēs. | A. Di-ēm, | Di-ēs. |
| V. R-ēs, | R-ēs. | V. Di-ēs, | Di-ēs. |
| A. R-ē, | R-ēbūs. | A. Di-ē, | Di-ēbūs. |

578. *Case-endings of Substantives.*

| SINGULAR. | | | | | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|-----------|--------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| | Dec. I. | Dec. II. | | Dec. III. | | Dec. IV. | | Dec. V. |
| | <i>F.</i> | <i>M.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>M. & F.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>M.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>F.</i> |
| N. | ā. | ūs, ēr, īr, | ūm. | various. | | ūs. | ū. | ēs. |
| G. | ae. | ī. | | īs. | | ūs. | | ēī.* |
| D. | ae. | ō. | | ī. | | uī. | ū. | ēī.* |
| A. | ām. | ūm. | | ēm (īm), like nom. | | ūm. | ū. | ēm. |
| V. | ā. | ē, ēr, īr, | ūm. | like nom. | | ūs. | ū. | ēs. |
| A. | ā. | ō. | | ē (ī). | | ū. | | ē. |

* In the ending of the gen. and dat. sing. *e* is long, except in *spēs* (where it is short), *fidei*, and *rei* (where it is common).

| PLURAL. | | | | | | | | | |
|---------|---------|----------|----|-----------|----------|--------------|-----|--------|--|
| | Dec. I. | Dec. II. | | Dec. III. | | Dec. IV. | | Dec. V | |
| | F. | M. | N. | M. & F. | N. | M. | N. | F. | |
| N. | ae. | ī. | ā. | ēs. | ā or iā. | ūs. | uā. | ēs. | |
| G. | ārūm. | ōrūm. | | ūm (iūm). | | uūm. | | ērūm. | |
| D. | īs. | īs. | | ībūs. | | ībūs (ūbūs). | | ēbūs. | |
| A. | ās. | ōs. | ā. | ēs. | ā or iā. | ūs. | uā. | ēs. | |
| V. | ae. | ī. | ā. | ēs. | ā or iā. | ūs. | uā. | ēs. | |
| A. | īs. | īs. | | ībūs. | | ībūs (ūbūs). | | ēbūs. | |

REM.—The above table presents the endings of all nouns in the Latin language, except a few derived from the Greek.

579. Table of Genders.

I. NATURAL GENDER.

| Masculine. | Feminine. | Common. |
|-----------------|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| Names of males. | Names of females. | Names applicable to both sexes. |

II. GRAMMATICAL GENDER, independent of nominative ending.

| Masculine. | Feminine. | Neuter. |
|--|---|--|
| Most names of rivers, winds, and months. | Most names of countries, towns, islands, and trees. | Indeclinable nouns, and clauses used as nouns. |

III. GRAMMATICAL GENDER, as determined by nominative ending.

| | Masculine. | Feminine. | Neuter. |
|-----------|---|--|-------------------------------------|
| Dec. I. | as, es. | a, e. | |
| Dec. II. | er, us, os.* | | um, on. |
| Dec. III. | er, or, os, es, <i>increasing in gen., o except do, go, and io.</i> | do, go, io, as, is, ys, aus, s <i>impure</i> , x, es <i>not increasing in gen.</i> | a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us. |
| Dec. IV. | us. | | u. |
| Dec. V. | | es. | |

Principal Exceptions.†

SECOND DECLENSION.

Alvūs dōmūs, hūmūs, and vannūs, are *feminine*; pēlāgūs and vīrūs, *neuter*; vulgūs, generally *neuter*, sometimes *masculine*.

* Nouns in *ir* have natural gender.

† This list of exceptions contains some whose gender is not grammatical. They are given here for convenience of reference.

THIRD DECLENSION.

1) MASCULINES.

(do and go.) Cărdă, cômădă, harpăgă, ordă, ūnădă, lîgă, and bargă
(the last sometimes *fem.*).

(as.) As and Greek nouns in *as* (gen. *antis*).

(is.) Amăg, angăis, axăis, cassăis, cînăis (or *f.*), collăis, crînăis, ensăis, fascăis, fînăis (or *f.*), follăis, fûnăis, ignăis, lăpăis, mensăis, orbăis, pănăis, pi-căis. postăis, pulvăis, sanguăis, torrăis, unguăis, vectăis, and vermăis.

(s *impure*) Adeps, dens, fons, forceps (or *f.*), mons, pons, quadrans, and rūdens.

(x.) Călix, cōdex, cortex, grex, pollex, thōrax, and vertex.

(l.) Săl and sōl.

(n.) Liăn, pectăn, răn, and many words of Greek origin.

(ur.) Furfūr, turtūr, and vultūr.

(us.) Lăpūs and mūs.

2) FEMININES.

(or and os.) Arbōr, cōs, and dōs.

(es *increasing*.) Compēs, mercēs, mergēs, quiēs, rēquiēs, sēgēs, and tēgēs.

(o.) Cără, ēchō, and Argō.

(us.) Grūs (*m.*), incūs, jūventūs, pālūs, pēcūs (ŭdīs), sālūs, sēnectūs, servītūs, sūs (*m.*), tellūs, and virtūs.

3) NEUTERS.

(er.) Cădăvēr, itēr, tūbēr, ūbēr, vēr, verbēr, and names of plants in *er*.

(or.) Adōr, aequōr, cōr, and marmōr.

(as and es.) Fās, nēfās, vās, and aes.

(os.) Os (ōrīs), ōs (ossīs), and the Greek words, *chaōs*, *ēpōs*, *ēthōs*, and *mēlōs*.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Acūs, idūs, mănūs, porticūs, and tribūs, are feminine.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Diēs and mēridiēs are masculine, though the former is sometimes *fem.* in *sing.*

580. *Adjectives.—First and second Declension.*

1. Case-endings of adjectives of the first and second declension.

| | Singular. | | | Plural. | | | A few; have Sing. thus : | | |
|----|-----------|-----|-----|---------|-------|-------|--------------------------|------|------|
| | M. | F. | N. | M. | F. | N. | M. | F. | N. |
| | 2.* | 1. | 2. | 2. | 1. | 2. | | | |
| N. | ūs, ēr, † | ā, | ūm. | ī, | ae, | ā. | ūs, ēr, | ā, | ūm. |
| G. | ī, | ae, | ī. | ōrūm, | ārūm, | ōrūm. | iūs, | iūs, | iūs. |
| D. | ō, | ae, | ō. | īs, | īs, | īs. | ī, | ī, | ī. |
| A. | ūm, | ām, | ūm. | ōs, | ās, | ā. | ūm, | ām, | ūm. |
| V. | ē, ēr, † | ā, | ūm. | ī, | ae, | ā. | ē, ēr, | ā, | ūm. |
| A. | ō, | ā, | ō. | īs, | īs, | īs. | ō, | ā, | ō. |

2. Paradigms.

| Singular. | | | Plural. | | |
|-----------|---------|---------|-----------|-------|-------|
| N. | Bōn-ūs, | ā, ūm; | Bōn-ī, | ae, | ā. |
| G. | Bon-ī, | ae, ī; | Bōn-ōrūm, | ārūm, | ōrūm. |
| D. | Bon-ō, | ae, ō; | Bōn-īs, | īs, | īs. |
| A. | Bon-ūm, | ām, ūm; | Bōn-ōs, | ās, | ā. |
| V. | Bon-ē, | ā, ūm; | Bōn-ī, | ae, | ā. |
| A. | Bon-ō, | ā, ō; | Bōn-īs, | īs, | īs. |

Tēnēr, *tender* : root, *tēnēr* (*e* not dropped).

| Singular. | | | Plural. | | |
|-----------|-----------|---------|-------------|-------|-------|
| N. | Tēnēr, | ā, ūm; | Tēnēr-ī, | ae, | ā. |
| G. | Tēnēr-ī, | ae, ī; | Tēnēr-ōrūm, | ārūm, | ōrūm. |
| D. | Tēnēr-ō, | ae, ō; | Tēnēr-īs, | īs, | īs. |
| A. | Tēnēr-ūm, | ām, ūm; | Tēnēr-ōs, | ās, | ā. |
| V. | Tēnēr, | ā, ūm; | Tēnēr-ī, | ae, | ā. |
| A. | Tēnēr-ō, | ā, ō; | Tēnēr-īs, | īs, | īs. |

REM. 1.—Most adjectives in *ēr* drop *ē* before *r* of the root in all genders.REM. 2.—The following adjectives have the genitive singular in *iūs* (the *i* is generally short in *alterius*), and the dative singular in *ī* in all genders, viz.: *aliūs*, another; *nullūs*, no one; *solūs*, alone; *totūs*, the whole; *ullūs*, any; *unūs*, one; *altēr*, the other; *neutēr*, neither; and *utēr*, which (of the two).581. *Adjectives of the Third Declension.*

1. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes, viz. :

* The declensions of the different genders are here indicated by numerals.

† In adjectives in *ēr*, the *masc. nom. sing.* is generally the root (*ē* is sometimes dropped): *ēr*, therefore, is not properly a *case-ending*; it is given merely to show the termination of the *nom.* and *voc. sing.*, without regard to the root (107).

‡ See list, 113, REM.

1) Those which have three different forms in the nominative singular (one for each gender).

2) Those which have two (the *masc.* and *fem.* being the same).

3) Those which have but one (the same for all genders).

2. Adjectives of the third declension are declined in their several genders like nouns of the same *declension*, *gender*, and *ending*. It must, however, be observed,

1) That those which have only one form in the nominative singular have the abl. sing. in *ě* or *ī*, and the rest, with the exception of comparatives, in *ī* only.

2) That all except comparatives have, in the *plural*, the *nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc. neuter* in *iā*, and the *genitive* in *iūm*.

3. Paradigms.

CLASS I.

Acěr, *sharp*.

| Singular. | | | Plural. | | |
|------------|---------|---------|--------------|-----------|-----------|
| M. | F. | N. | M. | F. | N. |
| N. Acěr, | ācr-īs, | ācr-ě. | N. Acr-ēs, | ācr-ēs, | ācr-iā. |
| G. Acr-īs, | ācr-īs, | ācr-īs. | G. Acr-iūm, | ācr-iūm, | ācr-iūm. |
| D. Acr-ī, | ācr-ī, | ācr-ī. | D. Acr-ībūs, | ācr-ībūs, | ācr-ībūs. |
| A. Acr-ēm, | ācr-ēm, | ācr-ě. | A. Acr-ēs, | ācr-ēs, | ācr-iā. |
| V. Acěr, | ācr-īs, | ācr-ě. | V. Acr-ēs, | ācr-ēs, | ācr-iā. |
| A. Acr-ī, | ācr-ī, | ācr-ī. | A. Acr-ībūs, | ācr-ībūs, | ācr-ībūs. |

CLASS II.

1. Tristīs, *sad*.

| Singular. | | Plural. | |
|--------------|-----------|----------------|-------------|
| M. & F. | N. | M. & F. | N. |
| N. Trist-īs, | trist-ě. | N. Trist-ēs, | trist-iā. |
| G. Trist-īs, | trist-īs. | G. Trist-iūm, | trist-iūm. |
| D. Trist-ī, | trist-ī. | D. Trist-ībūs, | trist-ībūs. |
| A. Trist-ēm, | trist-ě. | A. Trist-ēs, | trist-iā. |
| V. Trist-īs, | trist-ě. | V. Trist-ēs, | trist-iā. |
| A. Trist-ī, | trist-ī. | A. Trist-ībūs, | trist-ībūs. |

2. Tristiōr (*comparative*), *more sad*.

| | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|-------------------|----------------|
| N. Tristiōr, | tristiūs. | N. Tristiōr-ēs, | tristiōr-ā. |
| G. Tristiōr-īs, | tristiōr-īs. | G. Tristiōr-ūm, | tristiōr-ūm. |
| D. Tristiōr-ī, | tristiōr-ī. | D. Tristiōr-ībūs, | tristiōr-ībūs. |
| A. Tristiōr-ēm, | tristiūs. | A. Tristiōr-ēs, | tristiōr-ā. |
| V. Tristiōr, | tristiūs. | V. Tristiōr-ēs, | tristiōr-ā. |
| A. Tristiōr-ě (ī), | tristiōr-ě (ī). | A. Tristiōr-ībūs, | tristiōr-ībūs. |

CLASS III.

Felix, happy.

| Singular. | | Plural. | |
|-----------------|--------------|----------------|-------------|
| M. & F. | N. | M. & F. | N. |
| N. Felix, | felix. | N. Felic-ēs, | felic-iā. |
| G. Felic-is, | felic-is. | G. Felic-iūm, | felic-iūm. |
| D. Felic-i, | felic-i. | D. Felic-ibūs. | felic-ibūs. |
| A. Felic-ēm, | felix. | A. Felic-ēs, | felic-iā. |
| V. Felix, | felix. | V. Felic-ēs, | felic-iā. |
| A. Felic-ē (i), | felic-ē (i). | A. Felic-ibūs, | felic-ibūs. |

582. Comparison of Adjectives.

In Latin, adjectives are compared by adding to the root of the positive the following endings:

| Comparative. | | | Superlative. | | |
|------------------------|-------|--------------------|---------------------|---------|----------|
| M. | F. | N. | M. | F. | N. |
| iōr, | iōr, | iūs. | issimūs, | issimā, | issimūm. |
| Examples. | Root. | Comparative. | Superlative. | | |
| Altūs (<i>high</i>), | alt. | altiōr (iōr, iūs), | altissimūs (ā, ūm). | | |
| Mītīs (<i>mild</i>), | mīt. | mītiōr (iōr, iūs), | mītissimūs (ā, ūm). | | |

REM. 1.—Adjectives in *ēr* add *rīmūs* (ā, ūm) to the positive, to form the superlative; e. g.,

Pulchēr, pulchriōr, pulcherrimūs.

REM. 2.—A few adjectives in *lis* form the superlative by adding *līmūs* to the root of the positive; e. g.,

| | | |
|----------------------------------|--------------|----------------|
| Fācilīs (<i>easy</i>), | fāciliōr, | fācillimūs. |
| Diffīcilīs (<i>difficult</i>), | diffīciliōr, | diffīcillimūs. |
| Sīmīlīs (<i>like</i>), | sīmīliōr, | sīmīllimūs. |
| Dissīmīlīs (<i>unlike</i>), | dissīmīliōr, | dissīmīllimūs. |

REM. 3.—The following adjectives are quite irregular in their comparison, viz.:

| | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|-----------|
| Bōnūs (<i>good</i>), | mēliōr, | optīmūs. |
| Mālūs (<i>bad</i>), | pejōr, | pessīmūs. |
| Māgnūs (<i>great</i>), | majōr, | maxīmūs. |
| Parvūs (<i>little</i>), | mīnōr, | mīnimūs, |
| Multūs (<i>much</i>), | plūs (pl. plūrēs, plūrā), | plūrimūs. |

583. Numerals.*

| | Cardinals. | Ordinals. | Distributives. | Adverbs. |
|---|--------------------|------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1 | Unūs, <i>one</i> . | Prīmūs, <i>first</i> . | Singūlī, <i>one by one</i> . | Sēmēl, <i>once</i> . |
| 2 | Duō. | Sēcundūs. | Bīnī. | Bīs. |
| 3 | Trēs. | Tertiūs. | Ternī. | Tēr. |

* See Numerals, p. 145.

| | | | | |
|----|-----------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| 4 | Quattuor. | Quartūs. | Quāternī. | Quāter. |
| 5 | Quinquē. | Quintūs. | Quīnī. | Quinquies. |
| 6 | Sex. | Sextūs. | Sēnī. | Sexies. |
| 7 | Septem. | Septimūs. | Septēnī. | Septies. |
| 8 | Octō. | Octāvūs. | Octōnī. | Octies. |
| 9 | Nōvem. | Nōnūs. | Nōvēnī. | Nōvies. |
| 10 | Dēcēm. | Dēcimūs. | Dēnī. | Dēcies. |

584. *Substantive Pronouns.*

| SINGULAR. | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|---|
| 1st Person. | 2d Person. | 3d Person. |
| N. Egō, <i>I.</i> | Tū, <i>thou.</i> | { Suī, <i>of himself, herself, itself.</i> Sībī, <i>to himself, &c.</i> Sē, <i>himself.</i> |
| G. Meī, <i>of me.</i> | Tuī, <i>of thee.</i> | |
| D. Mihī, <i>to or for me.</i> | Tībī, <i>to or for thee.</i> | |
| A. Mē, <i>me.</i> | Tē, <i>thee.</i> | Sē, <i>with himself.</i> |
| V. | Tū, <i>O thou.</i> | |
| A. Mē, <i>with, &c., me.</i> | Tē, <i>with thee.</i> | |

| PLURAL. | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|---|
| 1st Person. | 2d Person. | 3d Person. |
| N. Nōs <i>we.</i> | Vōs, <i>ye or you.</i> | { Suī, <i>of themselves.</i> Sībī, <i>to themselves.</i> Sē, <i>themselves.</i> |
| G. Nostrūm, } <i>of us.</i> | Vestrūm } <i>of you.</i> | |
| D. Nōbīs, <i>to us.</i> | Vōbīs, <i>to you.</i> | |
| A. Nōs, <i>us.</i> | Vōs, <i>you.</i> | Sē, <i>with themselves.</i> |
| V. | Vōs, <i>O ye or you.</i> | |
| A. Nōbīs, <i>with us.</i> | Vōbīs, <i>with you.</i> | |

585. *Adjective Pronouns.*

I. The *Possessive Pronouns* (so called because they denote possession), *meūs, meā, meūm*; *tuūs, tuā, tuūm*; *suūs, suā, suūm*; *noštēr, nostrā, nostrūm*; *vestēr, vestrā, vestrūm*, are declined, as we have already seen (114, REM. 3), like adjectives of the first and second declension.

II. *Demonstrative Pronouns* (so called because they point out or specify the objects to which they refer), are *hic, illē, istē, is*, and *their compounds*, and are declined as follows:

| Singular. | | | Plural. | | |
|-----------|--------|--------|---------|--------|--------|
| M. | F. | N. | M. | F. | N. |
| N. Hic, | haec, | hōc. | Hī, | hae, | haec. |
| G. Hujūs, | hujūs, | hujūs. | Hōrūm, | hārūm, | hōrūm. |
| D. Huīc, | huīc, | huīc. | Hīs, | hīs, | hīs. |
| A. Hunc, | hanc, | hōc. | Hōs, | hās, | haec. |
| V. | | | | | |
| A. Hōc, | hāc, | hōc. | Hīs, | hīs, | hīs. |

2. Illē, *he or that.*

| Singular. | | | Plural. | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> |
| N. Illē, | illā, | illū. | Illī, | illae, | illā. |
| G. Illūs, | illūs, | illūs. | Illōrum, | illārum, | illōrum. |
| D. Illī, | illī, | illī. | Illīs, | illīs, | illīs. |
| A. Illūm, | illām, | illū. | Illōs, | illās, | illā. |
| V. | | | | | |
| A. Illō, | illā, | illō. | Illīs, | illīs, | illīs. |

3. Istē, *that.*

Istē, *that*, is declined like *illē*. It usually refers to objects which are present to the person addressed, and sometimes expresses contempt.

4. Is, *he or that.*

(Less specific than *illē*.)

| Singular. | | | Plural. | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> |
| N. Is, | eā, | īd. | Iī, | eae, | eā. |
| G. Ejūs, | ejūs, | ejūs. | Eōrum, | eārum, | eōrum. |
| D. Eī, | eī, | eī. | Iīs or eīs, | iīs or eīs, | iīs or eīs. |
| A. Eūm, | eām, | īd. | Eōs, | eās, | eā. |
| V. | | | | | |
| A. Eō, | eā, | eō. | Iīs or eīs, | iīs or eīs, | iīs or eīs. |

5. Idēm, *the same.*

(Formed by annexing *dēm* to *īs*.)

| Singular. | | | Plural. | | |
|-------------|-----------|-----------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> |
| N. Idēm, | eādēm, | īdēm. | Iīdēm, | eaedēm, | eādēm. |
| G. Ejusdēm, | ejudēm, | ejusdēm. | Eōrundēm, | eārundēm, | eōrundēm. |
| D. Eidēm, | eidēm, | eidēm. | Eisdēm, or Iisdēm, | eisdēm, or iisdēm, | eisdēm, or iisdēm. |
| A. Eundēm, | eandēm, | īdēm. | Eōsdēm, | eāsdēm, | eādēm. |
| V. | | | | | |
| A. Eōdēm, | eādēm, | eōdēm. | Eisdēm, or Iisdēm, | eisdēm, or iisdēm. | eisdēm, or iisdēm. |

III. The *Intensive Pronoun*, *ipsē*, *himself*, is so called because it is used to render an object *emphatic*. It is declined as follows:

| Singular. | | | Plural. | | |
|------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> |
| N. Ipsē, | ipsā, | ipsū. | Ipsī, | ipsae, | ipsā. |
| G. Ipsius, | ipsius, | ipsius. | Ipsōrum, | ipsarum, | ipsorum. |
| D. Ipsī, | ipsī, | ipsī. | Ipsīs, | ipsīs, | ipsīs. |
| A. Ipsū, | ipsā, | ipsū. | Ipsōs, | ipsās, | ipsā. |
| V. | | | | | |
| A. Ipsō, | ipsā, | ipsō. | Ipsīs, | ipsīs, | ipsīs. |

IV. The *Relative Pronoun*, *quī*, who, is so called because it always relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent. It is declined as follows :

| Singular. | | | Plural. | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> |
| N. Quī, | quae, | quōd. | Quī, | quae, | quae. |
| G. Cujūs, | cujūs, | cujūs. | Quōrum, | quarum, | quorum. |
| D. Cuī, | cuī, | cuī. | Quībūs, | quībūs, | quībūs. |
| A. Quēm, | quā, | quōd. | Quōs, | quās, | quae. |
| V. | | | | | |
| A. Quō, | quā, | quō. | Quībūs, | quībūs, | quībūs. |

V. The *Interrogative Pronouns*, *quīs* and *quī*, are so called because they are used in asking questions. *Quī* (which? what?) is used *adjectively*, and is declined like the relative. *Quīs* (who? which? what?) is generally used *substantively*, and is declined like the relative, except in the forms *quīs*, nom. masc., and *quīd*, nom. and acc. neut.

VI. *Indefinite Pronouns* are so called because they do not definitely specify the objects to which they refer; e. g., *quīdā*, a certain one; *āliquīs*, some one; *quisquē*, every one; *siquīs*, if any, &c. They are compounds either of *quīs* or *quī*, and are declined in nearly the same manner as the simple pronouns.

REM.—The compounds of *quīs* generally take *quīd* in the *neut. sing.* when used *substantively*, and *quōd* when used *adjectively*. Some of those compounds, as *āliquīs*, *siquīs*, take *quā* (not *quae*) in the *fem. sing.* and *neut. plur.*

586. *Paradigm of the verb Essē.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

| PRESENT (<i>am</i>). | |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| Singular. | Plural. |
| Sūm, <i>I am.</i> | Sūmūs, <i>we are.</i> |
| Es, <i>thou art.</i> | Estīs, <i>you are.</i> |
| Est, <i>he is.</i> | Sunt, <i>they are.</i> |

IMPERFECT (*was*).

| Singular. | Plural. |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| Erām, <i>I was.</i> | Erāmūs, <i>we were.</i> |
| Erās, <i>thou wast.</i> | Erātīs, <i>you were.</i> |
| Erāt, <i>he was.</i> | Erant, <i>they were.</i> |

FUTURE (*shall or will be*).

| | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Erō, <i>I shall be.</i> | Erīmūs, <i>we shall be.</i> |
| Eris, <i>thou wilt be.</i> | Erītīs, <i>you will be.</i> |
| Erīt, <i>he will be.</i> | Erunt, <i>they will be.</i> |

PERFECT (*have been or was*).

| | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Fuī, <i>I have been.</i> | Fuimūs, <i>we have been.</i> |
| Fuistī, <i>thou hast been.</i> | Fuistīs, <i>you have been.</i> |
| Fuīt, <i>he has been.</i> | Fuerunt, <i>they have been.</i> |
| | Fuere, <i>they have been.</i> |

PLUPERFECT (*had been*).

| | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Fuērām, <i>I had been.</i> | Fuērāmūs, <i>we had been.</i> |
| Fuērās, <i>thou hadst been.</i> | Fuērātīs, <i>you had been.</i> |
| Fuērāt, <i>he had been.</i> | Fuērant, <i>they had been.</i> |

FUTURE PERFECT (*shall or will have been*).

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Fuērō, <i>I shall have been.</i> | Fuērīmūs, <i>we shall have been.</i> |
| Fuērīs, <i>thou wilt have been.</i> | Fuērītīs, <i>you will have been.</i> |
| Fuērīt, <i>he will have been.</i> | Fuērint, <i>they will have been.</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (*may or can be*).

| | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| Sīm, <i>I may be.</i> | Sīmūs, <i>we may be.</i> |
| Sīs, <i>thou mayest be.</i> | Sītīs, <i>you may be.</i> |
| Sīt, <i>he may be.</i> | Sint, <i>they may be.</i> |

IMPERFECT (*might, could, would, or should be*).

| | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Essēm, <i>I might be.</i> | Essēmūs, <i>we might be.</i> |
| Essēs, <i>thou mightest be.</i> | Essētīs, <i>you might be.</i> |
| Essēt, <i>he might be.</i> | Essent, <i>they might be.</i> |

PERFECT (*may have been*).

| | |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Fuērīm, <i>I may have been.</i> | Fuērīmūs, <i>we may have been.</i> |
| Fuērīs, <i>thou mayest have been.</i> | Fuērītīs, <i>you may have been.</i> |
| Fuērīt, <i>he may have been.</i> | Fuērint, <i>they may have been.</i> |

PLUPERFECT (*might, could, would, or should have been*).

| | |
|--|--|
| Fuissēm, <i>I might have been.</i> | Fuissēmūs, <i>we might have been.</i> |
| Fuissēs, <i>thou mightest have been.</i> | Fuissētīs, <i>you might have been.</i> |
| Fuissēt, <i>he might have been.</i> | Fuissent, <i>they might have been.</i> |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| Singular. | Plural. |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Es, or estō, <i>be thou.</i> | Estě or estōtě, <i>be ye.</i> |
| Estō, <i>let him be.</i> | Suntō, <i>let them be.</i> |

INFINITIVE MOOD.

| | |
|----------|--|
| PRESENT, | Essě, <i>to be.</i> |
| PERFECT, | Fuissě, <i>to have been.</i> |
| FUTURE, | Fütürüs (ă, ūm) essě, <i>to be about to be</i> |

PARTICIPLE.

| | |
|---------|-------------------------------------|
| FUTURE, | Fütürüs, ă, ūm, <i>about to be.</i> |
|---------|-------------------------------------|

587. Regular Verbs.—Four Conjugations.

1. Infinitive endings.

| 1. | 2. | 3. | 4. |
|------|------|------|------|
| ărě, | ěrě, | ěrě, | irě. |

2. Favorite vowels.

| 1. | 2. | 3. | 4. |
|----|----|--------|----|
| ă, | ě, | ě (ĩ), | ĩ |

588. FIRST CONJUGATION (Inf. ending ărě).

1. Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots.

| 2. | 3. |
|-----|-----|
| āv, | ăt. |

2. Paradigm.

Amărě, *to love*: 1st root, ăm; 2d, ămāv; 3d, ămat.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

| Active, <i>I love.</i> | | Passive, <i>I am loved.</i> | |
|------------------------|----------|-----------------------------|-----------|
| Singular. | Plural | Singular. | Plural |
| Am-ő, | Am-ămūs, | Am-ör, | Am-ămūr, |
| Am-ās, | Am-ătīs, | Am-ăris (rě), | Am-ămīnī, |
| Am-ăt; | Am-ant. | Am-ătūr; | Am-antūr. |

IMPERFECT, *was loving*; *was loved.*

| | | | |
|----------|------------|-----------------|-------------|
| Am-ăbām, | Am-ăbāmūs, | Am-ăbār, | Am-ăbāmūr, |
| Am-ăbās, | Am-ăbătīs, | Am-ăbăris (rě), | Am-ăbămīnī, |
| Am-ăbăt; | Am-ăbant. | Am-ăbătūr; | Am-ăbantūr |

FUTURE, *will love; will be loved.*

| Singular. | Plural. | Singular. | Plural. |
|-----------|------------|-----------------|-------------|
| Am-ābō, | Am-ābimūs, | Am-ābōr, | Am-ābimūr, |
| Am-ābīs, | Am-ābitīs, | Am-ābērīs (rē), | Am-ābīmīnī, |
| Am-ābit; | Am-ābunt. | Am-ābitūr; | Am-ābuntūr. |

PERFECT, *have loved; have been loved.*

| | | | |
|------------|-------------------|---------------|---------------|
| Amāv-ī, | Amāv-īmūs, | Amāt-ūs sūm,* | Amāt-ī sūmūs, |
| Amāv-istī, | Amāv-istīs, | Amāt-ūs ēs, | Amāt-ī estīs, |
| Amāv-īt; | Amāv-erunt (ērē). | Amāt-ūs est; | Amāt-ī sunt. |

PLUPERFECT, *had loved; had been loved.*

| | | | |
|------------|--------------|----------------|----------------|
| Amāv-ērām, | Amāv-ērāmūs, | Amāt-ūs ērām,* | Amāt-ī ērāmūs, |
| Amāv-ērās, | Amāv-ērātīs, | Amāt-ūs ērās, | Amāt-ī ērātīs, |
| Amāv-ērāt; | Amāv-erant. | Amāt-ūs ērāt; | Amāt-ī erant. |

FUTURE PERFECT, *will have loved; will have been loved.*

| | | | |
|------------|--------------|---------------|----------------|
| Amāv-ērō, | Amāv-ērīmūs, | Amāt-ūs ērō,* | Amāt-ī ērimūs, |
| Amāv-erīs, | Amāv-ērītīs, | Amāt-ūs erīs, | Amāt-ī erītīs, |
| Amāv-erīt; | Amāv-erint. | Amāt-ūs erīt; | Amāt-ī erunt. |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *may love; may be loved.*

| | | | |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----------|
| Am-ēm, | Am-ēmūs, | Am-ēr, | Am-ēmūr |
| Am-ēs, | Am-ētīs, | Am-ērīs (rē), | Am-ēmīnī, |
| Am-ēt; | Am-ent. | Am-ētūr; | Am-entūr |

IMPERFECT, *might love; might be loved.*

| | | | |
|----------|------------|-----------------|-------------|
| Am-ārēm, | Am-ārēmūs, | Am-ārēr, | Am-ārēmūr, |
| Am-ārēs, | Am-ārētīs, | Am-ārērīs (rē), | Am-ārēmīnī, |
| Am-ārēt, | Am-arent. | Am-ārētūr; | Am-arentūr. |

PERFECT, *may have loved; may have been loved.*

| | | | |
|------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| Amāv-ērīm, | Amāv-ērīmūs, | Amāt-ūs sīm,† | Amāt-ī sīmūs, |
| Amāv-erīs, | Amāv-erītīs, | Amāt-ūs sīs, | Amāt-ī sitīs, |
| Amāv-erīt; | Amāv-erint. | Amāt-ūs sīt; | Amāt-ī sint. |

PLUPERFECT, *might have loved; might have been loved.*

| | | | |
|-------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Amāv-issēm, | Amāv-issēmūs, | Amāt-ūs essēm,† | Amāt-ī essēmūs, |
| Amāv-issēs, | Amāv-issētīs, | Amāt-ūs essēs, | Amāt-ī essētīs, |
| Amāv-issēt; | Amāv-issent. | Amāt-ūs essēt; | Amāt-ī essent. |

* See 331, N.

† See 332, N.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| Singular. | Plural. | Singular. | Plural. |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|----------|
| Am-ā, <i>or</i> ām-ātō, | Am-ātē, <i>or</i> ām-ātōtē, | Am-ārē, <i>or</i> ām-ātōr, | Am-āmīni |
| Am-ātō; | Am-antō. | Am-ātōr; | Am-antōr |

INFINITIVE MOOD.

| | | |
|-------|-----------------|---------------|
| PRES. | Am-ārē. | Am-ārī. |
| PERF. | Amāv-issē. | Amāt-ūs essē. |
| FUT. | Amāt-ūrūs essē. | Amāt-ūm irī. |

PARTICIPLES.

| | | | |
|-------|------------|-------|-----------|
| PRES. | Am-ans. | PERF. | Amāt-ūs. |
| FUT. | Amāt-ūrūs. | FUT. | Am-andūs. |

GERUND.

Am-andī, andō, andūm, andō.

SUPINES.

| | |
|----------|---------|
| Amāt-ūm. | Amāt-ū. |
|----------|---------|

589. SECOND CONJUGATION (Inf. ending *ērē*).

1. Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots.

| | |
|----------|-----|
| 2. | 3. |
| u (ēv),* | īt. |

2. Paradigm.

Mōnērē, *to advise* : 1st root, *mōn* ; 2d, *mōnu* ; 3d, *mōnūt*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

| Active, <i>I advise</i> . | | Passive, <i>I am advised</i> . | |
|---------------------------|-----------|--------------------------------|------------|
| Singular. | Plural. | Singular. | Plural. |
| Mōn-eō, | Mōn-ēmūs, | Mōn-eōr, | Mōn-ēmūr, |
| Mōn-es, | Mōn-ētīs, | Mōn-ērīs (rē), | Mōn-ēmīni, |
| Mōn-ēt; | Mōn-ent. | Mōn-ētūr; | Mon-entūr. |

IMPERFECT, *was advising* ; *was advised*.

| | | | |
|-----------|-------------|------------------|--------------|
| Mōn-ēbām, | Mōn-ēbāmūs, | Mōn-ēbār, | Mōn-ēbāmūr, |
| Mōn-ēbās, | Mōn-ēbātīs, | Mōn-ēbārīs (rē), | Mōn-ēbāmīni, |
| Mōn-ēbāt; | Mōn-ēbant. | Mōn-ēbātūr; | Mōn-ēbantūr |

FUTURE, *shall advise* ; *shall be advised*.

| | | | |
|-----------|-------------|------------------|--------------|
| Mōn-ēbō, | Mōn-ēbīmūs, | Mōn-ēbōr, | Mōn-ēbīmūr, |
| Mōn-ēbīs, | Mōn-ēbītīs, | Mōn-ēbērīs (rē), | Mōn-ēbīmīni, |
| Mōn-ēbīt; | Mōn-ēbunt. | Mōn-ēbītūr; | Mōn-ēbuntūr. |

* See 192, N.

PERFECT, *have advised; have been advised.*

| Singular. | Plural. | Singular. | Plural. |
|------------|-------------------|----------------|----------------|
| Mönu-ī, | Mönu-īmūs, | Mönit-ūs sūm,* | Mönit-ī sūmūs, |
| Mönu-istī, | Mönu-istīs, | Mönit-ūs ēs, | Mönit-ī estīs, |
| Mönu-īt; | Mönu-ērunt (ērē). | Mönit-ūs est; | Mönit-ī sunt. |

PLUPERFECT, *had advised; had been advised.*

| | | | |
|------------|--------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Mönu-ērām, | Mönu-ērāmūs, | Mönit-ūs ērām,* | Mönit-ī ērāmūs, |
| Mönu-ērās, | Mönu-ērātīs, | Mönit-ūs ērās, | Mönit-ī ērātīs, |
| Mönu-ērāt; | Mönu-erant. | Mönit-ūs ērāt; | Mönit-ī erant. |

FUTURE PERFECT, *shall have advised; shall have been advised.*

| | | | |
|------------|--------------|----------------|-----------------|
| Mönu-ērō, | Mönu-ērīmūs, | Mönit-ūs ērō,* | Mönit-ī ērīmūs, |
| Mönu-ērīs, | Mönu-ērītīs, | Mönit-ūs ērīs, | Mönit-ī ērītīs, |
| Mönu-ērīt; | Mönu-erint. | Mönit-ūs ērīt; | Mönit-ī erunt. |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *may advise; may be advised.*

| | | | |
|----------|------------|-----------------|-------------|
| Mön-eām, | Mön-eāmūs, | Mön-eār, | Mön-eāmūr, |
| Mön-eās, | Mön-eātīs, | Mön-eārīs (rē), | Mön-eāminī, |
| Mön-eāt; | Mön-eant. | Mön-eātūr; | Mön-eantūr. |

IMPERFECT, *might advise; might be advised.*

| | | | |
|-----------|-------------|------------------|--------------|
| Mön-ērēm, | Mön-ērēmūs, | Mön-ērēr, | Mön-ērēmūr, |
| Mön-ērēs, | Mön-ērētīs, | Mön-ērērīs (rē), | Mön-ērēminī, |
| Mön-ērēt; | Mön-erent. | Mön-ērētūr; | Mön-erentūr. |

PERFECT, *may have advised; may have been advised.*

| | | | |
|------------|--------------|----------------|----------------|
| Mönu-ērīm | Mönu-ērīmūs, | Mönit-ūs sīm,† | Mönit-ī sīmūs, |
| Mönu-ērīs, | Mönu-ērītīs, | Mönit-ūs sis, | Mönit-ī sitīs, |
| Mönu-ērīt; | Mönu-erint. | Mönit-ūs sīt; | Mönit-ī sint. |

PLUPERFECT, *might have advised; might have been advised.*

| | | | |
|-------------|---------------|------------------|------------------|
| Mönu-issēm, | Mönu-issēmūs, | Mönit-ūs essēm,† | Mönit-ī essēmūs, |
| Mönu-issēs, | Mönu-issētīs, | Mönit-ūs essēs, | Mönit-ī essētīs, |
| Mönu-issēt; | Mönu-issent. | Mönit-ūs essēt; | Mönit-ī essent. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| | | | |
|-------------|---------------|--------------|------------|
| Mön-ē, | Mön-ētē, | Mön-ērē, | Mön-ēmīnī, |
| or mön-ētō, | or mön-ētötē, | or mön-ētör, | |
| Mön-ētō; | Mön-entō. | Mön-ëtör; | Mön-entör. |

* See 331 N.

† See 332, N.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

| | | | |
|-------|------------------|--|----------------|
| PRES. | Mõn-ērē. | | Mõn-ērī. |
| PERF. | Mõnu-issē. | | Mõnit-ūs essē. |
| FUT. | Mõnit-ūrūs essē. | | Mõnit-ūm irī. |

PARTICIPLES.

| | | | |
|-------|-------------|--|------------|
| PRES. | Mõn-ens. | | Mõnit-ūs. |
| FUT. | Mõnit-ūrūs. | | Mõn-endūs. |

GERUND.

Mõn-endī, endō, endūm, endō.

SUPINES.

| | | |
|-----------|--|----------|
| Mõnit-ūm. | | Mõnit-ū. |
|-----------|--|----------|

590. THIRD CONJUGATION (Inf. ending *ērē*).

1. Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots.

2d, *s*, or *like 1st*; 3d, *t*, sometimes *s*.

2. Paradigm.

Rēgērē, to rule: 1st root, *rēg*; 2d, *rex*; 3d, *rect*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

| Act., <i>I rule</i> . | | Pass., <i>I am ruled</i> . | |
|-----------------------|-----------|----------------------------|------------|
| Singular. | Plural. | Singular. | Plural. |
| Rēg-ō, | Rēgīmūs, | Rēg-ōr, | Rēg-īmūr, |
| Rēg-īs, | Rēg-ītīs, | Rēg-ērīs (rē), | Rēg-īmīnī, |
| Rēg-īt; | Rēg-unt. | Rēg-ītūr; | Rēg-untūr. |

IMPERFECT, *was ruling*; *was ruled*.

| | | | |
|-----------|-------------|------------------|--------------|
| Rēg-ēbām, | Rēg-ēbāmūs, | Rēg-ēbār, | Rēg-ēbāmūr, |
| Rēg-ēbās, | Rēg-ēbātīs, | Rēg-ēbārīs (rē), | Rēg-ēbāmīnī, |
| Rēg-ēbāt; | Rēg-ēbant. | Rēg-ēbātūr; | Rēg-ēbantūr. |

FUTURE, *shall rule*; *shall be ruled*.

| | | | |
|---------|-----------|----------------|------------|
| Rēg-ām, | Rēg-ēmūs, | Rēg-ār, | Rēg-ēmūr, |
| Rēg-ēs, | Rēg-ētīs, | Rēg-ērīs (rē), | Rēg-ēmīnī, |
| Rēg-ēt; | Rēg-ent. | Rēg-ētūr; | Rēg-entūr |

PERFECT, *have ruled; have been ruled.*

| Singular. | Plural. | Singular. | Plural. |
|-----------|------------------|---------------|---------------|
| Rex-ī, | Rex-īmūs, | Rect-ūs sūm,* | Rect-ī sūmūs, |
| Rex-istī, | Rex-istīs, | Rect-ūs ēs, | Rect-ī estīs, |
| Rex-īt; | Rex-ērunt (ērē). | Rect-ūs est; | Rect-ī sunt. |

PLUPERFECT, *had ruled; had been ruled.*

| | | | |
|-----------|-------------|----------------|----------------|
| Rex-ērām, | Rex-ērāmūs, | Rect-ūs ērām,* | Rect-ī ērāmūs, |
| Rex-ērās, | Rex-ērātīs, | Rect-ūs ērās, | Rect-ī ērātīs, |
| Rex-ērāt; | Rex-ērant. | Rect-ūs ērāt; | Rect-ī ērant. |

FUTURE PERFECT, *shall have ruled; shall have been ruled.*

| | | | |
|-----------|-------------|---------------|----------------|
| Rex-ērō, | Rex-ērīmūs, | Rect-ūs ērō,* | Rect-ī ērīmūs, |
| Rex-ērīs, | Rex-ērītīs, | Rect-ūs ērīs, | Rect-ī ērītīs, |
| Rex-ērīt; | Rex-ērint. | Rect-ūs ērīt; | Rect-ī ērint. |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *may rule; may be ruled.*

| | | | |
|---------|-----------|----------------|------------|
| Rēg-ām, | Rēg-āmūs, | Rēg-ār, | Rēg-āmūr, |
| Rēg-ās, | Rēg-ātīs, | Rēg-ārīs (rē), | Rēg-āmīnī, |
| Rēg-āt; | Rēg-ant. | Rēg-ātūr; | Rēg-antūr. |

IMPERFECT, *might rule; might be ruled.*

| | | | |
|-----------|-------------|------------------|--------------|
| Rēg-ērēm, | Rēg-ērēmūs, | Rēg-ērēr, | Rēg-ērēmūr, |
| Rēg-ērēs, | Rēg-ērētīs, | Rēg-ērērīs (rē), | Rēg-ērēmīnī. |
| Rēg-ērēt; | Rēg-erent. | Rēg-ērētūr, | Rēg-erentūr. |

PERFECT, *may have ruled; may have been ruled.*

| | | | |
|-----------|-------------|---------------|---------------|
| Rex-ērīm, | Rex-ērīmūs, | Rect-ūs sīm,† | Rect-ī sīmūs |
| Rex-ērīs, | Rex-ērītīs, | Rect-ūs sīs, | Rect-ī sītīs, |
| Rex-ērīt; | Rex-erint. | Rect-ūs sīt; | Rect-ī sint. |

PLUPERFECT, *might have ruled; might have been ruled.*

| | | | |
|------------|--------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Rex-issēm, | Rex-issēmūs, | Rect-ūs essēm,† | Rect-ī essēmūs, |
| Rex-issēs, | Rex-issētīs, | Rect-ūs essēs, | Rect-ī essētīs, |
| Rex-issēt; | Rex-issent. | Rect-ūs essēt; | Rect-ī essent. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| | | | |
|-------------|---------------|--------------|------------|
| Rēg-ē, | Rēg-ītē, | Rēg-ērē, | Rēg-īmīnī, |
| or rēg-ītō, | or rēg-ītōtē, | or rēg-ītōr, | |
| Rēg-ītō; | Rēg-untō. | Rēg-ītōr; | Rēg-untōr. |

* See 331, N.

† See 332, N.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

| | | | |
|-------|-----------------|--|---------------|
| PRES. | Rĕg-ĕrĕ. | | Rĕg-L |
| PERF | Rex-issĕ. | | Rect-ūs essĕ. |
| FUT. | Rect-ūrūs essĕ. | | Rect-ūm irĭ. |

PARTICIPLES.

| | | | | |
|-------|------------|--|-------|-----------|
| PRES. | Rĕg-ens. | | PERF. | Rect-ūs. |
| FUT. | Rect-ūrūs. | | FUT. | Rĕg-endūs |

GERUND.

Rĕg-endī, endō, endūm, endō.

SUPINES.

| | | |
|----------|--|---------|
| Rect-ūm. | | Rect-ū. |
|----------|--|---------|

3. Paradigm of verbs in i ō of the third conjugation.

Căpĕrĕ, to take : 1st root, *căp* ; 2d, *cĕp* ; 3d, *capl*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

| <i>Active.</i> | | <i>Passive.</i> | |
|----------------|-----------|-----------------|-------------|
| Singular. | Plural. | Singular. | Plural. |
| Căp-iŏ, | Căp-īmūs, | Căp-iŏr, | Căp-īmūr, |
| Căp-iŭ, | Căp-ītīs, | Căp-ĕrīs (rĕ), | Căp-īmīnī, |
| Căp-īt ; | Căp-iunt. | Căp-ītūr ; | Căp-iuntūr. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | | |
|-------------|--------------|-------------------|---------------|
| Căp-iĕbām, | Căp-iĕbāmūs, | Căp-iĕbār, | Căp-iĕbāmūr, |
| Căp-iĕbās, | Căp-iĕbātīs, | Căp-iĕbārīs (rĕ), | Căp-iĕbāmīnī, |
| Căp-iĕbāt ; | Căp-iĕbant. | Căp-iĕbātūr ; | Căp-iĕbantūr. |

FUTURE.

| | | | |
|-----------|------------|-----------------|-------------|
| Căp-iām, | Căp-iēmūs, | Căp-iār, | Căp-iēmūr, |
| Căp-iās, | Căp-iētīs, | Căp-iērīs (rĕ), | Căp-iēmīnī, |
| Căp-iēt ; | Căp-ient. | Căp-iētūr ; | Căp-ientūr. |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

| | | | |
|-----------|------------|-----------------|-------------|
| Căp-iām, | Căp-iāmūs, | Căp-iār, | Căp-iāmūr, |
| Căp-iās, | Căp-iātīs, | Căp-iārīs (rĕ), | Căp-iāmīnī, |
| Căp-iāt . | Căp-iant. | Căp-iātūr ; | Căp-iantūr. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.


3d PL. Căp-iuntō. | 3d PL. Căp-iuntōr.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Căp-iens. | Fut. Căp-iendūs.

GERUND.

Căp-iendi, dō, &c.

 The other parts of verbs in i ō are entirely regular.

591. FOURTH CONJUGATION (Inf. ending īrē).

1. Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots.

2d, īv; 3d, īt.

2. Paradigm.

Audīrē, *to hear*: 1st root, *aud*; 2d, *audīv*; 3d, *audīt*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

| Act., <i>I hear</i> . | | Pass., <i>I am heard</i> . | |
|-----------------------|-----------|----------------------------|-------------|
| Singular. | Plural. | Singular. | Plural. |
| Aud-iō, | Aud-īmūs, | Aud-iōr, | Aud-īmūr, |
| Aud-īs, | Aud-ītīs, | Aud-īrīs (rē), | Aud-īmīnī, |
| Aud-īt; | Aud-iunt. | Aud-ītūr; | Aud-iuntūr. |

IMPERFECT, *was hearing*; *was heard*.

| | | | |
|------------|--------------|-------------------|---------------|
| Aud-iēbām, | Aud-iēbāmūs, | Aud-iēbār, | Aud-iēbāmūr, |
| Aud-iēbās, | Aud-iēbātīs, | Aud-iēbārīs (rē), | Aud-iēbāmīnī, |
| Aud-iēbāt; | Aud-iēbant. | Aud-iēbātūr; | Aud-iēbantūr |

FUTURE, *shall hear*; *shall be heard*.

| | | | |
|----------|------------|-----------------|-------------|
| Aud-iām, | Aud-iēmūs, | Aud-iār, | Aud-iēmūr, |
| Aud-iēs, | Aud-iētīs, | Aud-iērīs (rē), | Aud-iēmīnī, |
| Aud-iēt; | Aud-ient. | Aud-iētūr; | Aud-iēntūr. |

PERFECT, *have heard*; *have been heard*.

| | | | |
|-------------|-------------------|----------------|----------------|
| Audīv-ī, | Audīv-īmūs, | Audit-ūs sūm,* | Audit-ī sūmūs, |
| Audīv-istī, | Audīv-istīs, | Audit-ūs ēs, | Audit-ī estīs, |
| Audīv-īt; | Audīv-ērunt(ērē). | Audit-ūs est; | Audit-ī sunt. |

* See 331, N.

PLUPERFECT, *had heard; had been heard.*

| | | | |
|-------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Audiv-ěram, | Audiv-ěramūs, | Audit-ūs ěram,* | Audit-i ěramūs, |
| Audiv-ěrās, | Audiv-ěrātīs, | Audit-ūs ěrās, | Audit-i ěrātīs, |
| Audiv-erăt; | Audiv-erant. | Audit-ūs ěrăt; | Audit-i ěrant |

FUTURE PERFECT, *shall have heard; shall have been heard.*

| | | | |
|-------------|---------------|----------------|-----------------|
| Audiv-ěrō, | Audiv-ěrīmūs, | Audit-ūs ěrō,* | Audit-i ěrīmūs, |
| Audiv-ěrīs, | Audiv-ěrītīs, | Audit-ūs ěrīs, | Audit-i ěrītīs, |
| Audiv-ěrīt; | Audiv-ěrint. | Audit-ūs ěrīt; | Audit-i ěrunt. |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *may hear; may be heard.*

| | | | |
|----------|------------|-----------------|-------------|
| Aud-iām, | Aud-iāmūs, | Aud-iār, | Aud-iāmūr, |
| Aud-iās, | Aud-iātīs, | Aud-iārīs (rě), | Aud-iāmīni, |
| Aud-iăt; | Aud-iant. | Aud-iătūr; | Aud-iantūr. |

IMPERFECT, *might hear; might be heard.*

| | | | |
|-----------|-------------|------------------|--------------|
| Aud-irēm, | Aud-irēmūs, | Aud-irēr, | Aud-irēmūr, |
| Aud-irēs, | Aud-irētīs, | Aud-irērīs (rě), | Aud-irēmīni, |
| Aud-irět; | Aud-irent. | Aud-irětūr; | Aud-irentūr. |

PERFECT, *may have heard; may have been heard.*

| | | | |
|-------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|
| Audiv-ěrīm, | Audiv-ěrīmūs, | Audit-ūs sīm,† | Audit-i sīmūs, |
| Audiv-ěrīs, | Audiv-ěrītīs, | Audit-ūs sīs, | Audit-i sītīs, |
| Audiv-ěrīt; | Audiv-ěrint. | Audit-ūs sīt; | Audit-i sint. |

PLUPERFECT, *might have heard; might have been heard.*

| | | | |
|--------------|----------------|------------------|------------------|
| Audiv-issēm, | Audiv-issēmūs, | Audit-ūs essēm,† | Audit-i essēmūs, |
| Audiv-issēs, | Audiv-issētīs, | Audit-ūs essēs, | Audit-i essētīs, |
| Audiv-issět; | Audiv-issent. | Audit-ūs essět; | Audit-i essent. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| | | | |
|-------------|---------------|--------------|-------------|
| Aud-i, | Aud-itě, | Aud-irě, | Aud-imīni, |
| or aud-itō, | or aud-itōtě, | or aud-itōr, | |
| Aud-itō; | Aud-iuntě. | Aud-itōr; | Aud-iuntōr. |

INFINITIVE MOOD.

| | | |
|-------|------------------|----------------|
| PRES. | Aud-irě. | Aud-irī. |
| PERF. | Audiv-issě. | Audit-ūs essě. |
| FUT. | Audit-ūrūs essě. | Audit-ūm irī. |

* See 331, N.

† See 332, N

PARTICIPLES.

| | | | | |
|-------|-------------|--|-------|-------------|
| PRES. | Aud-iens. | | PERF. | Audit-ūs. |
| FUT. | Audit-ūrūs. | | FUT. | Aud-iendūs. |

GERUND.

Aud-iendī, iendō, iendūm, iendā.

SUPINES.

| | | |
|-----------|--|----------|
| Audit-ūm. | | Audit-ū. |
|-----------|--|----------|

592. *Formation of Second Root.*

| | | | | | | |
|----------|--|-----------|--|------------|--|-----------|
| Conj. I. | | Conj. II. | | Conj. III. | | Conj. IV. |
|----------|--|-----------|--|------------|--|-----------|

REGULAR.

| | | | | | | |
|-----|--|----------|--|---------------------|--|----|
| āv. | | u or ēv. | | s or like 1st root. | | iv |
|-----|--|----------|--|---------------------|--|----|

FIRST IRREGULARITY.

| | | | | | | |
|------------------------------|--|------------------------------|--|---|--|------------------------------|
| Radical vowel lengthened. | | radical vowel lengthened. | | radical vowel lengthened (and often changed). | | radical vowel lengthened. |
|------------------------------|--|------------------------------|--|---|--|------------------------------|

SECOND IRREGULARITY.

| | | | | | |
|----------------|--|----------------|--|----------------|--|
| Reduplication. | | reduplication. | | reduplication. | |
|----------------|--|----------------|--|----------------|--|

THIRD IRREGULARITY.

| | | | | | | |
|------------------------|--|------------------------|--|-------------------------------|--|------------------------------|
| Analogy of 2d conj. | | analogy of 3d conj. | | analogy of 2d or 4th conj. | | analogy of 2d or 3d conj. |
|------------------------|--|------------------------|--|-------------------------------|--|------------------------------|

593. *Deponent Verbs.*

Deponent verbs are such as have a *passive form*, but an *active meaning*. They take, however, all the four participles; e. g.,

- 1) Lōquens, *speaking*; 2) lōcūtūs, *having spoken*; 3) lōcūtūrūs, *about to speak*; 4) lōquendūs, *to be spoken*.

REM.—The past participle of a deponent verb is the participle of the *perfect active*, which other verbs do not have.

Irregular Verbs.

594. Paradigm of Possē,* to be able.

2d root, pōtu.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. Possūm, pōtēs, pōtest, possūmūs, pōtestīs, possunt.

Imp. pōtērām; Fut. pōtērō; Perf. pōtu-ī; Pluperf. pōtu-ērām; Fut. Perf. pōtu-ērō.

* For the conjugation of the simple verb, *esse*, see 586.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. possīm; *Imp.* possēm; *Perf.* pōtu-ērīm; *Pluperf.* pōtu-issēm.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. possē; *Perf.* pōtu-issē.

PARTICIPLE.

Pōtens (used as an adjective, powerful).

595. Paradigms of *Vellē* (to be willing) and its compounds.

| | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| Vellē. | Nollē. | Mallē. |
| 2d root, <i>vōlu</i> . | 2d root, <i>nōlu</i> . | 2d root, <i>mālu</i> . |

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

| | | |
|----------|------------|-----------|
| Vōlō, | Nōlō, | Mālō, |
| Vis, | Nonvis, | Māvis, |
| Vult; | Nonvult; | Māvult; |
| Vōlūmūs, | Nōlūmūs, | Mālūmūs, |
| Vultis, | Nonvultis, | Māvultis, |
| Vōlunt. | Nōlunt. | Mālunt. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| Vōl-ēbām, bās, &c. | Nōl-ēbām, bās, &c. | Māl-ēbām, bās, &c. |
|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|

FUTURE.

| | | |
|---------|---------|---------|
| Vōl-ām. | Nōl-ām. | Māl-ām. |
|---------|---------|---------|

PERFECT.

| | | |
|---------|---------|---------|
| Vōlu-l. | Nōlu-l. | Mālu-l. |
|---------|---------|---------|

PLUPERFECT.

| | | |
|------------|------------|------------|
| Vōlu-ērām. | Nōlu-ērām. | Mālu-ērām. |
|------------|------------|------------|

FUTURE PERFECT.

| | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| Vōlu-ērō. | Nōlu-ērō. | Mālu-ērō. |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

| | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Vēl-īm, is, &c. | Nōl-īm, is, &c. | Māl-īm, is, &c. |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|------------------|----------|----------|
| Vell-ēm, ēs, &c. | Noll-ēm. | Mall-ēm. |
|------------------|----------|----------|

PERFECT.

| | | |
|------------|------------|------------|
| Vōlu-ērīm. | Nōlu-ērīm. | Mālu-ērīm. |
|------------|------------|------------|

PLUPERFECT.

| | | |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| Vōlu-issēm. | Nōlu-issēm. | Mālu-issēm. |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|

IMPERATIVE.

| | | |
|--|-------------------|--|
| | Nōl-i or itō. | |
| | Nōl-itē or itōtē. | |

INFINITIVE.

| | | | | |
|------------------|--|------------|--|------------|
| PRES. Vellē. | | Nollē. | | Mallē. |
| PERF. Vōlu-issē. | | Nōlu-issē. | | Mālu-issē. |

PARTICIPLES.

| | | | |
|---------|--|---------|--|
| Vōlena. | | Nōlena. | |
|---------|--|---------|--|

196. Paradigm of *Ferrē*, to bear.

2d root, *tūl*; 3d, *lāt*.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

| <i>Active.</i> | | <i>Passive.</i> |
|---|--|--|
| Fēr-ō, fer-s, fer-t, fēr-īmūs, fer-tīs, fēr-unt. | | Fēr-ōr, fer-rīs, fer-tūr, fēr-īmūr, fēr-īmīnī, fēr-untūr. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|--------------------|--|----------------------|
| Fēr-ēbām, bās, &c. | | Fēr-ēbār, bārīs, &c. |
|--------------------|--|----------------------|

FUTURE.

| | | |
|-----------------|--|-------------------|
| Fēr-ām, ēs, &c. | | Fēr-ār, ērīs, &c. |
|-----------------|--|-------------------|

PERFECT.

| | | |
|------------------|--|---------------------|
| Tūl-i, istī, &c. | | Lāt-ūs sūm, ēs, &c. |
|------------------|--|---------------------|

PLUPERFECT.

| | | |
|-------------------|--|------------------|
| Tūl-ērām, ās, &c. | | Lāt-ūs ērām, &c. |
|-------------------|--|------------------|

FUTURE PERFECT.

| | | |
|--------------|--|-----------------|
| Tūl-ērō, &c. | | Lāt-ūs ērō, &c. |
|--------------|--|-----------------|

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

| | | |
|-----------------|--|-------------------|
| Fēr-ām, ās, &c. | | Fēr-ār, ārīs, &c. |
|-----------------|--|-------------------|

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|-------------------|--|---------------------|
| Fer-rēm, rēs, &c. | | Fer-rēr, rērīs, &c. |
|-------------------|--|---------------------|

PERFECT.

| | | |
|---------------|--|-----------------|
| Tūl-ērīm, &c. | | Lāt-ūs sīm, &c. |
|---------------|--|-----------------|

PLUPERFECT.

| | | |
|------------|--|-------------------|
| Tūl-issēm. | | Lāt-ūs essēm, &c. |
|------------|--|-------------------|

IMPERATIVE.

| <i>Active.</i> | | <i>Passive.</i> |
|----------------------|--|---------------------|
| Fēr, or fertō, | | Fer-rě, or fer-tōr, |
| Fer-tō; | | Fer-tōr; |
| Fer-tě, or fer-tōtě, | | Fěr-īmīnī, |
| Fěr-untō. | | Fěr-untōr. |

INFINITIVE.

| | | |
|----------------------------|--|--------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> Fer-rě, | | Fer-rī, |
| <i>Perf.</i> Tūl-isse, | | Lāt-ūs essě, |
| <i>Fut.</i> Lāt-ūrūs essě. | | Lāt-ūm irī. |

PARTICIPLES.

| | | |
|-------------------------------|--|--------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> Fěr-ens, | | <i>Perf.</i> Lāt-ūs (ǎ, ūm). |
| <i>Fut.</i> Lāt-ūrūs (ǎ, ūm). | | <i>Fut.</i> Fěr-endūs (ǎ, ūm). |

GERUND.

Fěr-endī, dō, dūm, dō.

SUPINE.

Lāt-ūm. | Lāt-ū.

REM.—The compounds of *ferrē* are conjugated like the simple verb.

597. Paradigm of *Fiērī*, to become, be made.

PRESENT.

| <i>Indicative.</i> | | <i>Subjunctive.</i> |
|--------------------|--|--------------------------|
| Fiō, fis, fīt, &c. | | Fi-ām, fi-ās, fi-āt, &c. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|--------------------|--|--------------------|
| Fi-ēbām, ēbās, &c. | | Fi-ērēm, ērēs, &c. |
|--------------------|--|--------------------|

FUTURE.

Fi-ām, ēs, &c.

PERFECT.

| | | |
|------------------|--|------------------|
| Fact-ūs sūm, &c. | | Fact-ūs sīm, &c. |
|------------------|--|------------------|

PLUPERFECT.

| | | |
|-------------------|--|--------------------|
| Fact-ūs ērām, &c. | | Fact-ūs essēm, &c. |
|-------------------|--|--------------------|

FUTURE PERFECT.

Fact-ūs ērō, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

| | | |
|----------------------------|--|---------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Fi, or fi-tō, | | <i>Plur.</i> Fi-tě, or fi-tōtě, |
| Fi-tō. | | Fi-untǎ. |

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Fiēri; *Perf.* Fact-ūs essē; *Fut.* Fact-ūm irī.

PARTICIPLES.

Perf. Fact-ūs (ā, ūm); *Fut.* Fāciendūs (ā, ūm).

598. Paradigm of *Irē*, to go.

2d root, *iv*; 3d, *īt*.

PRESENT.

| <i>Indicative.</i> | | <i>Subjunctive.</i> |
|-------------------------------|--|---------------------|
| Eō, īs, īt; imūs, itīs, eunt. | | Eām, eās, &c. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|-----------------|--|-----------------|
| Ibām, ibās, &c. | | Irēm, irēs, &c. |
|-----------------|--|-----------------|

FUTURE.

Ibō, ibīs, &c.

PERFECT.

| | | |
|--------------------|--|--------------------|
| Iv-ī, iv-istī, &c. | | Iv-ērīm, ēris, &c. |
|--------------------|--|--------------------|

PLUPERFECT.

| | | |
|--------------------|--|----------------------|
| Iv-ērām, ērās, &c. | | Iv-issēm, issēs, &c. |
|--------------------|--|----------------------|

FUTURE PERFECT.

Iv-ērō, ēris, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

| <i>Sing. I, or itō,</i> <i>Itō.</i> | | <i>Plur. Itē, or itōtē,</i> <i>Euntō.</i> |
|--|--|--|
| | | |

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Irē; *Perf.* Iv-issē; *Fut.* Itūrūs essē.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Iens (*gen.* euntīs); *Fut.* Itūrūs, ā, ūm.

GERUND.

Eundi, dō, dūm, dō.

SUPINE.

Itūm, itū.

599. *Edērē*, to eat.

Edērē, to eat, is conjugated regularly as a verb of the third conjugation, but has also certain forms like those of *essē*. These are as follows:

Regular.

| | |
|-------------------|-------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | Edō, &c. |
| <i>Imperat.</i> | Edē, &c. |
| <i>Subj. Imp.</i> | Edērēm, &c. |
| <i>Infīn.</i> | Edērē. |

Irregular.

| |
|--------------------------------|
| <i>Es, est, estīs.</i> |
| <i>Es, estō, estē, estōtē.</i> |
| <i>Essēm, essēs, &c.</i> |
| <i>Essē.</i> |

600. *Periphrastic Conjugations.*

There are two periphrastic conjugations formed respectively from the future participles in *rūs* and *dūs*, combined with the various tenses of the verb *essē*. The first periphrastic conjugation represents the action as *future*, or as one that is about to be done; e. g., *scriptūrūs sūm*, I am about to write: the second expresses *duty* or *necessity*; e. g., *virtūs cōlendā est*, virtue must be cultivated.

601. *Impersonal Verbs.*

1. Impersonal verbs are such as are used only in the third person singular, and never take a personal subject (as *I, thou, he*). The subject in English is generally expressed by the pronoun *it*; e. g.,
Oportēt, *it behooves.*

Taedet mē, *it disgusts me* (I am disgusted with).

2. Besides the verbs which are strictly impersonal, many others are often used *impersonally*; e. g.,

Constāt, *it is known.*

Juvāt, *it delights.*

3. The second periphrastic conjugation is often used *impersonally*; e. g.,

Mihī scribendū est, *I must or should write.*

Tibī scribendū est, *you must or should write.*

Illi scribendū est, *he must or should write.*

Nōbīs scribendū est, *we must or should write.*

Vōbīs scribendū est, *you must or should write.*

Illīs scribendū est, *they must or should write.*

4. Those verbs which take no direct object in the active, can only be used *impersonally* in the passive; e. g.,

Mihī crēditūr, *I am believed.*

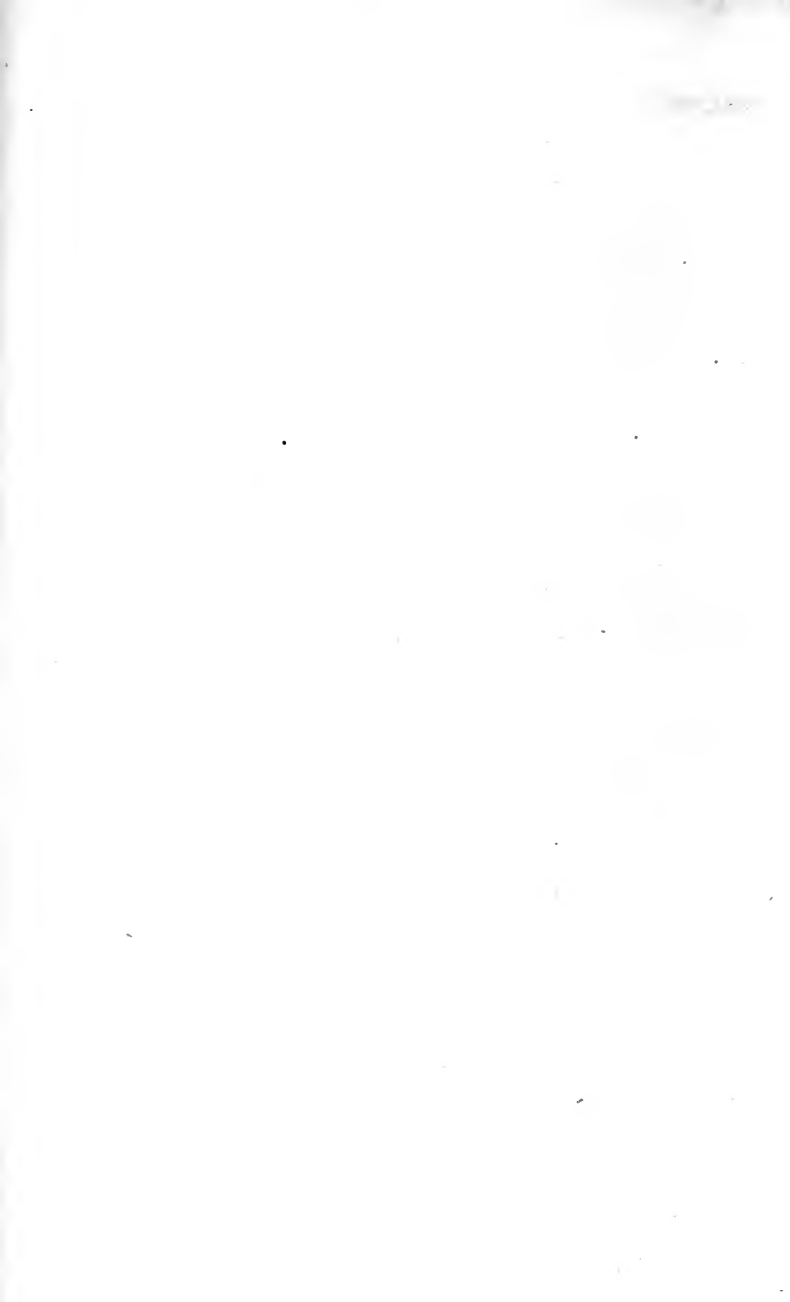
Tibī crēditūr, *Thou art believed.*

Illi crēditūr, *He is believed.*

Nōbīs crēditūr, *We are believed.*

Vōbīs crēditūr, *You are believed.*

Illīs crēditūr, *They are believed.*



SYNTAX.

INTRODUCTION.

602. PARTS of speech (as we have seen, 2), either singly or combined, form propositions; e. g., *Amās, thou lovest*; *puēr lūdīt, the boy plays*.

603. Propositions, either singly or combined, form sentences; e. g., *Equūs currīt (one prop.), the horse runs*; *Puēr lūdīt ēt ēquūs currīt (two propositions)*.

604. Sentences, in their various forms and combinations, of course, comprise the language.

605. Sentences may be divided into two classes, viz.:

- 1) Simple sentences, or such as contain a single proposition; e. g., *Puēr lūdīt*.
- 2) Compound sentences, or such as contain more than one proposition; e. g., *Puēr lūdīt ēt ēquūs currīt*.

606. In a compound sentence, the propositions which compose it are either,

- 1) Independent of each other, as in the above example, and are called co-ordinate propositions; or,
- 2) One of them is used to qualify the other, or some part of it, and is called a dependent or subordinate proposition, while that on which it depends is called a leading or principal proposition; e. g., *Servūs vēnīt ūt portās claudāt, the slave has come to shut the gates*. Here, '*servūs vēnīt*' is a principal proposition, and '*ūt portās claudāt*' is a dependent proposition.

CHAPTER I.

The Essential Elements of Sentences.—Subject and Predicate.

SECTION I.—SUBJECT.

607. EVERY sentence, however simple, consists of two distinct parts, viz.:

- 1) The *Subject*, or that of which it speaks, as, *puēr*, in the sentence *puēr lūdīt*.
- 2) The *Predicate*, or that which is said of the subject, as *lūdīt*, in the above sentence.

608. The subject of a sentence must be either,

- 1) A noun; e. g., *puēr*, in the sentence *puēr lūdīt*; or,
- 2) A word or clause used as a noun; e. g., *mentīrī*, in the sentence *turpē est mentīrī*.

609. RULE I. *The Subject*.—The subject of a finite* verb is put in the nominative; e. g., *Equūs currīt*, *the horse runs*.

610. The subject may either be *simple* or *compound*.

- 1) The *simple subject* consists either of a single nominative, or of two or more nominatives representing the same person or thing; e. g., (1) *Lātinūs rēgnābāt*, *Latinus was reigning*; (2) *Lātinūs rex rēgnābāt*, *Latinus the king was reigning*.
- 2) The *compound subject* consists of two or more simple subjects connected by conjunctions, expressed or understood; e. g., *Caesār ēt Balbūs Rōmām vēnerunt*, *Caesar and Balbus came to Rome*.

SECTION II.—PREDICATE.

611. The predicate of a sentence must be either,

- 1) A verb; e. g., *lūdīt*, in the sentence *puēr lūdīt*; or,
- 2) The verb *essē* (or sometimes a passive verb) with an attributive† noun or adjective; e. g.,

* For the subject of an infinitive see 655.

† By an *attributive* noun is meant one which is used to qualify or describe another noun.

1.

Cicēřǫ fǔit consǔl, *Cicero was consul.*

Christiānī est nēmīněm viǫlārě, *it is the duty of a Christian to wrong nobody.* Here, *fǔit consǔl* and *Christiānī est* are the predicates.

2.

Terrā est rǫtundā, *the earth is round.*

Hūmānūm est errarě, *to err is human.* Here, *est rǫtundā* and *hūmānūm est* are the predicates.

612. RULE II. *Finite Verb*.—A finite verb must agree with its subject in number and person; e. g., Puēr lǔdīt, *the boy plays.*

REM.—If the subject is *compound*, the verb is generally put in the plural.

613. RULE III. *Attributive Noun*.—An attributive noun in the predicate, after the verb *essě* and a few passive verbs, is put,

- 1) In the same case as the subject, when it denotes the same person or thing; e. g., Cicēřǫ fǔit consǔl, *Cicero was consul.*
- 2) In the genitive, when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g., Christiānī est nēmīněm viǫlārě, *it is the duty of a Christian to wrong nobody.*

614. RULE IV. *Adjectives*.—Adjectives and participles (whether in the subject or the predicate) agree in *gender*, *number*, and *case*, with the nouns which they qualify; e. g., Terrā est rǫtundā, *the earth is round.*

615. The predicate, like the subject, may be either *simple* or *compound*.

- 1) The *simple* predicate contains but a single finite verb; e. g., Puēr currīt, *the boy runs.*
- 2) The *compound* predicate consists of two or more simple predicates connected by conjunctions, expressed or understood; e. g., Puēr currīt et lǔdīt, *the boy runs and plays.*

616. In principal sentences (including simple sentences) the verb of the predicate may be put in any finite mood.

- 1) The *indicative* is used, in positive assertions; e. g., Portās claudīt, *he is shutting the gates.*
- 2) The *subjunctive* is used,

- a) To express an affirmation *doubtfully* or *conditionally*;
e. g., *Dārēt, he would give it* (i. e., *if he had it, perhaps*).
b) *Sometimes* to express a *wish* or *command*; e. g., *Scribāt,*
he may write, may he write, or let him write.

- 3) The imperative is used to express a command; e. g., *Portās claudē, shut the gates.*

617. RULE V. *Vocative*.—The name of the person or thing addressed is put in the vocative; e. g., *Quid est, Cātīlinā? why is this, Catiline?*

REM.—This, of course, forms no part of the subject or predicate.

CHAPTER II.

Subordinate Elements.—Modifiers.

SECTION I.—USE OF MODIFIERS.

618. BOTH subject and predicate may have qualifying words and clauses connected with them, to limit or modify their meaning; e. g.,

- 1) *Lātinūs rex rēgnāvit, Latinus the king reigned.* Here the subject is modified by *rex* (59).
2) *Mīlītēs fortītēr pugnānt, the soldiers fight bravely.* Here the predicate is modified by *fortītēr* (77).

619. Any modifier, whether in the subject or the predicate, may be itself modified; e. g., *Lātinūs, bōnūs rex, rēgnāvit.* Here the modifier, *rex*, is itself modified by *bōnūs*.

620. Nouns, adjectives, verbs, and adverbs, are often found with modifiers.

SECTION II.—MODIFIERS OF NOUNS.

621. Nouns, including pronouns, may be modified,

I. By adjectives and participles.

II. By nouns and clauses used with the force of adjectives.

622. I. Nouns may be modified by adjectives and participles; e. g.,
Bōnūs puēr, a good boy.

See Rule IV.

623. II. Nouns may be modified by nouns and clauses used with the force of adjectives. These are,

- 1) Limiting nouns.
- 2) Relative clauses.

624. **RULE VI. Limiting Nouns.**—A noun limiting the meaning of another noun is put,

- 1) In the same case as that noun, when it denotes the same person or thing; e. g., *Lātinūs rex*, *Latinus the king*.
- 2) In the genitive, when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g., *Rēgīs filiūs*, *the king's son*: except,
 - a) When it denotes *character* or *quality*; it is then accompanied by an adjective, and is put either in the genitive or ablative; e. g., *Puēr exīmiāe pulchritūdinīs*, or *Puēr exīmiā pulchritūdinē*, *a boy of remarkable beauty*.

625. **RULE VII. Relative Clauses.**—The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in *gender* and *number*; e. g., *Puēr quī lūdīt*, *the boy who plays*.

626. The predicate of a relative clause is sometimes in the *indicative* and sometimes in the *subjunctive*. It may be observed, however, that the subjunctive is used,

- 1) To express *purpose* or *result*; e. g., *Lēgātōs mīserunt quī dicērent*, *they sent ambassadors to say* (lit., *who might say*).
- 2) To define an indefinite antecedent; e. g., *Sunt quī pūtent*, *there are (some) who think*.

SECTION III.—MODIFIERS OF ADJECTIVES.

627. Adjectives may be modified,

I. By adverbs.

II. By words (generally the oblique cases of nouns) used with the force of adverbs.

628. I. Adjectives may be modified by adverbs; e. g., *Haud difficilis*, *not difficult*.

629. **RULE VIII. Adverbs.**—Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs; e. g., *Haud difficilis*, *not difficult*; *mīlēs fortītēr pūgnāt*, *the soldier fights bravely*.

REM.—It will be observed that *adverbs* modify verbs and other adverbs as well as adjectives.

630. II. Adjectives may be modified by words (generally the oblique cases of nouns) used with the force of adverbs. These are,

- 1) The genitive.
- 2) The dative.
- 3) The ablative.
- 4) The infinitive.

631. RULE IX. *Genitive*.—Many adjectives signifying *desire, knowledge, skill, participation, recollection, fulness*, and the like, together with their *contraries*, take the genitive; e. g., *Cūpidūs laudīs, desirous of praise.*

632. RULE X. *Dative*.—Many adjectives are followed by the dative of the object to which the quality is directed, or for which it exists; e. g., *Pax mihi grātissimā ērat, peace was very acceptable to me.*

633. RULE XI. *Ablative*.—Adjectives may be modified by an ablative denoting *cause, manner, or means*; e. g., *Aegēr āvāritiā, diseased by avarice.*

634. RULE XII. *Ablative*.—The adjectives, *dignūs, indignūs, contentūs, praeditūs, frētūs*, and *libēr*, take the ablative; e. g., *Virtūs parvō contentā est, virtue is content with little.*

635. RULE XIII. *Supine in ū as Ablative*.—The supine in *ū* as a verbal noun in the ablative is used after adjectives signifying *good or bad, easy or difficult, agreeable or disagreeable, &c.*; e. g., *Dificilē dictū (difficult in saying), difficult to say.*

636. RULE XIV. *Ablative*.—The comparative degree without *quām* is followed by the ablative; e. g., *Clēmētiā diviniūs, more godlike than clemency.*

Obs.—If *quām* is expressed, the following noun will be in the same case as that which precedes; e. g., *Eurōpā mīnōr est quām Asiā, Europe is smaller than Asia.*

637. RULE XV. *Infinitive*.—The infinitive sometimes depends upon adjectives; e. g., *Dignūs āmārī, worthy to be loved.*

REM.—Infinitives dependent upon adjectives are generally used as substantives, and as such may be referred to Rule XI. or XII.

SECTION IV.—MODIFIERS OF VERBS.

638. Verbs may be modified,

- I. By objects.
- II. By adverbial modifiers.

§ 1. *Objects.*

639. Verbs may be modified by objects. These are,

- 1) The oblique cases of nouns.
- 2) Infinitives or clauses used as nouns.

640. Verbs may take one or more oblique cases of nouns as objects; e. g., (1) Caiūs puellām laudāt, *Caius praises the girl.*
(2) Balbūs puērō viām monstrāt, *Balbus shows the way to the boy.*

641. RULE XVI.—The *accusative* is used as the *direct object* of an action; e. g., Caiūs puellām laudāt, *Caius praises the girl.*

642. RULE XVII.—The *genitive* is used,

- 1) After verbs of pitying; e. g., Mīsērēmīnī sōciōrūm, *pity the allies.*
- 2) After verbs of remembering and forgetting; e. g., Mēmīnī vivōrūm, *I remember the living.*
- 3) After rēfert and intērest; e. g., Intērest omniūm, *it is the interest of all.*

REM.—Verbs of remembering and forgetting sometimes take the *accusative*; e. g., Mēmīnī Cinnām, *I remember Cinna.*

643. RULE XVIII.—The *dative* is used,

- 1) After *essē* in expressions denoting possession; e. g., Puērō est libēr, *the boy has a book* (lit., *there is a book to the boy*).
- 2) After the compounds of *essē*, except *possē*, to be able; e. g., Mihī profuit, *it profited me.*
- 3) After the compounds of *bēnē*, *sātīs*, and *mālē*; e. g., Officiō suō sātīsfēcīt, *he has discharged his duty* (lit., *has done enough for*).
- 4) After the compounds of the prepositions, *ād*, *antē*, *cōn*, *īn*, *intēr*, *ōb*, *post*, *prae*, *sūb*, and *sūpēr*, together with a few others; e. g., Vēnī ūt mihī succurrās, *I have come that you may assist* (succor) *me.*
- 5) After verbs signifying *to command* or *obey*, *please* or *displease*, *favor* or *injure*, *serve* or *resist*, together with *to indulge*, *spare*, *pardon*, *envy*, *believe*, *persuade*, &c.; e. g., Lēgībūs pārēt, *he obeys the laws* (is obedient to the laws).

644. RULE XIX.—The *ablative* is used,

- 1) After the deponent verbs, *ūtī*, *fruī*, *fungī*, *pōlīrī*, *vescī*,

dignārī,* and their compounds; e. g., *Lactē vescuñtūr they live upon milk.*

- 2) After verbs signifying to *abound* or *be destitute of*; e. g., *Nēmō aliōrūm ōpē cārērē pōtest, no one can be (do) without the assistance of others.*

645. RULE XX. *Two Accusatives.*—Verbs of *asking, demanding teaching, and concealing*, may take two accusatives, one of the person and one of the thing; e. g., *Caesār frūmentūm Aeduōs flagitābāt, Caesar demanded corn of the Aedui.*

646. RULE XXI. *Accusative and Genitive.*—Verbs of *accusing, convicting, acquitting, warning*, and the like, take the accusative of the person, and the genitive of the crime, charge, &c.; e. g., *Caiūm prōditionis accūsant, they accuse Caius of treachery.*

REM.—The genitive is perhaps best explained by making it depend upon the ablative *crimīnē*, understood. See 214, Note.

647. RULE XXII. *Accusative and Genitive.*—The impersonal verbs of feeling, *mīsērēt, poenīlēt, pūdēt, taedēt, and pīgēt*, take the accusative of the person, together with the genitive of the object which produces the feeling; e. g., *Taedēt mē vītāe, I am weary of life* (lit., *it wearies me of life*).

648. RULE XXIII. *Accusative and Dative.*—Any transitive verb may take the accusative of the *direct object* and the dative of the *indirect object*; e. g., *Balbūs puērō vīām monstrāt, Balbus shows the way to the boy.*

649. RULE XXIV. *Accusative and two Datives.*—Transitive verbs of *giving, sending, imputing* (*dārē, mittērē, vertērē, &c.*), sometimes take a *direct object* in the accusative, together with two *indirect objects* in the dative; e. g., *Rēgnūm suūm Rōmānīs donō dēdīt, he gave his kingdom to the Romans as a present* (for a present).

650. RULE XXV. *Accusative and Ablative.*—Verbs signifying to *separate from, or deprive of*, take the accusative of the *direct object*, together with the ablative of that from which it is separated, &c. e. g., *Mē lūcē privant, they deprive me of light.*

* *Dignārī* takes a direct object in connection with the ablative; e. g., *Tē hōnōrē dignātūr, he thinks you worthy of honor.*

651. **RULE XXVI. Two Datives.**—Intransitive verbs signifying *to be, to come, to go*, and the like, often take two datives, one denoting the object *to which*, and the other the object *for which*; e. g., *Cæsārī auxiliō vēnit, he went to the assistance of Caesar.*

652. **RULE XXVII. Dative and Ablative.**—*Opūs est* and *ūsūs est*, as impersonal verbs signifying *need*, take the dative of the person and the ablative of the object needed; e. g., *Dūcē nobīs ōpūs est, we need a leader* (lit., *there is need to us of a leader*).

653. Verbs sometimes take an infinitive or clause as object; e. g.,

1. *Cūpīt pūgnārē, he desires* (what?) *to fight.*
2. *Spērō tē essē beātūm, I hope* (what?) *that you are happy.*
3. *Nesciō undē sol ignēm hābeāt, I know not* (what?) *whence the sun derives its fire.*

654. **RULE XXVIII. Infinitive as Object.**—The infinitive mood, either alone or with other words connected with it, may be used as the object of a verb. (See examples above.)

REM.—The infinitive as *object* is used chiefly after verbs of *perceiving, declaring, desiring*, and the like.

655. **RULE XXIX. Subject of Infinitive.**—The subject of the infinitive is put in the accusative; e. g., *Spērō tē essē beātūm, I hope you are happy.*

REM.—In this example *te*, which is the subject of *essē*, is put in the accusative according to rule.

656. **RULE XXX. Dependent Question as Object.**—An *indirect or dependent question* may be used as the object of a verb; e. g., *Nesciō undē sol ignēm hābeāt, I know not whence the sun derives its fire.*

657. The verb in dependent questions is put in the subjunctive, as in the above example.

658. **RULE XXXI. Object after Passive Verbs.**—Verbs in the passive voice are followed by the same cases as in the active, except the direct object, which becomes the subject of the passive; e. g., (*Act.*) *Balbūm furtī accūsant, they accuse Balbus of theft*; (*Pass.*) *Balbūs furtī accūsātūr, Balbus is accused of theft.*

659. **RULE XXXII. Agent of Passive Verbs.**—After passive verbs, the agent of the action is expressed by the ablative with *ā* or *ab*; e. g., *Puēr ā Caiō dōcētūr, the boy is taught by Caius*; except,

The second periphrastic conjugation (425), which takes the dative of the agent; e. g., *Mihī scribendū est, I must write.*

660. RULE XXXIII. *Impersonal Passive Verbs.*—Verbs which have no direct object in the active voice, are only used impersonally in the passive; e. g., *Mihī crēditūr, I am believed* (lit., *it is believed to me*).

§ II. *Adverbial Modifiers.*

661. Verbs often take adverbial modifiers: these are,

- 1) Adverbs.
- 2) Adverbial expressions.

662. Verbs may be modified by adverbs; e. g., *Fortitēr pugnāt, he fights bravely.*

See Rule VIII.

REM.—Adverbial modifiers are the same whether the verb is *active* or *passive*.

663. Verbs may be modified by adverbial expressions: these are,

- 1) The oblique cases of nouns, with or without prepositions.
- 2) Infinitives, or dependent propositions.

664. The oblique cases of nouns (with or without prepositions) used as adverbial modifiers, may be referred to the following classes, viz.:

- 1) Adverbial expressions of *manner, means, &c.*
- 2) Adverbial expressions of *time.*
- 3) Adverbial expressions of *place.*
- 4) Miscellaneous adverbial expressions.

665. The oblique cases of nouns (and sometimes of adjectives) may be used as adverbial modifiers denoting *manner, means, &c.*

666. RULE XXXIV. *Manner, Means, &c.*—The *manner* or *cause* of an action, and the *means* or *instrument* employed, are expressed by the ablative; e. g., *Dōmīnū glādiō occīdit, he killed his master with a sword.*

667. RULE XXXV. *Price.*—Price, when expressed by nouns, is usually put in the ablative, and when expressed by adjectives, usually in the genitive; e. g., (1) *Avārūs pātriām aurō vendēt, the avaricious man will sell his country for gold*; (2) *Avārūs pēcūniām māgnī aestimāt, the avaricious man values money highly.*

668. The oblique cases of nouns may be used as adverbial modifiers denoting *time*.

669. RULE XXXVI. *Time*.—Time *when* is expressed by the ablative without a preposition; e. g., *Iličmě ursūs dormīt, the bear sleeps in winter.*

670. RULE XXXVII. *Length of Time*.—Length of time is generally expressed by the accusative; e. g., *Caiūs annū ūnū vixīt, Caius lived one year*

671. The oblique cases of nouns (with or without prepositions) may be used as adverbial modifiers denoting *place*.

672. RULE XXXVIII.—The name of a town where any thing is, or is done, if of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive, otherwise in the ablative; e. g., (1) *Caiūs Cortōnæ vixīt, Caius lived at Cortona*; (2) *Caiūs Tibūrē vixīt, Caius lived at Tibur.*

673. RULE XXXIX.—The name of a place where any thing is, or is done, when not a town, is generally put in the ablative with a preposition; e. g., *Ursūs īn antrō dormīt, the bear sleeps in a cave.*

674. RULE XL.—After verbs of motion,

1) The place to which the motion is directed, if a town or small island, is expressed by the accusative without a preposition, otherwise by the accusative with *onæ*; e. g., (1) *Rōmām vēnirē, to come to Rome*; (2) *īn Itāliām vēnirē, to come into Italy.*

2) The place from which the motion proceeds, if a town or small island, is expressed by the ablative without a preposition, otherwise by the ablative with *onæ*; e. g., (1) *Rōmā vēnirē, to come from Rome*; (2) *Ab Itāliā vēnirē, to come from Italy.*

675. RULE XLI.—*Dōmūs* and *rūs*, together with the genitives *bellī*, *hūmī*, and *mīlītiæ*, are used like names of towns; e. g., *Caiūs rurē rēdiīt, Caius returned from the country*; *Balbūs ēt dōmī ēt mīlītiæ fuit, Balbus was with me both at home and on service.*

676. RULE XLII.—The supine in *ūm*, as a verbal noun in the accusative, follows verbs of motion to express the purpose or object

of that motion; e. g., *Mittit lēgātōs pacēm pētītūm*, *he sends ambassadors to sue for peace.*

677. The ablative absolute and the oblique cases of nouns with prepositions are used to express various adverbial relations.

678. RULE XLIII. *Ablative Absolute*.—A noun and a participle standing grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence, are put in the ablative absolute; e. g., *Caesār victis hostibūs*, *Caesar having conquered his enemies* (or, *when he had conquered*; lit., *his enemies being conquered*).

REM.—The ablative absolute generally expresses either the adverbial relation of *time* (as in the above example) or that of *cause*; sometimes, however, it adds an attendant circumstance.

679. RULE XLIV. *Prepositions with Accusative*.—The following twenty-six prepositions govern the accusative; viz., *Ad*, *adversūs*, *antē*, *apūd*, *circā* or *circūm*, *cīs* or *cītrā*, *contrā*, *ergā*, *extrā*, *infra*, *intēr*, *intrā*, *juxtā*, *ob*, *pēnēs*, *pēr*, *pōnē*, *post*, *praetēr*, *prōpē*, *propētēr*, *sēcundūm*, *sūprā*, *trans*, *ultrā*, *versūs* (*rare*).

680. RULE XLV. *Prepositions with Ablative*.—The following eleven prepositions govern the ablative; viz., *A* (*āb* or *abs*), *absquē*, *cōrām*, *cūm*, *dē*, *ē* or *ex*, *pālām*, *prae*, *prō*, *sinē*, *tēnūs*.

681. RULE XLVI. *Prepositions with Accusative or Ablative*.—The five prepositions, *clām*, *in*, *sūb*, *subtēr*, and *sūpēr*, take sometimes the accusative and sometimes the ablative.

REM. 1.—*In* and *sūb* govern the accusative in answer to *whither* (i. e. after verbs of motion), and the ablative in answer to *where* (i. e. after verbs of rest). *Subtēr* generally takes the accusative. *Sūpēr* takes the accusative after verbs of motion, and also when it signifies *upon*, and the ablative when it signifies *on* or *of* (as of a subject spoken or written about).

REM. 2.—Prepositions in composition often govern the same cases as when they stand alone.

682. Verbs may be modified by infinitives or by dependent propositions.

683. RULE XLVII. *Infinitive as Modifier of Verb*.—The infinitive mood may be used after verbs denoting *custom*, *ability*, and the like; e. g., *Nōn facērē possūm*, *I am not able to do*, &c.

684. Dependent propositions, as adverbial modifiers, are gene-

rally introduced by conjunctions, and express a great variety of relations, as *time, place, manner, condition, &c.*

685. Dependent propositions take the verb,

- 1) Sometimes in the indicative; e. g., *Itēr faciēbām, quūm hās littērās dābām, I was making a journey when I gave these letters.*
- 2) But more commonly in the subjunctive; e. g., *Sī quīd hābeāt, dābit, if he has any thing, he will give it.*

SECTION V.—MODIFIERS OF ADVERBS.

686. Adverbs are modified by other adverbs; e. g., *Sātīs dēnē scripsīt, he has written sufficiently well.*

687. Prepositions and conjunctions are connectives, and neither modify nor are modified.

688. Interjections are expressions of emotion or mere marks of address, and have no grammatical influence upon the rest of the sentence.

CHAPTER III.

USE OF MOODS, PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

689. THE indicative is used in positive assertions; e. g., *Puēr ludīt, the boy plays.*

REM.—The indicative is commonly used in principal propositions, but sometimes in dependent ones.

690. The subjunctive is used both in principal and dependent propositions.

691. I. In principal propositions the subjunctive is used,

- 1) To express a wish or a command; e. g., *Scribāt, he may write, may he write, or let him write.*
- 2) To express an affirmation *doubtfully or conditionally*; e. g., *Dārēt, he would give it (i. e. if he had it, perhaps).*

692. II. In dependent propositions.

- 1) With *ut, nē, quō, quān, quōmīnūs*, to express *purpose or*

- consequence ; e. g., *Vēnit ūt scribāt, he has come to write ; Caiō nihīl obstat quōminūs sīt beātus, nothing prevents Caius from being happy (by which he should be less happy).*
- 2) With *quūm (cūm)*, when it introduces a *cause* or *reason*, or in any way shows the dependence of one event upon another ; e. g., *Quae cūm itā sint, since these things are so.*
 - 3) With *licēt*, although, *quāsī, tanquā, ac sī, as if, dūm, mōdō, dummodō*, provided, if only, *quamvis*, however much, however ; e. g., *Imprōbūs itā vivit, quāsī nesciāt, &c., the wicked (man) lives, as if he did not know, &c. ; Nēmō, quamvis sīt locūplēs, no one, however wealthy he may be.*
 - 4) In conditional sentences, to represent the condition either as *simply possible* or as *impossible* ; e. g., *Sī quid hābeāt, dābit, if he has any thing, he will give it. Sī quid hāberēt, dārēt, if he had any thing, he would give it.*
 - 5) In *indirect* or *dependent* questions ; e. g., *Nesciō undē sōl ignēm hābeāt, I know not whence the sun derives its fire.*
 - 6) In relative clauses, (1) to express *purpose* or *result*, and (2) to define an indefinite antecedent ; e. g., (1) *Lēgātōs mīserunt quī dicērent, they sent ambassadors to say ;* (2) *Sunt quī pūtent, there are (some) who think.*

693. *Subjunctive Tenses in Dependent Propositions.*—The subjunctive, (1) when dependent upon a present tense (*pres., perf. def., or fut.*) is put in the *present* to denote an incomplete action, and in the *perfect* to denote a completed action ; and (2) when dependent upon a past tense (*imperf., perf. indef., or pluperf.*), in the *imperfect* to denote an incomplete action, and in the *pluperfect* to denote a completed action ; e. g.,

1. *Nesciō quid dicāt, I know not what he is saying.*
2. *Nesciō quid dixērīt, I know not what he said.*
3. *Nesciuit quid dicērēt, I knew not what he said.*
4. *Nesciuit quid dixissēt, I knew not what he had said.*

694. The imperative is used to express a command ; e. g., *Portās claudē, shut the gates.*

695. The infinitive, which expresses the simple meaning of the verb without reference to person or number, is used,

- 1) As the subject of another verb ; e. g., *Difficilē est iudicārē, it is difficult to judge.*

- 2) As the object of another verb; e. g., *Cūpiō sâpĕrĕ*, *I desire to be wise.*
- 3) As the modifier of an adjective or verb; e. g., (1) *Dignūſ âmarĭ*, *worthy to be loved*; (2) *Nōn făcĕrĕ poſſūm*, *I am not able to do, &c.*

696. Participles, gerunds, and supines are followed by the various cases of nouns like the other parts of verbs. In regard to their own government, it must be observed,

- 1) That participles, like adjectives, agree with substantives.
- 2) That gerunds are governed like the same cases of substantives.
- 3) That supines, as verbal nouns, are governed like the same cases of other nouns.

1. The first part of the document is a list of names and addresses, which are arranged in two columns. The names are written in a cursive script, and the addresses are written in a more formal, printed style. The list includes names such as "John A. Smith", "Mary E. Jones", and "Robert L. Brown".

DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM.

ENGLISH IDIOM.

1 To think nothing of

2. To value highly.*

3. To think little of † }
To hold cheap. }

4. No stability.

Some time.

Much good.

How much pleasure.

LATIN IDIOM.

To reckon at nothing (*nihili ducere*
or *facere*).

To value at a high price (*magni*
aestimare).

To value at a little price (*parvi*
aestimare).

Nothing of stability (*nihil stabilitatis*).

Something of time (*aliquid temporis*).

Much of good (*multum boni*).

How much of pleasure (*quantum voluptatis*).

REM.—Hence *no*, *some* (when they denote quantity, not number), *much*, *how much*, are to be translated by *nihil*, *aliquid*, *multum*, *quantum*, followed by the gen.

5. He did it *unwillingly*.

He *unwilling* did it.

6. It is disgraceful to lie.

To lie is disgraceful.

7. It is the *part*

——— *duty*

——— *business*

——— *mark*

——— *character*

} of a wise
man.

It is of a wise man.

8. To condemn a man to death.

To condemn a man of the head.

9. As many as possible.

As the most (*quam plurimi*).

——— he can or could. }

The greatest possible. }

——— he can or could. }

As the greatest (*quam maximus*).

[That is, as many as the most: as great as greatest, &c.]

10. On the top of the mountain.

On the mountain highest.

In the middle of the water.

In the water middle (in *summo monte*; in *media aqua*).

* To value very highly (*maximi aestimare*).

† The substantive will follow in the *accusative* notwithstanding the *of* for that has nothing to do with the Latin verb.

ENGLISH IDIOM.

11. Is going to bed.
 12. It is hard *to say*.
 13. Whilst they were (are, &c.) playing.
 14. The intention of writing a letter.
 15. We must cultivate virtue.
 16. Caius must write.
 17. We must believe Caius.
 18. The ways of expressing the *purpose* are,

He comes to see the games.

19. a) I may go.
 b) I might *have gone*.
 20. a) I ought to go.
 b) I ought to have gone.

LATIN IDIOM.

Is going *to lie down* (*cuñtum, sup.*)
 It is hard *in saying* (*difficile est dictu; supine*).
 During playing (*inter ludendum*).
 The intention of a letter *to-be-written* (*scribendae epistolae*).
 Virtue is *to-be-cultivated* (*colenda est virtus*).
 It is *to-be-written* by Caius (*Caius scribendum est*).
 It is *to-be-believed* to Caius (*credendum est Caius*).

- { (a) Venit ut ludos spectet.
 { (b) Venit ludos spectatum (*sup.*).
 { (c) Venit ludos spectaturus.
 { (d) Venit ad ludos spectandos.
 To which add,
 (e) Venit causa (*for the purpose*)
 ludorum spectandorum; and
 (f) Instead of *ut*, the relative
 may be used:

He sent ambassadors, *qui pacem petèrent* (*to sue for peace*).

Mihi ire licet (*it is permitted to me to go*).

Mihi ire licuit (*it was permitted to me to go*).

Me ire oportet.

Me ire oportuit.

CAUTIONS.

- a. *Him, her, them* (or *he, she, they*, when they are to be translated by the *accusative*), must be translated into Latin by the proper case of *suī*, when they and the *nominative of the verb* stand for the *same person*. Also, in the same case, *his, hers, its, theirs*, must be translated by *suūs*.
- b. In a sentence with *that* dependent on a past tense, the perfect is to be translated into Latin by the *present infinitive*, whenever the notion expressed by it is not to be described as *over before the time* of the principal verb.
- c. *Would, should*, after a past tense are future forms:

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{He says that he will come.} \\ \text{He said that he would come.} \end{array} \right\}$$
- d. *Thing* should be expressed by *res* (fem.), when the adjective alone would leave it doubtful whether *men* or *things* were meant:
 Thus, of many things, not *multōrum*, but *multārum rerum*.
- e. *Cum* is written *after*, and as *one word with* the ablatives *me, te, &c.*:
mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum.
- f. Many English verbs *become* transitive by the addition of a *preposition*; for instance, *to smile at, &c.*
- g. *Such* in English is often used where *size* is meant, rather than *quality*. It should then be translated into Latin by *tantus, quantus*; not *talis, qualis*.
- h. *That* or *those*, when it stands for a substantive which has been expressed in a preceding clause, is not to be translated.
- i. When *that* introduces a *consequence*, *that not* is *ut non*, not *ne*.

$$\text{That—not} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{for a purpose ne.} \\ \text{for a consequence ... ut non.} \end{array} \right.$$
- j. After verbs of *fearing*, the Eng. *future* and the *participial substantive* are translated into Latin by the *present* or *imperfect subjunctive*, with *ut* or *nē*.
- k. *Who, what, which*, are often dependent *interrogatives*, especially after verbs of *asking, knowing, doubting, &c.*

- l. *May, might*, sometimes mean *can, could*, and must be translated by *possūm*.
- m. The *perf. infin.* must be translated into Latin by the *present infin.* after *might, could, ought*, unless the action is to be represented as *over* before the time to which *might, could, &c.* refer.
- n. In English, substantives standing before and spoken of other substantives, are used *adjectively*, and must be translated into Latin by adjectives.
- o. *What* is sometimes used for *how* (*quam*); sometimes for *how great* (*quantus*).
- p. *For* and *as* are to be untranslated, when the noun that follows can be placed in *apposition* to another noun in the sentence.
- q. When *one, two, &c.* mean *one, two, &c. apiece*, or *for each*, they must be translated by the *distributive numerals, singūli, bini, &c.*
- r. *I have to do it*, must be translated by the *part. in dus*.
 (Eng.) With whom we *have* to live.
 (Lat.) With whom *it is to-be-lived* (*quibuscum vivendum est*).
- s. *It is*, followed by what is in form the *infin. pass.*, generally expresses *necessity, fitness*, or something *intended*.
- t. But *is to be* sometimes means, not *necessity, fitness*, or *intention*, but *possibility*; as, 'the passage *is to be found* in the fifth book,' = the passage *may or can be found* in the fifth book.
- u. A *present participle* must be translated into Latin by a *perfect participle* (or its substitute, *quum* with *perf.* or *pluperf. subj.*) when the action expressed by it must be *over*, before that expressed by the verb *begins*.
- v. The English *present part. act.* is generally translated by the Latin *past partic.*, when the verb is *deponent*.
- w. When the action was not done *in*, but only near a town, *at* must be translated by *ad* or *apud*.
- x. *One* often means *some one* (*aliquis*) or a *certain one* (*quidam*).
- y. *Will* and *would, will not* and *would not*, are often principal verbs, to be translated by *velle* and *nolle* respectively.

They are to be so translated when for

will, *would*, we may substitute
is (are, &c.) *willing, was* (were, &c.) *willing*.

- z. When an English word is followed by a preposition, consider whether the Latin word to be used is followed by a preposition or by a case, and then by what preposition or what case.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

A.

A, **āb**, **abs** (*prep. with abl.*), *from, by.*

Abīrē, **i**, **īt**, *to go away, depart.*

Absolvērē, **v**, **ūt**, *to acquit.*

Ac, *and.*

Accēdērē, **cess**, **cess**, *to approach.*

Accīpērē (**iō**), **cēp**, **cept**, *to receive, accept.*

Accipītēr, **trīs**, *hawk.*

Accūsārē, **āv**, **āt**, *to accuse.*

Acēr, **ācrīs**, **ācrē**, *sharp, severe.*

Achillēs, **īs**, *Achilles, a Grecian hero.*

Acīēs, **ēī**, *line of battle.*

Ad (*prep. with acc.*), *to.*

Addūcērē (*ad and ducēre*), **dux**, **duct**, *to lead to.*

Adeō, *so, in such a manner.*

Adessē (*ad and esse*), **fu**, **fūt**, *to be present.*

Adjūmentūm, **ī**, *aid, help.*

Adjūvārē, **jūv**, **jūt**, *to aid, help.*

Admīrātiō, **ōnis**, *admiration.*

Admōnērē, **u**, **īt**, *to admonish, warn.*

Adūlatiō, **ōnis**, *flattery.*

Adūlātōr, **ōris**, *flatterer.*

Adventūs (*advenīre*), **ūs**, *approach.*

Aedificārē, **āv**, **āt**, *to build.*

Aedificiūm, **ī**, *building, edifice.*

Aenēas, **ae**, *Aeneas, a Trojan prince.*

Aequitās, **ātis**, *equity, justice.*

Aestās, **ātis**, *summer.*

Aestimārē, **āv**, **āt**, *to value, prize; magni aestimārē, to prize highly.*

Afferē (*ad and ferre*), **attūl**, **allāt**, *to bring to.*

Agēr, **āgrī**, *field.*

Agērē, **ēg**, *act, to drive, lead, do; grātiās āgērē, to render thanks.*

Agnūs, **ī**, *lamb.*

Agricolā, **ae**, *husbandman.*

Aliquandō, *some time.*

Aliquīs, **quā**, **quīd**, *any one, any some; aliquīd tempōris, some time.*

Aliūs, **ā**, **ūd** (113. R.), *other*

Alpēs, **iūm**, *the Alps.*

Altūs, **ā**, **ūm**, *high, lofty.*

Amārē, **āv**, **āt**, *to love.*

Ambītūs, **ūs**, *bribery.*

Ambulārē, **āv**, **īt**, *to walk.*

Amēricānūs, **ā**, **ūm**, *American.*

Amīcitiā, **ae**, *friendship.*

Amīcūs, **ī**, *friend.*

Amittērē, **mīs**, *miss, to lose.*

Amphībium, **ī**, *an amphibious animal.*

Amplius (*adv.*), *more, further.*

Amplūs, **ā**, **ūm**, *ample, large.*

An, *interrog. part., used in double questions, 482.*

Anchisēs, **ae**, *Anchises, the father of Aeneas.*

Anguis, **īs**, **m.** or **f.**, *snake.*

Angustiae, **ārūm**, *a narrow pass, defile.*

Animāl, **ālīs**, *animal.*

Animūs, **ī**, *mind, soul.*

Annuērē, **nu**, **nūt**, *to assent, to give assent.*

Annūs, **ī**, *year.*

Antē (*prep. with acc.*), *before.*

Anteā (*adv.*), *before.*

Antrūm, **ī**, *cave.*

Anulūs, **ī**, *ring.*

Apērīrē, **ēru**, **ert**, *to uncover, to open.*

Apprōpinquārē, **āv**, **āt**, *to approach.*

Aquā, **ae**, *water.*

Aquārī, **āt**, *to bring water.*

Aquilā, **ae**, *eagle.*

Arā, **ae**, *altar.*

Arārē, **āv**, **āt**, *to plough.*

Arbōr, **ōris**, **f.**, *tree.*

Argentūm, **ī**, *silver.*

Armīgēr, ī, *armor-bearer*.
 Arrīpērē (iō), īpu, ept, *to snatch, seize*.
 Ars, artīs, *art*.
 Arx, arcīs, *citadel, tower*.
 Ascāniūs, ī, *Ascanius, son of Aeneas*.
 Asinūs, ī, *ass*.
 Aspergērē (or adaspergērē), ers, ers, *to sprinkle*.
 At, *but*.
 Athēnae, ārūm, *Athens, city of Greece*.
 Athēniensīs (Athēnae), ē, *Athenian, pl., the Athenians*.
 Atquī (conj.), *but, now (as used in reasoning)*.
 Attāmēn, *but, yet*.
 Attingērē (ad and tangēre), tīg, tact, *to attain, reach*.
 Auctōr, ōris, *author*.
 Auctumnūs, ī, *autumn*.
 Audax, ācis, *daring, audacious*.
 Audirē, iv, it, *to hear*.
 Augērē, aux, auct, *to increase*.
 Aureūs (aurūm), ā, ūm, *golden*.
 Aurūm, ī, *gold*.
 Aut, or; aut—aut, *either—or*.
 Autēm, *but*.
 Auxiliūm, ī, *aid*.
 Avāriciā, ae, *avarice*.
 Avārūs, ā, ūm, *avaricious*.
 Avis, īs, *bird*.

B.

Balbūs, ī, *Balbus, a man's name*.
 Barbā, ae, *beard*.
 Beātē (beātus), *happily*.
 Beātūs, ā, ūm, *happy*.
 Bellūm, ī, *war*.
 Bēnē, *well*.
 Bēnēficiūm, ī, *benefit*.
 Bēnignūs, ā, ūm, *kind*.
 Bībērē, bib, bībīt, *to drink*.
 Bienniūm, ī, *two years, space of two years*.
 Bōnūs, ā, ūm, *good*.
 Brāchiūm, ī, *arm*.
 Brēvis, ē, *short*.
 Brūtūs, ī, *Brutus, a Roman consul*.

C.

Cădērē, cēcīd, cās, *to fall*.
 Caecūs, ā, ūm, *blind*.
 Caesār, āris, *Caesar, a distinguished Roman general*.
 Caiūs, ī, *Caius, a man's name*.
 Călămītās, ātis, *misfortune, calamity*.
 Candidūs, ā, ūm, *white*.
 Cănērē, cēcīn, cant, *to sing*.
 Cănīs, īs, c., *dog*.
 Cantārē (canēre), āv, āt, *to sing*.
 Căpērē (iō), cēp, capt, *to take, receive*.
 Captivūs, ā, ūm, *capt. ive*.
 Căpūt, itis, *head; căpitīs, of the head, to death*.
 Carpērē, carps, carpt, *to gather, to pluck, to card*.
 Carthāginisīs (Carthāgo), ē, *Carthaginian*.
 Carthāgō, īnis, *Carthage, an ancient city in northern Africa*.
 Castigārē, āv, āt, *to chastise*.
 Castrā, ōrūm, *camp*.
 Cătēnā, ae, *chain*.
 Căvērē, cāv, caut, *to take care, to be on one's guard against*.
 Cělēbēr, brīs, brē, *celebrated*.
 Cělērītēr, *quickly*.
 Certāmēn, īnis, *contest*.
 Certūs, ā, ūm, *certain*.
 Christiānūs, ī, *Christian*.
 Cibūs, ī, *food*.
 Cicerō, ōnis, *Cicero, the great Roman orator*.
 Cingērē, nx, nct, *to surround*.
 Circumdārē (circum and dāre), dēd, dāt, *to surround*.
 Cīs, *on this side*.
 Cīvilis (cīvis), ē, *civil*.
 Cīvis, īs, *citizen*.
 Cīvītās (cīvis), ātis, *state*.
 Claudērē, claus, claus, *to shut*.
 Clēmēns, entīs, *mild, merciful*.
 Clēmēntiā, ae, *mildness, clemency*.
 Clīpeūs, ī, *shield*.
 Coelūm, ī, *heaven, the heavens*.
 Coenā, ae, *supper, feast*.
 Cōgītārē, āv, āt, *to think, to think about*.
 Cōgnītūs, ā, ūm, *known*.

Cognoscere, nōv, nīt, to ascertain.

Cōlère, cōlu, cult, to till, cultivate, practise.

Collōquium, ī, conference.

Cōlōr ōris, color.

Cōlumbā, ae, dove.

Committere, mīs, miss, to engage; proelium committere, to engage battle.

Compārāre, āv, āt, to procure, raise, levy.

Compellere, pūl, puls, to compel, drive.

Compescere, escu, to restrain, repress.

Complere, ēv, ēt, to fill.

Comprēhendere, nd, ns, to arrest.

Concertāre, āv, āt, to contend, quarrel.

Conciliūm, ī, council, meeting.

Condere (con [cūm] and dare), did, dīt, to build, found.

Conditio, ōnis, condition, terms.

Confugere (iō), fūg, to flee for refuge.

Conjux, ūgis, spouse, wife, husband.

Conservare, āv, āt, to preserve.

Consilium, ī, advice, instruction.

Conspicere (iō), spex, spect, to see, discover.

Constāt (impers.), it is known, is an admitted fact.

Constituere, u, ūt, to arrange, appoint.

Construere, strux, struct, to build, construct.

Consul, ūlis, consul, the Roman chief magistrate. [advice.]

Consultere, sūlu, sult, to consult, ask.

Contemnere, ps, pt, to despise.

Contentus, ā, ūm, contented, content.

Continere, u, tent, to restrain, confine.

Continuus, ā, ūm, successive.

Contra (prep. with acc.), against.

Convēnire (cōn [cūm] and venire), vēm, vent, to come together.

Convertere, t, s, to turn, convert.

Cōpia, arūm, forces.

Cōquere, x, ct, to cook, to bake, to ripen.

Cōr, cordis, n., heart.

Cōram (prep. with abl.), before, in presence of; adv., openly, in person.

Cōronā, ae, crown, garland.

Corpūs, ōris, body.

Corrigere, rex, rect, to correct.

Corrumpere, rūp, rupt, to mislead, corrupt.

Crābrō, ōnis, wasp.

Crēbēr, brā, brūm, frequent.

Crēdere, crēdīd, crēdīt, to believe, put confidence in.

Crēscere, crēv, crēt, to increase, to wax (as moon).

Culpā, ae, fault, blame.

Cūm (prep. with abl.), with.

Cunctus, ā, ūm, all as a whole.

Cūpēre (iō), iv (i), it, to desire.

Cūpīditās, ātis, desire, passion.

Cūpīdus, ā, ūm, desirous of.

Cūrāre (cura), āv, āt, to take care of.

Currere, cūcurr, curs, to run.

Currus, ūs, chariot.

Custodire (custos), iv, it, to guard.

D.

Damnare, āv, āt, to condemn.

Dare, dēd, dāt, to give.

Dē (prep. with abl.), from, about, concerning.

Dēcēm, ten.

Dēcernere, crēv, crēt, to decree, decide.

Dēcimūs, ā, ūm, tenth.

Dēcipere (iō), cēp, cept, to deceive.

Dēdere, dēdid, dēdīt, to surrender.

Dēfendere, d, s, to defend.

Dēglūbēre, ups, upt, to skin, flay.

Dēlere, lēv, lēt, to destroy.

Dēmonstrāre, āv, āt, to show, demonstrate.

Dēprēhendere, d, s, to seize, catch.

Dēterrere, u, it, to deter, prevent.

Dēvincere, vīc, vict, to conquer.

Dīcere, dīx, dict, to say.

Dīdō, ōnis, Dido, the foundress of Carthage.

Dīēs, ēī, day.

Difficilis, ē, difficult.

Dīgnūs, ā, ūm, worthy.

Dīlaniāre, āv, āt, to tear in pieces.

Dīligens, tīs, diligent.

Diligentia (*diligens*), *ae*, diligence.
 Dīmīttēre, *mīs*, miss, to dismiss.
 Discēre, *didicē*, to learn.
 Discipulus, *i*, pupil.
 Disjungere, *x*, *ct*, to separate.
 Dividēre, *vīs*, *vīs*, to divide.
 Divinus, *ā*, *ūm*, divine.
 Divitiacūs, *i*, Divitiacus, a man's name.
 Docēre, *u*, *t*, to teach.
 Dolēre, *u*, *it*, to grieve.
 Dolor, *ōris*, pain, grief, sorrow.
 Dominus, *i*, master as owner.
 Dōmūs, *ūs* or *i*, *f.*, house; *dōmī*, at home.
 Dōnāre, *āv*, *āt*, to give, present.
 Dōnum, *i*, gift.
 Dormire, *iv*, *it*, to sleep.
 Dubitare, *āv*, *āt*, to doubt.
 Ducenti, *ae*, *ā*, two hundred.
 Ducere, *dux*, *duct*, to lead.
 Dūm, while.
 Dummōdō, *if*, *but*, provided.
 Duō, *ae*, *ō*, two.
 Duōdecim, twelve.
 Dūrāre, *āv*, *āt*, to last.
 Dux, dūcis, leader, guide.

E.

Edere, *ēd*, *ēs* (420), to eat.
 Educere (*e* and *ducere*), *dux*, *duct*, to lead forth.
 Efficere (*iō*), *fēc*, *fect*, to effect, accomplish.
 Egō, *mei*, &c., *I*.
 Elegantiā, *ae*, elegance.
 Elēphās, *antis*, *m.*, elephant.
 Emere, *ēm*, *empt*, to buy, purchase.
 Enim, *for*, indeed.
 Enūmerāre, *āv*, *āt*, to enumerate.
 Epistolā, *ae*, letter, epistle.
 Epitōmē, *ēs*, abridgment.
 Equēs, *itis*, horseman.
 Equitātūs, *ūs*, cavalry.
 Equūs, *i*, horse.
 Ergā (*prep. with acc.*), towards.
 Ergō (*conj.*), therefore.
 Errāre, *āv*, *āt*, to err.
 Erudire, *iv*, *it*, to instruct.
 Esse, *fu*, *fūt*, to be; *est*, *is*, *it is*.
 Et, *and*; *et—et*, both—and.

Etiā, *also*, *even*; *etiā* atque *etiā*, *ām*, *again* and *again*.
 Evertēre, *rt*, *rs*, to pull down, to overthrow.
 Evolarē, *āv*, *āt*, to fly away, to flee from.
 Ex (*prep. with abl.*), from.
 Excitare, *āv*, *āt*, to excite, arouse.
 Exclamare, *āv*, *āt*, to exclaim, cry out.
 Excruciare, *āv*, *āt*, to torture.
 Exercere, *u*, *it*, to practise, exercise.
 Exercitus, *ūs*, army.
 Exorare, *āv*, *āt*, to supplicate.
 Expellere, *pūl*, *puls*, to expel, banish.
 Expōnere, *pōsu*, *pōsit*, to set forth, explain.
 Expugnare (*ex* and *pugnare*), *āv*, *āt*, to storm.
 Expectare, *āv*, *āt*, to expect.

F.

Fabulosus, *ā*, *ūm* (*fabula*), fabulous.
 Facere (*iō*), *fēc*, *fact*, to do, make, act.
 Facies, *ei*, face, appearance.
 Facilis, *ē*, easy.
 Fallax (*fallere*), *acis*, false, deceptive.
 Fames, *is*, hunger.
 Faustulus, *i*, Faustulus, an Italian shepherd.
 Favere, *fāv*, *faut*, to favor.
 Felicitas, *atis*, happiness.
 Ferrē, *tūl*, *lāt* (414), to bear.
 Ferrum, *i*, iron.
 Fidelis, *ē*, faithful.
 Fides, *ei*, faith, fidelity; *fīdēm* viōlārē, to break one's word.
 Fieri, *fact* (416), to become, be made.
 Figurā, *ae*, figure.
 Filiā, *ae* (*D. pl. filiabus*), daughter.
 Filius, *i*, son.
 Finire (*finis*), *iv*, *it*, to finish.
 Finis, *is* (*m.* and *f. sing.*, *m. pl.*), end.
 Firmus, *ā*, *ūm*, firm.
 Flagitium, *i*, crime.
 Flere, *flēv*, *flēt*, to weep.
 Florere (*flos*), *u*, to flourish, bloom.
 Florescere (*florere*), to begin to bloom.

Flōs, ōris, *flower*.

Fluērē, x, x, *to flow*.

Flūmēn, inīs, *river, stream*.

Foedūs, ēris, *treaty*.

Fortis, ē, *brave*.

Fortitēr (*fortis*), *bravely*.

Fortūnā, ae, *fortune*.

Frangērē, frēg, fract, *to break*.

Frātēr, tris, *brother*.

Fraudārē, āv, āt, *to defraud*.

Frētūs, ā, ūm, *relying on*.

Frigūs, ōris, *cold*.

Frūtex, icīs, m., *shrub*.

Fūgā, ae, *flight*.

Fūgārē (*fugā*), āv, āt, *to put to night*.

Fūgērē (iō), fūg, fūgīt, *to flee*.

Fundūs, ī, *estate, farm*.

Fungī, fauct, *to discharge, fulfil*.

Furtūm, ī, *theft*.

Fūtūrūs, ā, ūm, *future*.

G.

Gallīcūs (*Galliā*), ā, ūm, *Gallic*.

Gallūs, ī, *a Gaul*.

Gēnēr, ī, *son-in-law*.

Gēnūs, ēris, *kind, nature*.

Gērērē, gess, gest, *to carry on, to wage (as war)*.

Germāniā, ae, *Germany*.

Glādiūs, ī, *sword*.

Glōriā, ae, *glory*.

Gracci, ōrūm, *the Greeks*.

Grānūm, ī, *grain*.

Grātiā, ae, *gratitude, favor*; pl., *thanks*.

Grāvis, ē, *heavy*.

Grexx, ēgis, m., *flock, herd*.

H.

Hābērē, u, īt, *to have*.

Hābitārē (*habēre*), āv, āt, *to inhabit*.

Haedūs, ī, *kid*.

Hannibāl, ālis, *Hannibal*.

Hastā, ae, *spear*.

Hērōs, ōis, *hero*.

Hesternūs, ā, ūm, *of yesterday*.

Hic, haec, hōc, *this*.

Hiems, ēmis, *winter*.

Histōriā, ae, *history*.

Hōmō, inīs, *man*.

Hōnōr, ōris, *honor*.

Hortulūs (*hortūs*), *little garden*.

Hortūs, ī, *garden*.

Hostis, īs, *enemy*.

Hūmānūs, ā, ūm, *human, natural to man*.

Hūmērūs, ī, *shoulder*.

I.

Ibī, *there*.

Idēm, eādēm, idēm, *same*.

Ideō, *therefore*.

Igitūr, *therefore*.

Ignārūs, ā, ūm, *ignorant*.

Iguāvūs, ā, ūm, *indolent, cowardly*.

Ignis, īs, m., *fire, heat*.

Ignōrātiō, ōnis, *ignorance*.

Ignoscērē, ōv, ōt, *to pardon*.

Illē, illā, illūd, *that, he, she, it*.

Illustrārē, āv, āt, *to illumine, to enlighten*.

Immensūs, ā, ūm, *immense*.

Immergērē, rs, rs, *to plunge into*.

Immōbilis, ē, *immovable*.

Immortālis, ē, *immortal*.

Impēdirē, iv, īt, *to impede, hinder*.

Impendērē, *to overhang, threaten*.

Impērārē, āv, āt, *to command*; imperātiā, ōrūm, *commands*.

Impērātōr (*impērāre*), ōris, *commander*.

Impētūs, ūs, *attack*.

Impiūs, ā, ūm, *impious*.

Imprōbūs, ā, ūm, *bad, wicked*.

Imprūdēns, entis, *imprudent*.

In (*prep. with acc. or abl.*), with acc., *into, to, against*; with abl., *in*.

Incendērē, d, s, *to set on fire, to burn*.

Inceptūm, ī, *beginning*.

Incertūs, ā, ūm, *uncertain*.

Incōgnītūs, ā, ūm, *unknown*.

Incōlā (*in and colēre*), ae, *inhabitant*.

Incōlūmis, ē, *safe, uninjured*.

Incrēdibilis (*in and credēre*), ē, *incredible*.

Indicērē, dix, dict, *to declare (as war)*.

Indignūs, ā, ūm, *unworthy*.

Indoctūs, ā, ūm, *unlearned*.

Indulgērē, *ls, lt, to indulge.*
 Industriā, *ae, industry.*
 Infrē, *intūl, illāt (414), to wage.*
 Infrā (*prep. with acc.*), *below.*
 Infligērē, *flixi, flicti, to inflict.*
 Ingēniūm, *i, talent, ability.*
 Injūriā, *ae, injury, wrong done.*
 Innocens, *tis, innocent.*
 Innoxius, *ā, ūm, harmless.*
 Instruērē, *strux, struct, to arrange, array.*
 Intelligērē, *lex, lect, to understand.*
 Intēr (*prep. with acc.*), *between, during.*
 Interdūm, *sometimes.*
 Interessē, *fu, fūt, to be engaged in.*
 Interficērē (*iō*), *fēc, fect, to kill.*
 Intērim, *in the mean time, meanwhile.*
 Intervallūm, *i, distance, space.*
 Intrā (*prep. with acc.*), *within.*
 Inūtilis, *ē, useless.*
 Invādērē (*in and vādere*), *vās, vās, to invade.*
 Invēnirē, *vēn, vent, to find.*
 Invidērē, *vid, vis, to envy.*
 Invītūs, *ā, ūm, unwilling.*
 Ipsē, *ā, ūm, self, he himself.*
 Irā, *ae, anger.*
 Irē, *iv, it, to go.*
 Irritārē, *āv, āt, to irritate.*
 Is, *eā, id, he, she, it, that.*
 Istē, *ā, ūd, that.*
 Italiā, *ae, Italy.*
 Itāquē, *therefore.*
 Itēr, *itinēris, journey, way.*
 Itērūm, *again.*

J.

Jūbērē, *juss, juss, to direct, order.*
 Jūcundūs, *ā, ūm, pleasant, delightful.*
 Jūdex, *icis, judge.*
 Jūdicārē, *āv, āt, to judge.*
 Jūrārē, *āv, āt, to swear.*
 Justūs, *ā, ūm, just, fair.*

L.

Lābōr, *ōris, labor.*
 Lābōrārē, *āv, āt, to labor.*
 Lānā, *ae, wool.*

Lātinūs, *i, Latinus, a king of Latium.*
 Laudārē, *āv, āt, to praise.*
 Laus, *dis, praise.*
 Lāvārē, *lāv, laut, or lāvāt, to wash.*
 Lāviniā, *ae, Lavinia, daughter of Latinus.*
 Lēgātūs, *i, ambassador.*
 Lēgērē, *lēg, lect, to read.*
 Lēgiō, *ōnis, legion, body of foot.*
 Lēnis, *ē, mild, merciful.*
 Leō, *ōnis, lion.*
 Lex, *lēgis, law.*
 Lībēr, *lībrī, book.*
 Lībēr, *ā, ūm, free.*
 Lībērī, *ōrūm, children.*
 Licēt (*impers. v.*), *it is lawful.*
 Licēt, *although.*
 Līquescērē, *licu, to melt.*
 Lītērae, *ārūm (pl.), letter, epistle.*
 Lōcūplēs, *ētis, wealthy, rich.*
 Lōcūs, *i (pl. loci or locū), place.*
 Lōquī, *lūcūt, to speak.*
 Lūcērē, *lux, to shine.*
 Luctūs, *ūs, grief, sorrow.*
 Lūcūs, *i, grove.*
 Lūdērē, *lūs, lūs, to play.*
 Lūdūs, *i, play, sport.*
 Lūgērē, *lux, to grieve, mourn, weep for.*
 Lūnā, *ae, moon.*
 Lūpūs, *i, wolf.*
 Lusciniā, *ae, nightingale.*
 Lux, *lūcis, light.*

M.

Mācūlārē, *āv, āt, to stain, to blemish.*
 Māgistēr, *trī, master as teacher.*
 Māgnitūdō (*magnus*), *inīs, greatness, size.*
 Māgnūs, *ā, ūm, great, large; māgnī, at a great price, highly; māgnūm est, it is a great thing.*
 Majōr, *ūs (comp. of magnus), greater, larger.*
 Mālē (*malus*), *badly.*
 Mallē, *mālu (410), to prefer.*
 Mālūm, *i, evil, misfortune.*
 Mālūs, *ā, ūm, bad.*
 Mānērē, *ns, ns, to remain.*

Mānūs, ūs, *f.*, hand, force.
 Mārē, īs, sea.
 Mārīnūs, ā, ūm, marine, of the sea.
 Mātēr, trīs, mother.
 Mātrōnā, ae, matron.
 Maximūs, ā, ūm (*superl. of magnus*), greatest, very great; maximī, at a very great price.
 Mēdicūs, ī, physician.
 Mēdiūs, ā, ūm, middle, midst of, middle of, 267.
 Mēl, mellīs, honey.
 Mendāciūm, lie, falsehood.
 Mens, tis, mind, the reasoning faculty.
 Mensis, īs, m., month.
 Mētucrē, u, to fear.
 Mētūs, ūs, fear.
 Mečz, ā, ūm (*masc. voc. sing.*, mi), my.
 Micārē, u, to glitter, shine.
 Milēs, itis, soldier.
 Militiā, ae, military service; militiāe (*gen. sing.*), in war, on service.
 Millē, thousand.
 Minōr, ūs (*comp. of parvus*), smaller.
 Mirābilis, ē, wonderful.
 Misēr, ā, ūm, miserable, wretched.
 Misērēri, ert or ērit, to pity.
 Misērēt (*impers. verb.*), it pities, one pities.
 Mittērē, mis, miss, to send.
 Mōbilis, ē, movable.
 Mōdō, only.
 Mōnērē, u, it, to advise, admonish.
 Mons, tis, m., mountain.
 Monstrārē, āv, āt, to show.
 Mordērē, mōmord, mors, to bite.
 Mors, tis, death.
 Mortālis (mors), ē, mortal.
 Mōvērē, mōv, mōt, to move.
 Mūliēr, ēris, woman.
 Multitūdō (multūs), īnis, multitude.
 Multūs, ā, ūm, much, many; multā (*neut. pl.*), many things; multūm bōni, much good; multūm tēmpōris, much time.
 Mūrūs, ī, wall.
 Mūtārē, āv, āt, to change.

N.

Nām, for
 Namquē, for.

Nārē, nāv, to swim.
 Narrārē, āv, āt, to relate, narrate.
 Narrātiō (narrārē), narration, narrative.
 Nascī, nāt, to be born.
 Nātiō, ōnis, nation.
 Nē, interrog. particle, 287 and 288.
 Nē (used with *imperat.* and *subj.*), not.
 Nēc, neither; nēc—nēc, neither—nor.
 Nēgligērē, lex, lect, to disregard.
 Nēmō (īnis, not in good use), nobody, no one.
 Nēquidēm, not even, generally with the emphatic word between the two parts; as, nē pōpūlus quidēm, not even the people.
 Nērē, nēv, nēt, to spin.
 Nescirē, iv, it, not to know, to be ignorant of.
 Nidūs, ī, nest.
 Nihil, nothing.
 Nimiūs, ā, ūm, too much, excessive.
 Nix, nivīs, snow.
 Nōcērē, u, it, to hurt.
 Nollē, nōlu (410), to be unwilling.
 Nōmēn, īnis, name.
 Nōn, not; nōn solum—sēd etiām, not only—but also.
 Nondūm, not yet.
 Nonnē, interrog. particle; expects ans, yes. 288, REM.
 Nostēr, trā, trūm, our.
 Nōvembēr, brīs (*abl. ī*), November.
 Nox, noctis, night.
 Nūbēs, īs, cloud.
 Nullūs, ā, ūm (113, R.), no, no one.
 Nūm, interrog. particle; expects ans, no. 288, REM. [Rōne.
 Nūmā, ae, Numa, second king of Nūnc, now.
 Nūmērārē, āv, āt, to number.
 Nūmērūs, ī, number.
 Nunquām, never.
 Nuntiārē (nuntiūs), āv, āt, to announce, report.
 Nuntiūs, ī, messenger.

O.

O (interjection), O.
 O sī, O if, would that.

Obessē, fu, fūt, *to be prejudicial to*.
 Oblivisci, oblit, *to forget*.
 Obsēs, idis, *hostage*.
 Obstārē, stit, stāt, *to oppose, prevent*.
 Obtinērē, inu, ent, *to acquire, obtain*.
 Occāsiō, ōnis, *occasion*.
 Occidērē (*ob and caedēre*), cid, cis, *to kill*.
 Occidērē (*ob and cādēre*), cid, cās, *to fall*.
 Occultārē (*occulēre*), āv, āt, *to conceal, hide*.
 Octō, *eight*.
 Ocūlus, ī, *eye*.
 Odiūm, ī, *hatred*.
 Officiūm, ī, *duty*.
 Olīm, *once, formerly*.
 Omnino, *in all*.
 Omnis, ē, *all, every*.
 Oportēt (*impers.*), *it behooves, one ought*.
 Optiō, ōnis, *choice*.
 Opūs, ēris, *work*.
 Orātiō, ōnis, *oration*.
 Orātōr, ōris, *orator*.
 Ornārē, āv, āt, *to adorn*.
 Ovīs, īs, *sheep*.

P.

Pābulārī, āt, *to forage*.
 Palliūm, ī, *cloak*.
 Pārārē, āv, āt, *to prepare*.
 Pārērē, u, it, *to obey*.
 Parcērē, pēpere, parcit, *to spare*.
 Pars, tis, *part*.
 Parvūs, ā, ūm, *small, little*; parvūm, *little, a little*; parvī, *at a low price*; parvī aestimārē, *to think little of*.
 Pastōr (*pascēre*), ōris, *shepherd*.
 Pāter, tris, *father*.
 Pātriā, ae, *native country*.
 Paucūs, ā, ūm, *little, few*.
 Paupēr, ēris, *a poor man*.
 Pausāniās, ae, *Pausanias, a distinguished Spartan general*.
 Pāvō, ōnis, *peacock*.
 Pax, pācis, *peace*.
 Peccārē, āv, āt, *to sin, do wrong*.
 Pēcūniā, ae, *money*.
 Pendērē, pēpend, *to hang*.

Pēr (*prep. with acc.*), *through*.
 Perdērē, did, dit, *to waste*.
 Perfidiā, ae, *perfidy*.
 Perfūgiūm, ī, *refuge*.
 Pēriculōsūs (*periculūm*), ā, ūm, *dangerous*.
 Pēritūs, ā, ūm, *skilful, skilled in*.
 Perniciēs, ēi, *destruction*.
 Perpētūō, *for ever*.
 Perspicērē (iō), ex, ect, *to perceive, see*.
 Persuādērē, s, s, *to persuade*.
 Pertimescērē, timu, *to fear greatly*.
 Pervēnirē, vēm, vent, *to arrive at, reach*.
 Pēs, pēdis, *foot*.
 Pētērē, iv or i, it, *to seek*.
 Philōsophūs, ī, *philosopher*.
 Piētās, ātis, *piety, faithfulness*.
 Pīgēt (*impers.*), *it irks, one is grieved at*; mē pīgēt, *I am grieved*.
 Piscis, īs, *m., fish*.
 Piūs, ā, ūm, *pious*.
 Plācārē, āv, āt, *to appease*.
 Plācērē, u, it, *to please*.
 Plānē, *plainly*.
 Plūrīmūs, ā, ūm (*superl. of multus*), *very much or great*; pl., *very many*.
 Poēmā, ātis, *poem*.
 Poenitēt (*impers.*), *it repents, one repents*.
 Poētā, ae, *poet*.
 Pōnērē, pōsu, pōsit, *to place*.
 Pons, tis, *m., bridge*.
 Pōpulārīs (*populūs*), ē, *popular*.
 Pōpulūs, ī, *people*.
 Portā, ae, *gate*.
 Poscērē, pōpose, *to demand*.
 Possē, pōtu (*irreg.*, 407), *to be able*.
 Possidērē, ēd, ess, *to possess*.
 Post (*prep. with acc.*), *after*.
 Postērā, ūm (*mas. not used*), *next, following*.
 Postulārē, āv, āt, *to demand*.
 Pōtūri, it, *to get possession of*.
 Prae (*prep. with abl.*), *before, in comparison with*.
 Praebērē, u, it, *to furnish, offer*.
 Praeceptūm, ī, *precept, instruction*.
 Praedā, ae, *booty*.
 Praeditūs, ā, ūm, *endued with*.

Praemittĕrĕ, mīs, miss, *to send before*.
 Praepārārĕ, āv, āt, *to prepare*.
 Praesens, tis, *present*.
 Praestans, tis, *excellent*.
 Praestāt (*impers.*), *it is better*.
 Praetĕritūs, ā, ūm, *past*; neut. pl.,
the past.

Prātūm, ī, *meadow*.
 Prĕtiosūs, ā, ūm, *valuable*.
 Prīmūs, ā, ūm, *first*.
 Princeps (*prīmūs and cāpĕre*), ĩpīs,
chief, leader.

Prīvārĕ, āv, āt, *to deprive*.
 Prīvātūs, ā, ūm, *private, personal*.
 Prō (*prep. with abl.*), *for, before*.
 Prōbūs, ā, ūm, *honest*.
 Prōdessĕ, prōfū, prōfūt, *to profit*.
 Prōditiō, ōnīs, *treachery*.
 Prōditōr, ōrīs, *traitor*.
 Prōducĕrĕ, dux, duct, *to lead for-*
ward, or out.

Proeliūm, ī, *battle*.
 Prōficisci, fect, *to set out, to march*.
 Prōmittĕrĕ, mīs, miss, *to promise*.
 Prōmōvĕrĕ, mōv, mōt, *to move for-*
ward, advance.

Prōpensūs, ā, ūm, *inclined to*.
 Prōpiōr, ūs (*comp.*), *nearer*.
 Prōvidūs, ā, ūm, *cautious, prudent*.
 Prōvinciā (*pro and vincĕre*), ae, *pro-*
vince.

Proximūs, ā, ūm, *nearest, next*.
 Prūdēns, tis, *prudent, cautious*.
 Prudentiā (*prudens*), ae, *prudence*.
 Pūdōr, ōrīs, *shame, modesty*.
 Puellā, ae, *girl*.
 Puĕr, ī, *boy*.
 Pugnārĕ (*pugnā*), āv, āt, *to fight*.
 Pulchĕr, chrā, chrūm, *beautiful*.
 Pūnirĕ, iv, ĩt, *to punish*.
 Pūtārĕ, āv, āt, *to think, regard*.

Q.

Quaestiō, ōnīs, *question*.
 Quām (*adv.*), *how*; quām multī, *how*
many; with superl. intensive, as
 quām maximūs, *as great as pos-*
sible.
 Quām (*conj.*), *than*.
 Quamvis, *however, however much*.
 Quantūs, ā, ūm, *how great*.

Quārĕ, *wherefore*.
 Quartūs, ā, ūm, *fourth*.
 Quāsi, *as if*.
 Quatuōr, *four*.
 Quĕ (*always appended to another*
word), *and*.
 Quī, quae, quōd, *who, which, that*.
 Quī, quae, quōd (*interrog.*), *who,*
which, what?
 Quīā, *because*.
 Quiescĕrĕ, ēv, ēt, *to rest, be quiet*.
 Quīn (473), *that not, but that*.
 Quinquĕ, *five*.
 Quintūs, ā, ūm, *fifth*.
 Quīs, quae, quid (*interrog. subs.*),
who, which, what?
 Quō, *that, in order that*.
 Quōmīnūs (472), *that not, from*.
 Quōquĕ, *also*.
 Quūm, *when*; quūm—tūm, *both—*
and.

R.

Rātiō, ōnīs, *reason*.
 Rĕcipĕrĕ (iō), cĕp, cept, *to receive*.
 Rĕcordārī, āt, *to remember, call to*
mind.
 Rĕdirĕ, ī, ĩt, *to return*.
 Rĕducĕrĕ, dux, duct, *to lead back*.
 Rĕferrĕ, tūl, lāt, *to relate*.
 Rĕgĕrĕ, rex, rect, *to rule, govern*.
 Rĕgīnā, ae, *queen*.
 Rĕgnārĕ, āv, āt, *to reign*.
 Rĕgnūm, ī, *kingdom, government*.
 Rĕliquūs, ā, ūm, *remaining, the re-*
maining.
 Rĕpĕrirĕ, rĕpĕr, rĕpert, *to find*.
 Rĕs, rĕī, *thing, affair*.
 Rĕsistĕrĕ, stit, *to resist*.
 Respondĕrĕ, d, s, *to answer*.
 Responsūm, ī, *answer, response*.
 Respuĕrĕ, pu, *to reject*.
 Reūs, ī, *criminal*.
 Rĕvertĕrĕ, vert, vers, *to return, turn*
back.
 Rex, rĕgīs, *king*.
 Rhĕnūs, ī, *Rhine*.
 Rīdĕrĕ, ris, rīs, *to laugh, laugh at*.
 Rōbustūs, ā, ūm, *robust, strong*.
 Rōgārĕ, āv, āt, *to ask, entreat*.
 Rōmā, ae, *Rome*.
 Rōmānūs (*Rōmā*), ā, ūm, *Roman*.

Römülūs, i, *Romulus*.
 Rōtundūs, ā, ūm, *round*.
 Ruērē, ru, rūt (rūt), *to rush*.
 Rūmōr, ōris, *rumor*.
 Rūmpērē, rūp, rupt, *to break, violate*.
 Rūs, rūris, n, *country*.

S.

Sācerdōs, ōtis, *priest, priestess*.
 Saepē, *often*.
 Saevīrē (saevūs), iv (i), it, *to rage*.
 Sāgittā, ae, *arrow*.
 Saltārē, āv, āt, *to dance*.
 Sālūs, ūtis, *safety*.
 Sānārē, āv, āt, *to cure, reform*.
 Sancīrē, x, ct, *to enact, confirm*.
 Sanguis, inīs, m., *blood*.
 Sāpērē, iv or i, *to be wise*.
 Sāpiens, entīs, *wise*.
 Sāpientiā, ae, *wisdom*.
 Sātiārē, āv, āt, *to satisfy*.
 Sātīs, *enough*.
 Sceptrūm, i, *sceptre*.
 Scientiā, ae, *knowledge*.
 Scipiō, ōnis, *Scipio, a distinguished Roman*.
 Scīrē, iv, it, *to know*.
 Scribērē, ps, pt, *to write*.
 Sēcundūs, ā, ūm, *second*.
 Sēd, *but*.
 Sēmēn, inīs, *seed*.
 Sempēr, *always*.
 Sempiternūs, ā, ūm, *lasting, eternal*.
 Sēnātōr, ōris, *senator*.
 Sēnātūs (senex), ūs, *senate*.
 Sēnectūs, ūtis, *old age*.
 Sēnex, sēnis, *an old man*.
 Sensūs, ūs, *feeling, perception*.
 Sententiā, ae, *sentiment*.
 Sentīrē, s, s, *to perceive, to feel (as pain)*.
 Sēpēlīrē, pēlīv or i, pult, *to bury*.
 Sermō, ōnis, *discourse*.
 Servārē, āv, āt, *to keep, observe, save*.
 Servīrē, iv, it, *to serve, be slave to*.
 Serviūs, i, *Servius, a man's name*.
 Servūs, i, *slave*.
 Seu—seu, *whether—or, either—or*.

Sex, *six*.
 Si, *if*.
 Sic, *so*.
 Sicut, *so as, just as*.
 Simplex, icis, *simple*.
 Simulatiō, ōnis, *assumed appearance, pretence*.
 Sinē (prep. with abl.), *without*.
 Sinūs, ūs, *bosom*.
 Sirēn, ēnis, *siren*.
 Sitīrē, iv, it, *to thirst*.
 Sivē—sivē, *whether—or*.
 Sōcratēs, īs, *Socrates, the celebrated Grecian philosopher*.
 Sōl, sōlis, m., *sun*.
 Somnūs, i, *sleep*.
 Sōnūs, i, *sound*.
 Sōrōr, ōris, *sister*.
 Spargērē, rs, rs, *to scatter, sow*.
 Spēciosūs (species), ā, ūm, *specious, plausible*.
 Spectārē (specere), āv, āt, *to look at, behold*.
 Spērārē, āv, āt, *to hope for*.
 Spēs, ei, *hope*.
 Splendens, tīs, *shining*.
 Spōliārē, āv, āt, *to rob of, de spoil*.
 Stābilitās, ātis, *firmness, stability*.
 Stātīm (stāre), *immediately*.
 Stellā, ae, *star*.
 Stūdērē, u, *to study, strive for*.
 Stūdiōsūs, ā, ūm, *studious*.
 Stultitiā, ae, *folly*.
 Suādērē, s, s, *to advise*.
 Subvērē, vērē, vent, *to aid*.
 Succurrērē, curr, curs, *to aid, succor*.
 Suērē, su, sūt, *to sew, stitch*.
 Suī, sibī (257), *of himself, herself, &c.*
 Sullā, ae, *Sulla, a man's name*.
 Summūs, ā, ūm, *highest, greatest, sometimes the top of (267); summūs mons, the top of the mountain*.
 Sumptūs, ūs, *expense*.
 Sūpērārē, āv, āt, *to surpass, conquer, to go over*.
 Sūpēficiēs, ei, *surface*.
 Sūpervacuūs, ā, ūm, *unnecessary*.
 Supplicatiō, ōnis, *thanksgiving*.

Sûpra (adv. and prep. with acc.), above.

Sustinere, u, tent, to sustain, endure.

Suûs, â, ùm, his, her, &c.

T.

Tâcere, u, it, to be silent, to pass over in silence.

Tâm, so; *tâm*—*quâm*, so—as.

Tâmên, yet.

Tângere, têtig, tact, to touch.

Tanquâm, as if.

Tantûs, â, ùm, so great.

Târentûm, î, Tarentum, a town in Italy.

Tardûs, â, ùm, slow.

Tarquiniûs, î, Tarquin, one of the kings of Rome.

Tectûm (*tegere*), î, roof, house.

Tegere, tex, tect, to cover.

Tempûs, ôris, time.

Tenere, u, t, to hold.

Tentare, âv, ât, to try, attempt.

Terrâ, ae, the earth.

Terrere, u, it, to terrify.

Tertiûs, â, ùm, third.

Tibûr, ûris, Tibur, a town in Italy.

Timere, u, to fear.

Timidûs, â, ùm, timid.

Tondere, tôtônd, tons, to shear, shave.

Tôtûs, â, ùm (113, R.), the whole, the entire.

Tranquillûs, â, ùm, calm, tranquil.

Transire, i, it, to go over.

Três, triâ, three.

Trojanûs (*Trojâ*), â, ùm, Trojan.

Tû, tuî, thou.

Tullia, ae, Tullia, a queen of Rome.

Turpûs, ê, base, disgraceful.

Turrîs, îs (acc., em or im; abl., ê or î), tower.

Tuûs, â, ùm, your.

U.

Ullûs, â, ùm (113, R.), any.

Unde, whence.

Unquâm, ever.

Unûs, â, ùm (113, R.), one, single, single one.

Urbs, îs, city.

Ursûs, î, bear.

Usque, as far as; *usque ad*, even to.

U: (conj.), that, as.

Utî, ûs, to use.

Utilis, ê, useful.

Utilitâs (*ûtilis*), âtis, utility, advantage.

Utinâm (conj.), would that.

Utrûm (interrog. part.), whether; *utrûm—ân*, whether—or.

Uvâ, ae, grape.

V.

Vâcare, âv, ât, to have leisure for.

Vêl (conj.), or; *vêl—vêl*, either—or.

Vellere, vòlu (410), to wish, be willing.

Vêlox, ôcis, swift.

Vênâri, ât, to hunt.

Vendere, did, dît, to sell.

Vênire, vên, vent, to come.

Vêr, vêris, n., spring.

Verbûm, î, word.

Vêreri, it, to fear.

Vêrô, indeed, truly.

Vêrûs, â, ùm, true, real; *vêrûm*, truth.

Vêruntâmên, but yet.

Vestêr, trâ, trûm, your.

Vestis, îs, garment.

Vêtustûs, â, ùm, ancient.

Viâ, ae, way, road.

Victimâ, ae, victim.

Victoriâ, ae, Victoria.

Videre, vid, vis, to see; pass., *vidêri*, to seem.

Vigilare (*vigil*), âv, ât, to watch.

Viginti, twenty.

Vincere, vic, vict, to conquer.

Vincire, vinx, vinct, to bind.

Vinculûm, î, chain.

Vindicare, âv, ât, to avenge.

Violare, âv, ât, to violate, wrong, break.

Vîr, vîri, man, hero.

Virgô, înis, virgin, maiden.

Virtūs, ūtis, *virtue, manliness.*

Vīs, vīs (*acc., vim*), *pl.*, vīrēs, vīriūm,
&c., force, strength.

Vītā, ae, *life.*

Vītārē, āv, āt, *to shun, avoid.*

Vītūpērārē, āv, āt, *to blame, criticise.*

Vīvērē, vix, vict, *to live.*

Vōcārē, āv, āt, *to call.*

Vōlārē, āv, āt, *to fly.*

Vōluptās, ātis, *pleasure.*

Vox, vōcis, *voice.*

Vulnērārē, āv, āt, *to wound*

Vulnūs, ěris, *wound*

Vulpēs, is, *fox.*

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

A.

- Ability*, ingēniūm, ī.
About, dē (*with abl.*).
Above, sūprā (*adv. and prep. with acc.*).
Abridgment, ěpītōmĕ, ěs.
Accept, accēpĕrĕ (iō), cĕp, cept (550).
Accomplish, effĭcĕrĕ (iō), fĕc, fect.
Accuse, accūsārĕ, āv, āt.
Achilles, Achillĕs, īs.
Acquire, obtĭnĕrĕ, tĭnu, tent.
Acquit, absolvĕrĕ, v, ūt.
Act, v., fācĕrĕ (iō), fĕc, fact.
Admiration, admirātiō, ōnĭs.
Admonish, mōnĕrĕ, u, ĭt, admōnĕrĕ, &c.
Adorn, ornārĕ, āv, āt.
Advance, prēmōvĕrĕ, mōv, mōt.
Advantage, ūtilitās, ātis.
Advice, consĭliūm, ī.
Advise, suādĕrĕ, s, s; mōnĕrĕ, u, ĭt.
Aeneas, Aenĕās, ae.
Affair, rĕs, rĕl.
After, post (*with acc.*).
Again, ĭtĕrūm.
Again and again, ĕtiām atquĕ ĕtiām.
Against, ĭn (*acc.*); contrā (*acc.*).
Aid, s., adjūmentūm, ī; auxiliūm, ī.
Aid, v., subvĕnĭrĕ, vĕn, vent, adjūvārĕ, jūv, jūt.
All (*as a whole*), cunctūs, ā, ūm.
All (*every*), omnĭs, ě.
Alps, Alpĕs, iūm.
Also, ĕtiām, quōquĕ.
Altar, ārā, ae.
Although, licĕt.
Always, sempĕr.
Ambassador, lĕgātūs, ī.
American, Amĕricānūs, ā, ūm.

- Amphibious animal*, amphĭbiūm, ī
Ample, amplūs, ā, ūm.
Anchises, Anchĭsĕs, ae.
Ancient, vĕtustūs, ā, ūm.
And, ĕt, quĕ (*enclitic*), āc.
Anger, irā, ae.
Animal, ānimāl, ālis.
Announce, nuntiārĕ, āv, āt (540).
Answer, s., responsūm, ī.
Answer, v., respondĕrĕ, d, s.
Any, ullūs, ā, ūm (113, R.).
Any one, āliquis, ā, quĭd.
Appearance, fāciĕs, ĕl.
Appease, plācārĕ, āv, āt.
Appoint, constituĕrĕ, u, ūt.
Approach, s., adventūs, ūs (521).
Approach, v., apprōpinquārĕ, āv, āt; accĕdĕrĕ, cess, cess.
Arm, brāchiūm, ī.
Armor-bearer, armĭgĕr, ī.
Army, exercĭtūs, ūs.
Arouse, excĭtārĕ, āv, āt.
Arrange, constituĕrĕ, u, ūt.
Arrange, array, instruĕrĕ, ux, uct.
Arrest, comprĕhendĕrĕ, d, s.
Arrival, adventūs, ūs (521).
Arrive at, pervĕnĭrĕ, vĕn, vent.
Arrow, sāgittā, ae.
Art, ars, artĭs.
As, ūt.
As far as, usquĕ.
As if, quāsi, tanquām.
As possible, quām with superl (309).
Ascanius, Ascāniūs, ī.
Ascertain, cōgnoscĕrĕ, nōv, nĭt.
Ask, rōgārĕ, āv, āt.
Ask advice, consŭlĕrĕ, lu, lt.
Ass, asinūs, ī.
Asssemble, convĕnĭrĕ, vĕn, vent (550).
Assent, give assent, annuĕrĕ, u, ūt.
Assumed appearance, simŭlātiō, ōnĭs.

At a high price, magnī; *at a very high price*, maximī.
At a low price, parvī.
At home, domī.
Athenian, Athēniensis, ē.
Athens, Athēnae, ārium.
Attack, impētūs, ūs.
Attain, attingērē, tīg, tact.
Attempt, tentārē, āv, āt.
Audacious, audax, ācis.
Author, auctōr, ōris.
Autumn, autūmn, ī.
Avarice, āvāritiā, ae.
Avaricious, āvārūs, ā, ūm.
Avenge, vindicārē, āv, āt.
Avoid, vitārē, āv, āt.

B.

Bad, imprōbūs, ā, ūm; *malūs*, ā, ūm.
Badly, mālē.
Bake, cōquērē, cox, coct.
Balbus, Balbūs, ī.
Banish, expellērē, pūl, puls.
Base, turpis, ē.
Battle, proeliūm, ī.
Be, essē, fu, fūt.
Be able, possē, pōtu.
Be born, nascī, nāt.
Be engaged in, intēressē, fu, fūt.
Be ignorant of, nescīre, īv (i), īt.
Be made, fiērī, fact.
Be on one's guard against, cāvērē, cāv, caut.
Be prejudicial to, ōbessē, fu, fūt.
Be present, ādessē, fu, fūt.
Be quiet, quiescērē, quiēv, quiēt.
Be silent, tēcērē, u, īt.
Be slave to, servīrē, īv, īt.
Be unwilling, nollē, nōlu.
Be willing, vellē, vōlu.
Be wise, sāpērē, īv or ī.
Bear, s., ursūs, ī.
Bear, v., ferrē, tūl, lāt.
Beard, barbā, ae.
Beautiful, pulchēr, chrā, chrūm.
Because, quīā.
Become, fiērī, fact.
Before (adv.), antea.
Before (prep.), antē, cōrām, prae, prō.
Beg for, sue for, pētērē, īv (i), īt.
Begin to bloom, flōrescērē (544).

Beginning, inceptūm, ī.
Behold, spectārē, āv, āt.
Believe, crēdērē, crēdid, crēdit.
Below, infā (with acc.).
Benefit, bēnēficiūm, ī.
Between, intēr (with acc.).
Bind, vincīrē, vinx, vinct.
Bird, āvis, īs, f.
Bite, mordēre, mōmord, mors.
Blame, s., culpā, ae.
Blame, v., vitūpērārē, āv, āt.
Blind, caecūs, ā, ūm.
Blood, sanguis, īnis, m.
Bloom, flōrērē, u.
Body, corpūs, ōris.
Book, libēr, librī.
Booty, praedā.
Bosom, sinūs, ūs.
Both—and, et—et; quā—tūm.
Boy, puēr, ī.
Brave, fortis, ē.
Bravely, fortitēr.
Break, frangērē, frēg, fract; rum-pērē, rūp, rupt; violārē, āv, āt;
break one's word, fidēm violārē.
Bribery, ambītūs, ūs.
Bridge, pons, tīs, m.
Bring, bring to, afferrē, attūl, allāt.
Bring water, āquārī, āt.
Brother, frātēr, trīs.
Brutus, Brūtūs, ī.
Build, aedificārē, āv, āt; construērē, x, ct; condērē, did, dit.
Building, aedificiūm, ī.
Burn, incendērē, d, s.
Bury, sēpēlirē, īv (i), pult.
But, sēd, āt, autēm.
But, now (in reasoning), atquī.
But, but yet, attāmēn, vērunāmēn.
But that, quā.
Buy ēmērē, ēm, empt.
By (with voluntary agent), ā, āb, aq, in other cases indicated by abl.

C.

Caesar, Caesār, āris.
Caius, Caiūs, ī.
Calamity, cālāmītās, ātis.
Call, vōcārē, āv, āt.
Call to mind, rēcordārī, āt.
Calm, tranquillūs, ā, ūm.

Camp, castră, ōrūm.
Captive, captivūs, ī.
Curd, carpērē, ps, pt.
Curry, ferrē, tūl, lāt.
Curry on (as war), gērērē, gess, gest.
Carthage, Carthāgō, inīs.
Carthaginian, Carthāgīniensis, ē.
Catch, dēprēhendērē, d, s.
Cautious, prūdēns, tīs; prōvidūs,
 ā, ūm.
Cavalry, equitātūs, ūs.
Cave, antrūm, ī.
Celebrated, celēbēr, brīs, brē.
Censure, vitūpērārē, āv, āt.
Certain, certūs, ā, ūm.
Chain, vinculūm, ī; cātēnā, ae.
Change, mūtārē, āv, āt.
Chariot, currūs, ūs.
Chastise, castigārē, āv, āt.
Chief, princeps, cīpis.
Children, libērī, ōrūm.
Choice, optiō, ōnīs.
Christian, Christianūs, ī.
Cicero, Cicērō, ōnīs.
Citadel, arx, arcīs.
Citizen, cīvīs, īs.
City, urbs, urbīs.
Civil, cīvilis, ē (528).
Clemency, clēmēntiā, ae.
Cloak, palliūm, ī.
Cloud, nūbēs, is.
Cold, frigūs, ōrīs.
Collect, comparārē, āv, āt.
Color, cōlōr, ōrīs.
Come, vērērē, vēr, vent.
Come together, convērērē, vēr, vent.
Command v., impērārē, āv, āt.
Commands s., impērātā, ōrūm.
Commander, impērātōr, ōrīs (521).
Compel, compellērē, pūl, puls.
Conceal, occultārē, āv, āt.
Concerning, dē (with abl.).
Condemn, damnārē, āv, āt.
Condition, cōditiō, ōnīs.
Conference, collōquiūm, ī.
Confine, continērē, tīnu, tent.
Confirm, sancērē, sanx, sanct.
Conquer, supērārē, āv, āt; vincērē,
 vīc, vict; dēvincērē, vic, vict.
Construct, construērē, x, ct.
Consul, consūl, ūlīs.
Consult, consūlērē, lu, lt.

Contend, concertārē, āv, āt.
Contented, contentūs, ā, ūm.
Contest, certāmēn, inīs.
Convert, convertērē, t, s.
Cook, cōquērē, cox, coct.
Correct, corrigērē, rex, rect.
Corrupt, corrumpērē, rūp, rupt.
Council, conciliūm, ī.
Country, rūs, rūris.
Cover, tēgērē, tex, tect.
Cowardly, ignāvūs, ā, ūm.
Crime, flāgitiūm, ī.
Criminal, reūs, ī.
Criticise, vitūpērārē, āv, āt.
Crown, s., cōrōnā, ae.
Crown, crown with a garland, cōrōnā
 cingērē, nx, nct.
Cry out, exclāmārē, āv, āt.
Cultivate, cōlērē, cōlu, cult.
Cure, sārārē, āv, āt.

D.

Dance, saltārē, āv, āt.
Dangerous, pēriculōsūs, ā, ūm.
Daring, audax, ācīs.
Daughter, filiā, ae.
Day, diēs, ēī.
Death, mors, tīs.
Deceive, dēcipērē (iō), cēp, cept.
Deceptive, fallax, ācīs.
Decide, dēcernērē, crēv, crēt.
Declare, indicērē, dix, dict; *declare*
 war, bellūm indicērē.
Decree, dēcernērē, crēv, crēt.
Defend, dēfendērē, d, s.
Defile, angustiae, ārūm.
Defraud, fraudārē, āv, āt.
Delightful, jēcundūs, ā, ūm.
Demand, poscērē, pōpōsc; postūlārē
 āv, āt.
Demonstrate, dēmonstrare, āv, āt.
Depart, abērē, i, īt.
Deprive, privārē, āv, āt.
Derive, have, hābērē, u, īt.
Desire, s., cūpīditās, ātīs.
Desire, v., cūpērē (iō), iv or i, īt.
Desirous of, cūpīdūs, ā, ūm.
Despoil, spōliārē, āv, āt.
Destroy, delērē, ēv, ēt.
Destruction, pernīciēs, ēī.
Deter, dētterrērē, u, īt.

Dido, Dīdō, ōnīs.
Difficult, difficīlis, ě.
Diligence, diligentiā, ac.
Diligent, diligens, tis.
Direct, order, jūbērē, juss, juss.
Discharge, fungī, funct.
Discourse, sermō, ōnīs.
Discover, conspīcērē (iō), spex, spect.
Disgraceful, turpis, ě.
Dismiss, dimittērē, mīs, miss.
Disregard, nēgligērē, lex, lect.
Distance, intervallū, ī.
Divide, dividērē, vīs, vīs.
Divine, divīnūs, ā, ūm.
Divitiacus, Divitiācūs, ī.
Do, fācērē (iō), fēc, fact.
Do good to, prōdessē, prōfu, prōfūt.
Do wrong, peccārē, āv, āt.
Dog, cānis, is.
Doubt, dubitārē, āv, āt.
Dove, cōlumbā, ae.
Drink, bibērē, bib, bibīt.
Drive, āgērē, ēg, act; compellērē, pūl, puls.
During, inter (*with acc.*).
Duty, officiū, ī.
Dwell, hābitārē, āv, āt.

E.

Eagle, aquilā, ae.
Earth, terrā, ae.
Easy, fācilis, ě.
Eat, ēdērē, ēd, ēs.
Edifice, aedificiū, ī.
Effect, effīcērē (iō), fēc, fect.
Eight, octō.
Either—or, aut—aut.
Elegance, ēlēgantiā, ae.
Elephant, ēlēphās, antīs,
Enact, sancirē, x, ct.
End, finīs, is, m. and f.
Endued with, praeditūs, ā, ūm.
Endure, sustinērē, tīnu, tent; ferrē, tūl, lāt.
Enemy, hostīs, is, c.
Engage (as battle), committērē, mīs, miss; *engage battle*, proeliūm committērē.
Enjoy, fruī, fruct (fruit).
Enlighten, illustrārē, āv, āt.
Enough, sātīs.

Entire, tōtūs, ā, ūm 113, R.).
Entreat, rōgārē, āv, āt.
Enumerate, enūmērārē, āv, āt.
Envy, invidērē, vīd, vīs.
Epistle, ēpistolā, ae; *litterae*, ārūm
Equity, aequitās, ātis.
Err, errārē, āv, āt.
Estate, fundūs, ī.
Eternal, sempiternūs, ā, ūm.
Even, etnām.
Even to, usquē ad.
Ever, unquām.
Every, omnis, e.
Evil, mālū, ī.
Excellent, praestans, ās.
Excessive, nīmiūs, ā, ūm.
Excite, excitārē, āv, āt.
Exclaim, exclāmārē, āv, āt.
Exercise, exercērē, u, it.
Expect, exspectārē, āv, āt.
Expel, expellērē, pūl, puls.
Expense, sumptūs, ūs.
Explain, expōnērē, pōsu, pōsit.
Eye, oculūs, ī.

F.

Fabulous, fābulōsūs, ā, ūm.
Face, faciēs, ēī.
Faith, fidēs, ēī.
Faithful, fidēlis, ě.
Faithfulness, piētās, ātis.
Fall, cādērē, cēcīd, cās; occidērē, cīd, cās.
False, fallax, acīs (535).
Falsehood, mendaciū, ī.
Farm, fundūs, ī.
Father, pāter, pātrīs.
Fault, culpā, ae.
Faustulus, Faustulūs, ī.
Favor, s., grātiā, ae.
Favor, v., fāvērē, fāv, faul.
Fear, s., mētūs, ūs.
Fear, v., tīmērē, u; mētuērē, u, it
vērērī, it.
Fear greatly, pertimescērē, v u.
Feast, coenā, ae.
Feel (as pain, &c.), sentirē . .
Feeling, sensūs, ūs.
Few, paucī, ae, ā.
Fidelity, fidēs, ēī.
Field, āgēr, āgrī.

Fifth, quintūs, ā, ūm.
Fight, pugnārē, āv, āt.
Figure, figurā, ae.
Fill, complērē, ēv, ēt.
Find, invēnirē, vēn, vent; rēpērirē, rēpēr, rēpert.
Fine, beautiful, pulchēr, chrā, chrŭm.
Finish, finirē, iv, it (540).
Fire, ignis, is, m.
Firm, firmūs, ā, ūm.
Firmness, stābilitās, ātis.
First, primūs, ā, ūm.
Fish, piscis, is, m.
Five, quinquē.
Flatterer, ādūlātōr, ōris.
Flattery, ādūlatiō, ōnis.
Flay, dēglūbērē, ps, pt.
Flee, fugērē (iō), fūg, fūgit.
Flee for refuge, confūgērē (iō), fūg.
Flee from, ēvōlārē, āv, āt.
Flight, fūgā, ae.
Flock, grex, grēgis, m.
Flourish, florērē, u.
Flow, fluērē, x, x.
Flower, flōs, ōris.
Fly, vōlārē, āv, āt.
Fly away, ēvōlārē, āv, āt.
Following, postērā, ūm (*masc. nom. not used*).
Folly, stultitiā, ae.
Food, cibūs, i.
Foot, pēs, pēdis.
For (conj.), enīm, nām, namquē.
For (prep.), prō (*with abl.*).
For ever, perpētūō.
Forage, pābūlārī, āt.
Force, mānūs, ūs vīs, vis (*pl. virēs*).
Forces, cōpia, ārŭm.
Forget, obliviscī, oblit.
Formerly, ōlīm.
Fortune, fortūnā, ae.
Found, condērē, did, dīt (550).
Four, quātuōr.
Fourth, quartūs, ā, ūm.
Fox, vulpēs, is.
Free, libēr, ā, ūm.
Frequent, crēbēr, brā, brŭm.
Friend, āmicūs, i.
Friendship, āmicitiā, ae.
Frighten, terrērē, u, it.

From, ā, āb, abs, dē, ex, and *sometimes before participial nouns*, quōmīnūs.
Fulfil, fungī, funct.
Furnish, praeberē, u, it.
Further, ampliūs.
Future, fūtūrūs, ā, ūm.

G.

Gallic, Gallīcūs, ā, ūm.
Game, lūdūs, i.
Garden, hortūs, i.
Garland, cōrōnā, ae.
Garment, vestis, is.
Gate, portā, ae.
Gather, carpērē, ps, pt.
Gaul, a Gaul, Gallūs, i.
Germany, Germāniā, ae.
Get possession of, pōtirī, it.
Gift, donŭm, i.
Girl, puellā, ae.
Give, dārē, dēd, dāt; dōnārē, āv, āt.
Glitter, micārē, u.
Glory, glōriā, ae.
Go, irē, iv or i, it.
Go away, ābirē, i, it.
Go over, transirē, i, it; sūpērārē, āv, āt.
Gold, aurŭm, i.
Golden, aureūs, ā, ūm.
Good, bōnūs, ā, ūm.
Govern, rēgērē, rex, rect.
Government, rēguŭm, i.
Grain, grānŭm, i.
Grape, ūvā, ae.
Gratitude, grātiā, ae.
Great, māgnūs, ā, ūm; *at a great price*, māgnī; *it is a great thing*, māgnŭm est.
Greater, majōr, ūs.
Greatest, highest, summūs, ā, ūm.
Greatest, very great, maxīmūs, ā, ūm. *at a very great price*, maxīmī.
Greatness, māgnitūdō, inis.
Greeks, Graeci, ōrŭm.
Grief, dōlōr, ōris; luctūs, ūs.
Grieve, dōlērē, u, it; lūgērē, lux.
Grove, lūcūs, i.
Guard, custōdirē, iv, it (540).
Guide, dux, dūcis.

H.

Hand, mānūs, ūs.
Hang, pendēre, pēpend.
Hannibal, Hannibāl, ālis.
Happily, beatē.
Happiness, felicitās, ātis.
Happy, beatūs, ā, ūm.
Harmless, innoxius, ā, ūm.
Hatred, odiūm, ī.
Have, habēre, u, īt.
Hawk, accipitēr, trīs.
He himself, ipsē, ā, ūm.
He, she, it, illē, ā, ūd.
He, she, or it is, est.
Head, capūt, itīs.
Hear, audirē, īv, īt.
Heart, cōr, cordis, n.
Heat, ignis, is, m.
Heaven, the heavens, coelūm, ī.
Heavy, grāvis, ē.
Help, s., adjumentūm, ī.
Help, v., adjūvārē, jūv, jūt.
Herd, grex, grēgis, m.
Hero, vir, viri; hērōs, oīs.
Hide, occultāre, āv, āt.
High, altūs, ā, ūm.
Highest, summūs, ā, ūm.
Hinder, impēdirē, īv (i), īt.
His, her, its, &c., suūs, ā, ūm.
History, histōriā, ae.
Hold, tēnērē, u, tent.
Home, dōmūs, ūs or ī, f.
Honest, prōbūs, ā, ūm.
Honey, mēl, mellis.
Honor, hōnōr, ōris.
Hope, s., spēs, ēl.
Hope, hope for, spērārē, āv, āt.
Horse, equūs, ī.
Horseman, equēs, itīs.
Hostage, obsēs, idīs.
House, tectūm, ī; dōmūs, ūs or ī, f.
How, quām; *how many*, quām multi.
How great, quantūs, ā, ūm; *how much*, quantūm (with gen.).
However, however much, quamvis.
Human, hūmānūs, ā, ūm.
Hunger, fāmēs, is.
Hunt, venārī, āt.
Hurt, nocērē, u, īt.
Husband, conjux, ūgis.
Husbandman, āgricolā, ae.

I.

I, egō, mei.
If, si, dummōdō.
Ignorance, ignōrātiō, ōnis.
Ignorant, ignārūs, ā, ūm.
Illuminate, illustrārē, āv, āt.
Immediately, statim.
Immense, immensūs, ā, ūm.
Immortal, immortalis, ē.
Immovable, immōbilis, ē.
Impede, impēdirē, īv (i), īt.
Impious, impiūs, ā, ūm.
Imprudent, imprūdēns, tīs.
In, in (with abl.).
In all, omninō.
In comparison with, prae.
In order that, quō.
In person, in presence of, cōrām.
In the mean time, intērim.
In such a manner, adeō.
Inclined to, prōpensūs, ā, ūm.
Increase, augērē, aux, auct; *creasce*, crēv, crēt.
Incredible, incrēdibilis, ē (533).
Indeed, enī, vērō.
Indolent, ignāvūs, ā, ūm.
Indulge, indulgērē, ls, lt.
Industry, industriā, ae.
Inflict, infligērē, x, ct.
Inhabit, habitārē, āv, āt.
Inhabitant, incolā, ae, (560).
Injury, injuriā, ae.
Innocent, innōcens, tīs.
Instruct, erūdīrē, īv, īt.
Instruction, consiliūm, ī: praeceptūm, ī.
Into, in (with acc.).
Invade, invādērē, vās, vās, (550).
Invite, call, vocārē, āv, āt.
Iron, ferrūm, ī.
Irritate, irritārē, āv, āt.
It behooves, oportēt.
It is better, praestāt.
It is well known, is an admitted fact, constat.
It is lawful, licēt.
It pities, one pities, misērēt.
It repents, one repents, poenitēt.
Italy, Itāliā, ae.

J.

Journey, itēr, itinēris, n.
Judge, s., jūdex, icīs.
Judge, v., jūdicārē, āv, āt.
Just, justūs, ā, ūm.
Just as, sicūt.
Justice, aequitās, ātis.

K.

Keep, servārē, āv, āt.
Kid, hādūs, ī.
Kill, occidērē, cīd, cīs; interficērē (iō), fēc, fect.
Kind, sort, s., gēnūs, črīs.
Kind, a., bēnignūs, ā, ūm.
King, rex, rēgis.
Kingdom, rēgnūm, ī.
Know, scīrē, scīv, scīt.
Knowledge, scientiā, ae.
Known, cōgnitūs, ā, ūm.

L.

Labor, s., lābōr, ōrīs.
Labor, v., lābōrārē, āv, āt.
Lamb, āgnūs, ī.
Large, māgnūs, ā, ūm; amplūs, ā, ūm.
Larger, majōr, ūs.
Last, dūrārē, āv, āt.
Lasting, sempiternūs, ā, ūm.
Latinus, Lātinūs, ī.
Laugh, laugh at, ridērē, rīs, rīs.
Lavinia, Lāvinīā, ae.
Law, lex, lēgis.
Lead, dūcērē, dux, duct; āgērē, ēg, act.
Lead back, rēdūcērē, dux, duct.
Lead forth, ēdūcērē, dux, duct.
Lead forward or out, prōdūcērē, dux, duct.
Lead to, addūcērē, dux, duct.
Leader, dux, dūcīs.
Learn, discērē, dīdīc.
Legion, lēgiō, ōnīs.
Letter, literae, ārum: ēpistolā, ae.
Levy, compārārē, āv, āt.
Lie, a falsehood, mendāciūm, ī.
Life, vitā, ae.
Light, lux, lūcīs.

Line of battle, āciēs, ēl.
Lion, lēō, ōnīs.
Listen to, audirē, īv, īt.
Little, parvūs, ā, ūm; a little, parvūm: paucūs, ā, ūm.
Little garden, hortulūs, ī. (515).
Live, vivērē, vix, vict.
Lofty, altūs, ā, ūm.
Look at, spectārē, āv, āt.
Lose, āmittērē, mīs, miss.
Love, āmārē, āv, āt.

M.

Maiden, virgō, īnīs.
Make, fācērē (iō), fēc, fact: make a reply, responsūm dārē.
Man, hōmō, īnīs: vīr, ī.
Manliness, virtūs, ūtis.
Many, multūs, ā, ūm; many things, multā.
March, prōficiscī, fect.
Marine, of the sea, mārīuūs, ā, ūm.
Master as teacher, māgīstēr, trī.
Master as owner, dōmīnūs, ī.
Matron, mātērōnā, ae.
Meadow, prātūm, ī.
Meanwhile, intērīm.
Meeting, conciliūm, ī.
Melt, liquescērē, licu.
Merciful, clēmēns, tīs: lēnīs, ē.
Messenger, nuntiūs, ī.
Middle, midst of, middle of, mēdiūs, ā, ūm, (267.)
Mild, lēnīs, ē: clēmēns, tīs.
Mildness, clēmēntiā, ae.
Military service, militiā, ae.
Mind, ānimūs, ī; mind, the reasoning faculty, mens, tīs.
Miserable, misēr, ā, ūm.
Misfortune, cālāmītās, ātis: mālūm, ī.
Mislead, corrumpērē, rūp, rupt.
Modesty, pūdōr, ōrīs.
Money, pecūniā, ae.
Month, mensīs, īs, m.
Moon, lūnā, ae.
More, ampliūs, (adv.).
Mortal, mortālis, ē.
Mother, mātēr, trīs.
Mountain, mons, tīs, m.
Mourn, wear mourning for, lūgērē, x, ct.

Movable, mōbīlis, ē.
Move, mōvērē, mōv, mōt.
Move forward, prēmōvērē, mōv, mōt.
Much, multūs, ā, ūm; *much good*,
 multūm bōnī; *much time*, mul-
 tūm tempōris.
Multitude, multitūdō, īnis.
My, meūs, ā, ūm.

N.

Name, nōmēn, īnis.
Narrate, narrārē, āv, āt.
Narration, narratīve, narrātiō, ōnis,
 (521.)
Narrow pass, angustīae, ārūm.
Nation, nātiō, ōnis.
Native country, pātriā, ae.
Natural to man, hūmānūs, ā, ūm.
Nature, gēnūs, ēris.
Nearer, prōpiōr, ūs.
Neither, nēc; *neither—nor*, nēc—
 nēc.
Nest, nidūs, ī.
Never, nunquām.
Next, nearest, proximūs, ā, ūm;
next following, postērā, ūm (masc.
 nom. not used).
Night, nox, noctis.
Nightingale, lusciniā, ae.
No, *no one* (adj.), nullūs, ā, ūm
 (113. R.).
No one, *nobody*, (sub.), nēmō, (īnis).
Not, nōn; *with imperat. or subj.*, nē;
not only—but also, nōn solum—
 sēd etiām.
Not even, nēquidēm.
Not to know, nescirē, iv, it.
Not yet, nondūm.
Nothing, nihīl (īndec.).
November, Nōvembēr, brīs (abl. ī.).
Numa, Nūmā, ae.
Number, s., nūmērūs, ī.
Number, v., nūmērārē, āv, āt.

O.

O, O.
O if, o sī.
Obey, pārērē, u, it.
Observe, servārē, āv, āt.
Obtain, obtinērē, u, tent.

Occasion, occasiō, ōnis.
Of himself, suī.
Of yesterday, hesternūs, ā, ūm.
Offend-against, violārē, āv, āt.
Offer, prābērē, u, it.
Often, saepē.
Old age, sēnectūs, ūtis.
Old man, sēnex, sēniā.
On service, militiae.
On this side, cis.
One, *single one*, ūnūs, ā, ūm (113. R.).
One is grieved at, pigēt; *I am grieved*
 at, mē pigēt.
One ought, oportēt.
Only, mōdō.
Open, āpērērē, u, t.
Openly, cōrām.
Opportunity, occasiō, ōnis.
Oppose, obstārē, stit, stāt.
Or, aut, vėl; *either—or*, vėl—vėl.
Or, in double questions, ān.
Oration, ōrātiō, ōnis.
Orator, ōrātōr, ōris.
Order, jūbērē, juss, juss.
Other, āliūs, ā, ūd (113. R.).
Our, nostēr, trā, trūm.
Overhang, impendērē.
Overthrow, ēvertērē, rt, ra.

P.

Pain, dōlōr, ōris.
Pardon, ignoscērē, nōv, nēt.
Parent, pārens, entis.
Part, pars, tis.
Pass over in silence, tēcērē, u, it.
Passion, cupiditās, ātis.
Past, praetērītūs, ā, ūm; *the past*,
 praetērītā.
Pausanias, Pausāniās, ae.
Peace, pax, cis.
Peacock, pāvō, ōnis.
People, pōpūlus, ī.
Perceive, sentirē, s. s; perspicērē
 (iō), spex, spect.
Perception, sensūs, ūs.
Perfidy, perfīdiā, ae.
Personal, privātūs, ā, ūm.
Persuade, persuādērē, s. s.
Philosopher, philōsōphūs, ī.
Physician, medicūs, ī.
Piety, piētās, ātis.

Pious, piūs, ā, ūm,
Pity, mīserēri, īt.
Place, s., lōcūs, ī (pl. ī, or ā.)
Place, v., pōnērē, pūsu, pōsit.
Plainly, plānē.
Plausible, spēciōsūs, ā, ūm.
Play, s., lūdūs, ī.
Play, v., lūdērē, s. s.
Pleasant, jūcundūs, ā, ūm.
Please, plācērē, u, īt.
Pleasure, vōluptās, ātis.
Plough, ārārē, āv, āt.
Pluck, carpērē, ps, pt.
Plunge into, immergērē, rs, rs.
Poem, poēmā, ātis.
Poet, poētā, ae.
Poor man, paupēr, ēris.
Popular, pōpūlāris, ē (528).
Possess, possidērē, ēd, ess.
Practise, cōlērē, u, cult; exercērē, u, īt.
Praise, s., laus, dis.
Praise, v., laudārē, āv, āt.
Precept, praeceptūm, ī.
Prefer, mallē, mālu.
Prepare, pārārē, āv, āt; praepārārē.
Present (adj.), praesens, tīs.
Present, to make a present, dōnārē, āv, āt.
Preserve, conservārē, āv, āt.
Pretext, simūlatiō, ōnis.
Prevent, dēterrērē, u, īt; obstārē, stīt, stāt.
Priest, priestess, sacerdos, ōtis.
Private, prīvātūs, ā, ūm.
Prize, aestimārē, āv, āt; *prize highly*, māgnī aestimārē.
Procure, compārārē, āv, āt.
Profit, prōdessē, prōfu, prōfūt.
Promise, prōmittērē, mīs, miss.
Provided, dummodō.
Province, prōvincia, ae.
Prudence, prūdentiā, ae.
Prudent, prūdēns, tīs; prōvīdūs, ā, ūm.
Pull down, ēvertērē, t, s.
Punish, pūnīrē, īv, īt.
Pupil, discipulūs, ī.
Purchase, ēmērē, ēm, empt.
Put confidence in, crēdērē, crēdīd, crēdīt.
Put to flight, fūgārē, āv, āt, (540).

Q.

Quarrel, concertārē, āv, āt.
Queen, rēginā, ae.
Question, quaestiō, ōnis.
Quickly, cēlērītēr.

R.

Rage, saevīrē, īv, īt.
Raise, compārārē, āv, āt.
Reach, attingērē, tīg, tact; pervēnīrē, vēm, vent.
Read, lēgērē, lēg, lect.
Real, vērūs, ā, ūm.
Reason, rātiō, ōnis.
Receive, accipērē (iō), cēp, cept; rēcipērē (iō); cāpērē (iō), cēp, capt.
Reform, sārārē, āv, āt.
Refuge, perfūgiūm, ī.
Regard, pūtārē, āv, āt.
Reign, rēgnārē, āv, āt.
Reject, respuērē, pu.
Relate, narrārē, āv, āt; rēferrē, tūl, lat.
Relying on, frētūs, ā, ūm.
Remain, mārērē, mans, mans.
Remaining, rēliquūs, ā, ūm.
Remember, rēcōrdārī, āt.
Render thanks, grātiās āgērē.
Repent, one repents, poenītēt (435).
Report, s., rūmōr, ōris.
Report, nuntiārē, āv, āt.
Repress, compescērē, cu.
Resist, rēsistērē, stīt, stīt.
Response, responsūm, ī.
Rest, the rest, rēliquūs, ā, ūm.
Rest, quiescērē, quīev, quīēt.
Restrain, continērē, u, tent; compescērē, cu.
Return, rēdirē, ī, īt; rēvertērē, t, s. (551.)
Rhine, Rhēnūs, ī.
Rich, lōcuplēs, ētis.
Ring, anūlūs, ī.
Ripen, cōquērē, cox, coct.
River, flūmēn, īnis.
Road, viā, ae.
Rob of, spōliārē, āv, āt.
Robust, rōbustūs, ā, ūm.
Roman, Rōmānūs, ā, ūm.
Rome Rōmā, ae.

Romulus, Römülūs, I.
Roof, tectūm, I.
Round, rōtundūs, ā, ūm.
Rule, rēgērē, rex, rect.
Rumor, rūmōr, ōris.
Run, currērē, cūcurr, curs.
Rush, ruērē, ru, rūt.

S.

Safe, incōlūmīs, ē.
Safety, sālūs, ūtis.
Same, idēm, eādēm, idēm.
Satisfy, sātiārē, āv, āt.
Save, servārē, āv, āt.
Say, dicērē, dix, dict.
Scatter, spargērē, spars, spars.
Sceptre, sceptrūm, I.
Scipio, Scīpiō, onis.
Sea, mārē, is.
Second, sēcundūs, ā, ūm.
See, vidērē, vīd, vīs; conspīcērē (iō), spex, spect.
Seed, sēmēn, inīs.
Seek, pētērē, iv or i, it.
Seem, vidēri, vīs.
Seize, arripērē (iō), ipu, ept; dēprēhendērē, hend, hens.
Self, ipsē, ā, ūm.
Sell, vendērē, did, dit.
Senate, sēnātūs, ūs, (517.)
Senator, sēnātor, ōris.
Send, mittērē, mīs, miss.
Send before, praemittērē, mīs, miss.
Sentiment, sententiā, ae.
Separate, disjungērē, x, ct.
Serve, servīrē, iv (i), it.
Servius, Serviūs, I.
Set forth, expōnērē, pōsu, pōsīt.
Set on fire, incendērē, d, s.
Set out, prōficiēci, fect.
Severe, ācēr, ācrīs, ācrē.
Sew, stīch, suērē, su, sūt.
Shame, pūdōr, ōris.
Sharp, ācēr, ācrīs, ācrē.
Shave, tondērē, tōtond, tons.
Shear, tondērē, tōtond, tons.
Sheep, ōvis, is.
Shepherd, pastōr, ōris. (520.)
Shield, clipeūs, I.
Shine, mīcārē, u; lūcērē, x.
Shining, splēdens, tīs.

Short, brēvis, ē.
Shoulder, hūmērūs, I.
Show, monstrārē, āv, āt; dēmonstrārē, āv, āt.
Shrub, frūtex, icīs, m.
Shun, vitārē, āv, āt.
Shut, claudērē, s, s.
Silver, argentūm, I.
Simple, simplex, icīs.
Sin, peccārē, āv, āt.
Since, cūm, quūm.
Sing, cānērē, cēcīn, cant; cantārē, āv, āt.
Single, single one, ūnūs, ā, ūm (113, R.).
Siren, sīrēn, ēnis.
Sister, sōrōr, ōris.
Six, sex.
Size, māgnītūdō, inīs.
Skilful, skilled in, pērītūs, ā, ūm.
Skin, dēglūbērē, ps, pt.
Slave, servūs, I.
Sleep, s., somnūs, I.
Sleep, dormīrē, iv, it.
Slow, tardūs, ā, ūm.
Small, parvūs, ā, ūm.
Smaller, mīnōr, ūs.
Snake, anguīs, is, m.
Snatch, arripērē (iō), ipu, ept.
Snow, nix, nivīs.
So, sic, adeō, tām; so—as, tām—quām, sicut.
So great, tantūs, ā, ūm.
Socrates, Sōcrātēs, is.
Soldier, milēs, itīs.
Some, ālīquīs, quā, quīd (quōd); some time, ālīquid tempōris.
Some time, some time or other, ālīquandō.
Sometimes, intērīm.
Son, filiūs, I.
Son-in-law, gēnēr, I.
Sorrow, dōlōr, ōris; luctūs, ūs.
Soul, ārīmūs, I.
Sound, sōnūs, I.
Sow, spargērē, rs, rs.
Space, intervallūm, I.
Spare, parcērē, pēperc (pars), parci (pars).
Speak, lōquī, lōcūtūs.
Spear, hastā, ae.
Specious, spēciosūs, ā, ūm (550).

Spin, nārē, nēv, nēt.
Sport, lūdūs, l.
Spouse, conjux, gīs.
Spring, vēr, vēris, n.
Sprinkle, aspergērē, rs, rs.
Stability, stābilitās, ātis
Stain, mǎcūlārē, āv, āt.
Star, stellā, ae.
State, civitās, ātis.
Storm, expūgnārē, āv, āt.
Stream, flūmēn, inis.
Strength, vīs, vis (*pl.*, vīrēs).
Strive for, stūdērē, u.
Strong, rōbustūs, ā, ūm.
Studious, stūdiōsūs, ā, ūm.
Study, stūdērē, u.
Successive, continuūs, ā, ūm.
Succor, succurrērē, rr, rs.
Sue for, pētērē, iv (i), it.
Sulla, Sullā, ae.
Summer, aestās, ātis.
Sun, sōl, sōlis, m.
Supper, coenā, ae.
Supplicate, exōrārē, āv, āt.
Surface, sūperficiēs, ēl.
Surpass, sūpērārē, āv, āt.
Surrender, dēdērē, did, dīt.
Surround, circumdārē, dēd, dāt; cin-
 gērē, x, ct.
Sustain, sustinērē, u, tent.
Swear, jūrārē, āv, āt.
Swift, vēlox, ōcis.
Swim, nārē, āv, āt.
Sword, glādiūs, l.

T.

Take, cāpērē (iō), cep, capt.
Tak' care, cāvērē, cāv, caut.
Take care of, cūrārē, āv, āt.
Take by storm, expūgnārē, āv, āt
 (550).
Talent, ingēniūm, l.
Tarentum, Tārentūm, l.
Tarquin, Tarquiniūs, l.
Teach, docērē, u, doct.
Tear in pieces, dilāniārē, āv, āt.
Ten, dēcēm.
Tenth, dēcimūs, ā, ūm.
Terms, conditiō, ōnis.
Terrify, terrērē, u, it.
Than, quām.
Thanks, grātia, arūm.

Thanksgiving, supplicātiō, ōnīa.
That (*pron.*), illē, ā, ūd; is, eā, id.
 istē, ā, ūl.
That (*conj.*), ūt, *with comp.* (469)
 quō.
That not, quōmīnūs, quīn.
The entire, tōtūs, ā, ūm (113, R.).
Theft, furtūm, l.
There, ibī.
Therefore, ergō, itāquē, ideō, igitūr.
Thing, rēs, rēi.
Think, pūtārē, āv, āt; *think about*,
 cōgītārē, āv, āt; *think little of*
 parvī aestīmārē, āv, āt.
Third, tertius, ā, ūm.
Thirst, sitirē, iv, it.
This, hīc, haec, hōc.
Thou, you, tū, tuī.
Thousand, millē.
Threaten, impendērē.
Three, trēs, triā.
Through, pēr.
Tibur, Tibūr, ūris.
Till, cōlērē, u, cult.
Time, tempūs, ōris.
Timid, tūnidūs, ā, ūm.
To, ad, in (*with acc.*).
To death, c pitis.
Too much, nimius, ā, ūm.
Top, the top, summūs, ā, ūm; *agree-*
ing with the noun, as, summūs
mons, the top of the mountain.
Torture, excruciatē, āv, āt.
Touch, tangērē, tētīg, tact.
Towards, ergā (*with acc.*).
Tower, arx, cis; turris, is (*acc., ēm*
or im, abl. ē or i).
Traitor, prōdītōr, ōris.
Tranquil, tranquillūs, ā, ūm.
Treachery, treason, prōditiō, ōnīa.
Treaty, foedūs, ēris.
Tree, arbōr, ōris, f.
Trojan, Trojānūs, ā, ūm.
True, vērūs, ā, ūm.
Truly, vērō.
Truth, vērūm, l.
Try, tentārē, āv, āt.
Tullia, Tulliā, ae.
Turn, convert, convertērē, t, s.
Turn back, rēvertērē, t, s.
Twelve, duōdēcīm.
Twenty, vigintī.

Two, duō, duae, duō.
 Two hundred, dūcentī, ae, ā.
 Two years, space of two years, bien-
 niūm.

U.

Uncertain, incertūs, ā, ūm (550).
 Uncover, āpērīrē, ru, rt.
 Understand, intelligērē, lex, lect.
 Uninjured, incōlūmis, ē.
 Unknown, incōgnītūs, ā, ūm.
 Unlearned, indoctūs, ā, ūm.
 Unnecessary, sūpervacuūs, ā, ūm.
 Unwilling, invitūs, ā, ūm.
 Unworthy, indignūs, ā, ūm.
 Use, v., ūtī, ūs.
 Useful, ūtilīs, ē.
 Useless, inūtilīs, ē.
 Utility, ūtilitās, ātis.

V.

Valuable, prētiōsūs, ā, ūm.
 Value, aestimārē, āv, āt.
 Very (before a noun or pronoun,
 sometimes), ipsē, ā, ūm.
 Very fond, stūdiōsūs, a, um.
 Very much or great, plūrimūs, ā,
 ūm; very many, plūrimī.
 Victim, victīmā, ae.
 Victoria, Victōriā, ae (prop. name).
 Victory, victōriā, ae.
 Violate, violārē, āv, āt; rumpērē,
 rūp, rupt.
 Virgin, virgō, inīs.
 Virtue, virtūs, ūtis.
 Voice, vox, vocīs.

W.

Wage (as war), gērērē, gess, gest;
 inferrē, tūl, lāt.
 Walk, ambūlārē, āv, āt.
 Wall, mūrūs, ī.
 War, bellūm, ī.
 Warn, admōnērē, u, it.
 Wash, lāvārē, lāv, laut, and lāvāt.
 Wasp, crābrō, ōnīs.
 Waste, perdērē, dīd, dīt.
 Watch, vīgīlārē, āv, āt.
 Water, āquā, ae.
 Wax (as moon), crescērē, crēv, crēt.
 Way, viā, ae; itēr, itīnērīs, n.

Wealthy, locuplēs, ātis.
 Weep, flērē, ēv, ēt.
 Weep for, lūgērē, lux.
 Well, bēnē.
 When, quūm.
 Whence, undē.
 Wherefore, quārē.
 Whether, utrūm; whether—or, in
 double questions, utrūm—ān, in
 other cases, seu—seu; sīvē—sīvē.
 While, dūm; while walking, intēr
 ambūlandūm.
 White, candidūs, ā, ūm.
 Who, which, that (rel.), quī, quae,
 quōd.
 Who, which, what? (interrog.), quīs,
 quae, quid? (subs.); quī, quae,
 quōd? (adj.).
 Whole, tōtūs, ā, ūm (113, R.).
 Wicked, imprōbūs, ā, ūm.
 Wife, conjux, gīs.
 Winter, hiems, īs.
 Wisdom, sāpientiā, ae.
 Wise, sāpiens, tīs.
 Wish, vellē, vōlu.
 With, cūm.
 Within, intrā (with acc.).
 Without, sinē (with abl.).
 Witness, spectārē, āv, āt (543).
 Wolf, lūpūs, ī.
 Woman, muliēr, īs.
 Wonderful, mirābilīs, ē.
 Wool, lānā, ac.
 Word, verbūm, ī.
 Work, ōpūs, ērīs.
 World, mundūs, ī; orbīs terrārū.
 Worthy, dignūs, ā, ūm.
 Would that, ūtinām, o sī.
 Wound, s., vulnūs, ērīs.
 Wound, v., vulnerārē, āv, āt.
 Wretched, mīser, ā, ūm.
 Write, scribērē, ps, pt.
 Wrong, v., violārē, āv, āt.

Y.

Year, annūs, ī.
 Yesterday, hesternō diē.
 Yet, tāmēn.
 You, tū, tuī.
 Your, thy, tuūr ā, ūm; your, vestār,
 trā, trūm.

SERIES OF READING BOOKS.

BY HENRY MANDEVILLE, D. D.

COMPRISING

| | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------|---------------|
| PRIMARY READING BOOK. | 1 vol. 16mo. | Price, \$0 10 |
| SECOND READER. | 1 vol. 16mo. | 17 |
| THIRD READER. | 1 vol. 16mo. | " 25 |
| FOURTH READER. | 1 vol. 12mo. | " 33 |
| COURSE OF READING, OR FIFTH READER. | 2mo. | " 75 |
| ELEMENTS OF READING AND ORATORY. | 1 vol. large 12mo. | " 1 00 |

Great pains have been taken to make these books superior to any other reading-books in use, by reducing them to a complete practical system, founded on the nature of the language, by which the proper delivery of all sentences may be determined, and Reading elevated to the rank of a science. The proper and thorough use of these books places it in the power of every pupil to become an accomplished reader. The selections will be found to contain some of the finest gems in the language, which cannot fail of interesting the pupil, and cultivate a literary taste.

THE FIRST AND SECOND READERS introduce successively the different parts of speech, and are designed to combine a knowledge of their grammatical functions with the meaning and pronunciation of words.

THE THIRD AND FOURTH READERS commence with a series of exercises on articulation and modulation, containing numerous examples for practice on the elementary sounds (including errors to be corrected) and on the different movements of the voice produced by sentential structure, by emphasis, and by the passions.

THE COURSE OF READING comprises three parts: the *first part* containing a more elaborate description of elementary sounds and of the parts of speech grammatically considered, than was deemed necessary in the preceding works; *part second*, a complete classification and description of every sentence to be found in the English, or in any other language; *part third*, paragraphs; or sentences in their connection unfolding general thoughts, as in the common reading-books.

THE ELEMENTS OF READING AND ORATORY closes the series with an exhibition of the whole theory and art of Elocution exclusive of gesture. It contains, besides the classification of sentences, the laws of punctuation and delivery deduced from it, the whole followed by carefully selected pieces for sentential analysis and vocal practice.

RECOMMENDATIONS OF MANDEVILLE'S SERIES OF READERS

That the series is eminently practical and highly approved is shown by the following testimonials, selected from the thousands that have been received from public educators, who have tested them by thorough examination or actual use.

From WALTER BAILEY, Supt. Public Schools, Fourth District, New Orleans,
May 24th, 1852.

"I have examined, with much care and interest, Professor Mandeville's series of Readers, and am much gratified to observe that he has reduced the subject of punctuation and delivery to a complete system; and they possess such superior advantages over any others that I have ever examined, that I have adopted them as text-books in the public schools under my supervision."

. In July, 1852, Mandeville's Reading books were adopted and introduced in all the Public Schools of New Orleans.

The following Resolution was unanimously adopted by the Board of Education of St. Louis, October, 12th, 1852.

Resolved, That Professor Mandeville's Series of Readers be substituted as text-books for Swan's Readers in the Public Schools of this city."

From the late S. L. HOLMES, City Superintendent of Schools, Brooklyn.

"Mandeville's Reading Books are used in all of the Public Schools of Brooklyn, and with great satisfaction and profit, both to teacher and pupil. As mere reading books they are probably unsurpassed either in matter or system; but as a means of disclosing the true structure of our language, and pointing out the proper mode of parsing it, this series is believed to be altogether unequalled."

PROF. MANDEVILLE'S LECTURES.—"The Committee to whom was intrusted the preparation of an expression of the sentiments of the Teachers of the Public, Ward, Corporate and Private Schools of the City of New York, who have attended Prof. Mandeville's Lectures. His course on Elocution, respectfully report the following resolutions:

"*Resolved*, That the course of Lectures on Elocution, by Prof. Mandeville, which we have attended, has been to us a source of much gratification and profit.

"*Resolved*, That his system, based upon sound Philosophical principles, is an easy, progressive, natural, and eminently original method of attaining a knowledge of the classification and structure of every kind of sentence in the English language, with its appropriate punctuation and delivery; and we are happy to say unhesitatingly, that our opinion, his course, if faithfully carried out by teachers as he recommends, is better calculated to make good readers than any other with which we have been acquainted."

The following is signed by all the Principals of the Syracuse Public Schools, except one.

"We, the undersigned, Principals of Public Schools in the City of Syracuse, having formed some acquaintance with Mandeville's System of Reading and Oratory, take occasion cheerfully to express our unfeigned approval and admiration of the same, as the only truly Scientific System known to us, and our belief that its universal introduction into the Public Schools of our country, would prove a very valuable accession to the present educational facilities."

THE SHAKSPEARIAN READER

BY J. W. S. HOWS.

12mo. 447 pages. Price \$1 25.

This work is prepared expressly for the use of Classes in schools and the reading circle, and contains a Collection of the most approved Plays of Shakspeare, carefully revised, with introductory and explanatory notes.

"This is a very handsome volume, and it will prove, we believe, a very popular one. Probably no man living is better qualified for the task of preparing a work of this kind than Prof. Hows, who has long been a teacher of elocution, and from his lectures on Shakspeare, has acquired a high reputation for his masterly analysis of the great dramatist. The only fault that we find with his book is that he has left out the comic parts, and has given nothing of Falstaff. But his reasons for the omission are sound and discriminating."—*New York Mirror*.

PRIMARY SPELLER AND READER.

BY ALBERT D. WRIGHT.

Price 12½ Cents.

This little volume of 144 pages combines a Primary Spelling-book and Reader, happily illustrated with numerous cuts, intended to attract the attention of the young, and to suggest thought for oral instruction and conversation.

It is confidently believed, that the proper use of this little book will obviate most of the difficulties experienced at the commencement of a child's education.

As fast as the letters are learned, an application is immediately made of them.

No word is given in which a letter occurs that has not been previously learned.

The capital letters are taught one at a time, and by review in reading lessons.

The words are systematically presented, being classified by their vowel sounds and terminating consonants; and generally, at the end of each class, they are arranged into little spelling lessons.

The learner is immediately initiated into reading lessons, composed of words of two or three letters, and is then led progressively into more difficult words.

"This is an excellent little book for children, and an improvement on all other Primary Lessons."—*N. Y. Observer*.

"We most heartily commend it to the favorable regard of teachers and parents."—*Teachers' Advocate*.

CLASS-BOOK OF POETRY.

BY ELIZA ROBBINS.

Containing a judicious, beautiful, and interesting Collection of Poetry for the Use of Children in Schools, and private reading. 12mo.

16mo. 252 pages. Price 75 cents.

Extract from the Author's Preface.

"In no way is a graceful and refined style of speech so naturally formed as by poetic language made thoroughly familiar to the young. 'I do not like poetry; I cannot understand it,' often say half-taught children. Give them the poetry of good writers, with a little necessary comment, and you will remove all obscurity from the most instructive and effective poetry, and all distaste to it. I have endeavored to do this in the following collection, and I trust that while it exhibits 'only things pure,' 'lovely, and of good report,' it may also give much pleasure, and be serviceable accordingly."

GUIDE TO KNOWLEDGE.

BY ELIZA ROBBINS. 16mo. 400 pages. Price 63 cents.

This contains a large amount of useful information, communicated in an entertaining and easy style of familiar questions and answers on every-day subjects, such as children are constantly asking questions about.

"The basis of this work is the 'Child's Guide to Knowledge—an elementary book which has been much used in England for many years, and is particularly adapted to our own country and nation. It commences with questions and answers on those elementary topics which occupy the attention of the young mind, and ranges over the complete circle of useful knowledge. It is a storehouse of various information for the young. We know of no elementary book, that with the necessary aid of judicious instructors, and suitable illustrative helps, can be made more useful to youth. Accompanying, is a dictionary of technical terms. We cordially recommend it to the notice of teachers."—*Journal and Messenger.*

CLASS-BOOK OF ZOOLOGY.

BY PROF. B. JAEGER. 18mo. Price 42 cents.

This work is designed to afford to pupils in common schools and academies a knowledge of the Animal Kingdom, not by making it a tiresome study, overloaded with incomprehensible technical terms taken from Latin and Greek, but as a scientific, amusing, instructive, and useful occupation for the juvenile mind, imparting a taste for collecting and preserving zoological specimens, and furnishing subjects for interesting and elevated observation.

THE CHILD'S FIRST HISTORY OF ROME.

BY MISS E. M. SEWELL.

18mo. 255 pages. Price 50 Cents.

In the preparation of this work for the use of children, the authoress has drawn her materials from the most reliable sources, and incorporated them into a narrative at once unostentatious, perspicuous, and graphic, aiming to be understood by those for whom she wrote, and to impress deeply and permanently on their minds the historical facts contained in the book. The entire work is clothed in a style at once pleasing and comprehensible to the juvenile mind.

"The author of this work has been very successful in her style of narration, as well as gone to the best sources accessible for her facts. While there is nothing light and trivial in her manner, there is all the vivacity of the most lively fireside story-teller; and those things, "of which it is a shame to speak," she gets over with great judgment, delicacy and tact. While it is eminently a child's book, we greatly misjudge if it should not prove a favorite with adults, especially that class who cannot command time to read protracted histories."—*Christian Mirror*.

A FIRST HISTORY OF GREECE.

BY MISS E. M. SEWELL.

18mo. 355 pages. Price 63 Cents.

This work is designed to impart to young people a more clear and understandable knowledge of Grecian history than is attainable through any of the numerous works on that subject that have been accumulating during the last century. By selecting and presenting clearly and concisely only prominent characters and events, and not overloading and rendering their perusal irksome by a mass of minor details, the authoress has rendered an essential service to the youth of our country.

"Miss Sewell is eminently successful in this attempt to set forth the history of Greece in a manner suited to the instruction of the young. The chronology is lucid, the events are well selected, and the narrative is perspicuous and simple. The facts and the method of presenting them are taken mainly from the work of Bishop Thirlwall, an excellent authority, and the work as a whole is the best with which we are acquainted for the use of children in their lessons of Grecian History, whether in the school-room or the family circle."—*Providence Journal*.

"She has faithfully condensed her subject, from the Siege of Troy, B. C. 1184, to the destruction of Corinth, and the annexation of Greece, as a province to the Roman Empire, B. C. 141; forming a most excellent outline, to be filled up by the future acquisitions of the reader. The chronological table of cotemporary events attached is a valuable addition."—*Cincinnati Daily Times*.

MANUAL OF GRECIAN AND ROMAN ANTIQUITIES.

BY DR. E. F. BOJESSEN.

WITH NOTES AND QUESTIONS BY REV. THOMAS K. ARNOLD.

1 Vol. 12mo. 209 pages. Price \$1 00.

The present Manuals of Greek and Roman Antiquities are far superior to any thing on the same topics as yet offered to the American public. A principal Review of Germany says of the Roman Manual: 'Small as the compass of it is, we may confidently affirm that it is a great improvement on all preceding works of the kind. We no longer meet with the wretched old method, in which subjects essentially distinct are herded together, and connected subjects disconnected, but have a simple, systematic arrangement, by which the reader readily receives a clear representation of Roman life. We no longer stumble against countless errors in detail, which, though long ago assailed and extirpated by Neibuhr and others, have found their last place of refuge in our manuals.'

HISTORY OF ENGLAND.

BY MRS. MARKHAM. REVISED BY ELIZA ROBBINS.

12mo. 387 pages. Price 75 Cents.

This work covers a period from the Invasion of Julius Cæsar to the Reign of Victoria, containing questions adapted to the use of schools in this country.

"Mrs. Markham's History was used by that model for all teachers, the late Dr. Arnold, master of the great English school at Rugby, and agrees in its character with his enlightened and pious views of teaching history. It is now several years since I adapted this history to the form and price acceptable in the schools in the United States. I have recently revised it, and trust that it may be extensively serviceable in education.

"The principal alterations from the original are a new and more convenient division of paragraphs, and entire omission of the conversations annexed to the chapters. In the place of these I have affixed questions to every page that may at once facilitate the work of the teacher and the pupil. The rational and moral features of this book first commended itself to me, and I have used it successfully with my own scholars."—*Extract from the American Editor's Preface.*

MANUAL OF ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY

12mo. 396 pages. Price \$1 00.

This work was originally prepared by Wilhelm Putz, an eminent German scholar, and translated and edited in England by Rev. T. K. Arnold, and is now revised and introduced to the American public in a well-written preface, by Mr. George W. Greene, teacher of modern languages in Brown University.

As a text-book on Ancient History for Colleges and advanced Academies, this volume is believed to be one of the best compends published.

HAND-BOOK OF MEDÆVAL GEOGRAPHY & HISTORY

BY WILHELM PUTZ.

TRANSLATED BY REV. R. B. PAUL, M. A.

1 Vol. 211 pages. 12mo. Price 75 Cents.

The characteristics of this volume are: precision, condensation, and luminous arrangement. It is precisely what it pretends to be—a manual, a sure and conscientious guide for the student through the crooks and tangles of Mediæval History. All the great principles of this extensive period are carefully laid down, and the most important facts skilfully grouped around them.

MANUAL OF MODERN GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY.

BY WILHELM PUTZ.

TRANSLATED BY REV. R. B. PAUL, M. A.

12mo. 336 pages. Price \$1 00.

This volume completes the series of the author's works on geography and history. Every important fact of the period, comprehensive as it is both in geography and history, is presented in a concise yet clear and connected manner, so as to be of value, not only as a text-book for students, but to the general reader for reference. Although the facts are greatly condensed, as of necessity they must be, yet they are presented with so much distinctness as to produce a fixed impression on the mind. It is also reliable as the work of an indefatigable German scholar, for correct information relating to the progress and changes of states and nations—literature, the sciences and the arts—and all that combines in modern civilization.

¶

A DIGEST OF THE LAWS, CUSTOMS, MANNERS AND INSTITUTIONS OF THE ANCIENT AND MODERN NATIONS.

BY THOMAS DEW.

Late President of the College of William and Mary.

1 Vol. 8vo. 662 pages. Price \$2 00.

On examination, it will be found that more than ordinary labor has been expended upon this work, and that the author has proceeded upon higher principles, and has had higher aims in view than historical compilers ordinarily propose to themselves. Instead of being a mere catalogue of events, chronologically arranged, it is a careful, laborious, and instructive digest of the laws, customs, manners, institutions, and civilization of the ancient and modern nations.

The department of modern history in particular has been prepared with unusual care and industry.

From JOHN J. OWEN, Professor in New York Free Academy.

"I have examined with much pleasure Prof. Dew's 'Digest of the Laws, Manners, Customs, &c., of Ancient and Modern Nations.' It furnishes a desideratum in the study of history which I have long desired to see. The manner in which history is generally studied in our institutions of learning, is, in my judgment, very defective. The great central points or epochs of history are not made to stand out with sufficient prominence. Events of minor importance are made to embarrass the memory by the confused method of their presentation to the mind; history is studied by pages and not by subjects. In the wilderness of events through which the student is groping his way, he soon becomes lost and perplexed. The past is as obscure as the future. His lesson soon becomes an irksome task. The memory is wearied with the monotonous task of striving to retain the multitudinous events of each daily lesson.

"This evil appears to be remedied in a great degree by Prof. Dew's admirable arrangement. Around the great points of history he has grouped those of subordinate importance. Each section is introduced by a caption, in which the subject is briefly stated, and so as to be easily remembered. Thus the student having mastered the leading events, will find little or no difficulty in treasuring up the minor points in their order and connection. I trust the book will be adopted in our higher institutions of learning. I greatly prefer it to any history for the use of schools which I have seen."

HISTORY OF GERMANY.

BY FREDERICH KOHLRAUSCH.

1 Vol. 500 pages. 8vo. Price \$1 50.

This history extends from the earliest period to the present time and has been translated from the latest German edition by James D Hase.

"We recommend it strongly to those of our readers who desire a lucid, comprehensive, and impartial history of the rise, progress, and condition of the Germanic Empire
—*Evening Gazette.*

HISTORICAL AND MISCELLANEOUS QUESTIONS.

BY RICHARD MAGNALL. REVISED BY MRS. LAURENCE.

12mo. 396 pages. Price \$1 00.

The American authoress of this excellent book has made it peculiarly well adapted to the schools of this country by adding to it a chapter on the history and constitution of the United States, and by large additions on the elements of mythology, astronomy, architecture, heraldry, &c., &c. This edition is embellished by numerous cuts, a large portion of the work is devoted to judicious questions and answers on ancient and modern history, which must be very serviceable to teachers and pupils.

"This is an admirable work to aid both teachers and parents in instructing children and youth, and there is no work of the kind that we have seen that is so well calculated to 'awaken a spirit of laudable curiosity in young minds,' and to satisfy that curiosity when awakened."—*Commercial Advertiser*.

HISTORY OF THE MIDDLE AGES.

BY GEO. W. GREENE.

1 Vol. 12mo. 450 pages. Price \$1 00.

This work will be found to contain a clear and satisfactory exposition of the revolutions of the middle ages, with such general views of literature, society, and manners, as are required to explain the passages from ancient to modern history.

Instead of a single list of sovereigns, the author has given full genealogical tables, which are much clearer and infinitely more satisfactory.

GENERAL HISTORY OF CIVILIZATION IN EUROPE.

BY M. GUIZOT

1 Vol. 316 pages. 12mo. Price \$1 00.

This work embraces a period from the fall of the Roman empire to the French revolution, and has been edited from the second English edition, by Prof. C. S. Henry, who has added a few notes. The whole work is made attractive by the clear and lively style of the author.

HISTORY OF ROME.

BY DR. THOMAS ARNOLD.

Three Volumes in One. 8vo. 670 pages. \$3 00

Arnold's History of Rome is a well-known standard work, as full and accurate as Niebuhr, but much more readable and attractive; more copious and exact than Keightley or Schmitz, and more reliable than Michelet, it has assumed a rank second to none in value and importance. Its style is admirable, and it is every where imbued with the truth-loving spirit for which Dr. Arnold was pre-eminent. For Colleges and Schools this history is invaluable; and for private, as well as public libraries, it is indispensable.

LECTURES ON MODERN HISTORY.

BY DR. THOMAS ARNOLD.

Large 12mo. 428 pages. Price \$1 25.

Edited from the second London edition, with a preface and notes of Henry Reed, M. A., Professor of English Literature in the University of Pennsylvania.

"These lectures, eight in number, furnish the best possible introduction to a philosophical study of modern history. Prof. Reed has added greatly to the worth and interest of the volume, by appending to each lecture such extracts from Dr. Arnold's other writings as would more fully illustrate its prominent points. The notes and appendix which he has thus furnished are exceedingly valuable."—*Evening Post*.

MANUAL OF ANCIENT AND MODERN HISTORY.

BY W. C. TAYLOR, LL. D., M. R. A. S.

Part I.—Containing the Political History, Geographical Position, and Social State of the Principal Nations of Antiquity, carefully digested from the Ancient Writers, and illustrated by the discoveries of Modern Scholars and Travellers.

Part II.—Containing the Rise and Progress of the Principal European Nations, their Political History, and the Changes in their Social Condition; with a History of the Colonies founded by Europeans. Revised by C. S. Taylor, D. D. 8vo. \$2 50.

PHILOSOPHY OF SIR WM. HAMILTON.

EDITED BY O. W. WIGHT.

1 vol. 8vo. 520 pages. Price \$1 50.

This handsome octavo volume is issued in a beautiful style, and is designed to be used as a text-book in schools and colleges. It embraces all the metaphysical writings of Sir Wm. Hamilton, one of the most noted philosophers and logicians of the day, whose writings deserve the attention and consideration of those who have charge of our seminaries of learning.

"With the severest logic, and a power of analysis that is well nigh matchless, he unites the most perspicuous and exact style, expressing the nicest shades of thought, with undeviating accuracy. And his writings display remarkable erudition as well as discrimination; he shows himself perfectly familiar with the theories and arguments of all who have gone before him, whether in earlier or later days; and while he renders due honor to each, he knows no such thing as being in bondage to a great name."—*Puritan Recorder*.

HISTORY OF MODERN PHILOSOPHY.

BY M. VICTOR COUSIN.

TRANSLATED BY O. W. WIGHT.

2 vols. 8vo. 891 pages. Price \$3 00.

This is the ablest and most popular of all Cousin's works. It contains a full exposition of Eclecticism, by its founder and ablest supporter; gives a collected account of the history of philosophy from the earliest times; makes a distinct classification of systems, affords brief yet intelligible glimpses into the interior of almost every school, whether ancient or modern; and a detailed analysis of Locke, which unanswerably refutes a sensualistic theory that has borne so many bitter fruits of irreligion and atheism.

"M. Cousin is the greatest philosopher of France."—*Sir William Hamilton*.

"A writer, whose pointed periods have touched the chords of modern society, and thrilled through the minds of thousands in almost every quarter of the civilized world."—*Edinburgh Review*.

"As regards that part of this work—its translation—which has fallen to Mr. Wight, we must say that it has the air of being well performed. We have not the original at hand to compare the two, but the flowing style of the English version demonstrates the translator's familiarity with the foreign language."—*Western Lit. Gazette*.

BOOK OF ORATORY.

BY EDWARD C. MARSHALL, A.M.

One Volume. 12mo., of 500 pages. Price \$1 00.

FIRST BOOK OF ORATORY,

AN ABRIDGMENT OF THE ABOVE.

One Volume. 12mo., of 237 pages. Price 62 Cents.

These works contain a larger number of elegant extracts than any similar ones, from the first American and English authors, among whom are Webster, Clay, Everett, Calhoun, Wirt, Randolph, Prentiss, Channing, Dewey, Burke, Brougham, Shakspeare, Byron, Scott, Hood, Bryant, and Longfellow, together with a complete digest of specimens of the oratory and poetry of all parts of the Union.

"A large and admirable selection of pieces for declamation, copious and varied, and well chosen with reference to speaking. The range of selection is almost universal, at least among modern writers in prose, verse and drama. They make a spirited collection of thought and rhetoric. The editor is a practical teacher of elocution, and evidently has a wide acquaintance with literature. It is as good a work of the kind as we ever saw."—*Evangelist*.

"It is an admirable collection of pieces for declamation, taken principally from eminent American orators."—*Tribune*.

THE MYTHOLOGY OF ANCIENT GREECE AND ITALY.

BY THOMAS KEIGHTLEY.

18mo. 232 pages. Price 42 Cents.

As mythology is closely connected with History and Philosophy it is believed that its elements can be advantageously taught in our primary schools.

The present work is an abridgment of the author's larger treatise, and will be found well adapted to young persons.

The well-known reputation of the author is sufficient guaranty that the pupil who gets his first ideas of mythology from this book will not have any thing to *unlearn*.

"This is precisely the volume which has long been wanted in schools. As an introductory manual, it contains information relative to the gods and heroes of antiquity; and not an expression occurs which could offend the delicacy of the most scrupulous reader."—*Christian Remembrancer*.

FIRST LESSONS IN ENGLISH COMPOSITION.

BY G. P. QUACKENBOS, A. M.

12mo. Price 45 Cents

These "First Lessons" are intended for beginners in Grammar and Composition, and should be placed in their hands at whatever age it may be deemed best for them to commence these branches—say from nine to twelve years. In the first fifty pages, by means of lessons on the inductive system, and copious exercises under each, the pupil is made familiar with the nature and use of the different parts of speech, so as to be able to recognize them at once. He is then led to consider the different kinds of clauses and sentences, and is thus prepared for Punctuation, on which subject he is furnished with well considered rules, arranged on a new and simple plan. Directions for the use of capital letters follow. Next come rules, explanations and examples, for the purpose of enabling the pupil to form and spell correctly such derivative words as *having, debarring, pinning*, and the like, which are not to be found in ordinary dictionaries, and regarding which the pupil is apt to be led astray by the fact that a change is made in the primitive word before the addition of the suffix. This done, the scholar is prepared to express thoughts in his own language, and is now required to write sentences of every kind, a word being given to suggest an idea for each; he is taught to vary them by means of different arrangements and modes of expression; to analyze compound sentences into simple ones, and to combine simple ones into compound. Several lessons are then devoted to Style. The essential properties, purity, propriety, precision, clearness, strength, harmony, and unity, are next treated, examples for correction being presented under each. The different kinds of composition follow; and, specimens having been first given, the pupil is required to compose successively letters, descriptions, narrations, biographical sketches, essays, and argumentative discourses. After this, the principal figures receive attention; and the work closes with a list of subjects carefully selected, arranged under their proper heads, and in such a way that the increase in difficulty is very gradual. The work has received the universal approval of Teachers and the Press throughout the Union.

QUACKENBOS'

ADVANCED LESSONS IN COMPOSITION AND RHETORIC

A DIGEST OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

BY L. T. COVELL

12mo. Price 50 Cents

This work, which is just published, is designed as a Text-Book for the use of Schools and Academies; it is the result of long experience, of an eminently successful Teacher, and will be found to possess many peculiar merits.

At a regular meeting of the Board of Education of Rochester, held June 18, 1853, the following resolution was unanimously adopted:

"Resolved, That Covell's Digest of English Grammar be substituted for Wells' Grammar, as a Text-Book in the public schools of this city, to take effect at the commencement of the next school year."

Extract from the Minutes of a Regular Meeting of the Board of Education of Troy, May 31st, 1853.

"Mr. Jones, from Committee on text-books, and school librarians, moved, that Bulfinch's English Grammar be stricken from the list of text-books, and Covell's be substituted. —Passed."

From forty-four Teachers of Public Schools, Pittsburg, Pa.

"The undersigned have examined 'Covell's Digest of English Grammar,' and are of opinion that in the justness of its general views, the excellence of its style, the brevity, accuracy, and perspicuity of its definitions and rules, the numerous examples and illustrations, the adaption of its synthetical exercises, the simplicity of its method of analysis, and in the plan of its arrangement, this work surpasses any other grammar now before the public; and that in all respects it is most admirably adapted to the use of schools and academies."

From all the Teachers of Public Schools of the City of Alleghany, Pa.

We, the undersigned, Teachers of Alleghany city, having carefully examined Mr. Covell's Digest of English Grammar, and impartially compared it with other grammars now in use, are fully satisfied that, while it is in no respect inferior to others, it is in very many respects much superior. While it possesses all that is necessary for the advanced student, and much that is not found in other grammars, it is so simplified as to adapt it to the capacity of the youngest learner. We are confident that much time and labor will be saved, and greater improvement secured to our pupils in the study of this science, by its introduction into our schools; hence we earnestly recommend to the Boards of Directors of this city, its adoption as a uniform text-book upon this science in the schools under their direction."

From JOHN J. WOLCOTT, A. M., Pr. and Supt. 9th Ward School, Pittsburg, Pa.

"'Covell's Digest of English Grammar' not only evinces the most unceasing labor, the most extensive research, the most unrelaxing effort, and the most devoted self-sacrificing study of its author, but it is the most complete, the most perfect, and, to me, the most satisfactory exposition of English Grammar that has come to my notice. It appears to me that every youth aspiring to become master of the English language, from the rudimental principles to the full, round, beautiful, faultless, perfect period, will make this volume his 'vade mecum.'"

EXPOSITION OF THE GRAMMATICAL STRUCTURE OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE.

BY JOHN MULLIGAN, A M.

Large 12mo. 574 pages. \$1 50.

This work is a comprehensive and complete system of English Grammar, embracing not only all that has been developed by the later philologists, but also the results of years of study and research on the part of its author. One great advantage of this book is its admirable arrangement. Instead of proceeding at once to the dry details which are distasteful and discouraging to the pupil, Mr. M. commences by viewing the sentence as a whole, analyzing it into its proper parts, and exhibiting their connection; and, after having thus parsed the sentence logically, proceeds to consider the individual words that compose it, in all their grammatical relations. This is the natural order; and experience proves that the arrangement here followed not only imparts additional interest to the subject, but gives the pupil a much clearer insight into it, and greatly facilitates his progress.

From DR. JAMES W. ALEXANDER.

"I thank you for the opportunity of perusing your work on the structure of the English language. It strikes me as being one of the most valuable contributions to this important branch of literature. The mode of investigation is so unlike what appears in our ordinary compilations, the reasoning is so sound, and the results are so satisfactory and so conformable to the genius and great authorities of our mother tongue, that I propose to recur to it again and again."

Extract from a letter from E. C. BENEDICT, Esq., President of the Board of Education of the City of New York.

"I have often thought our language needed some work in which the principles of grammatical science and of the structure of the language, philosophically considered, were developed and applied to influence and control the *usus* and *consuetudo* of Horace and Quintilian, which seem to me to have been too often the principal source of solecisms, irregularity and corruption. In this point of view, I consider your work a valuable and appropriate addition to the works on the language."

From WM. HORACE WEBSTER, President of the Free Academy, New York.

"The exposition of the grammatical structure of the English language by Professor Mulligan, of this city, is a work, in my opinion, of great merit, and well calculated to impart a thorough and critical knowledge of the grammar of the English language.

"No earnest English student can fail to profit by the study of this treatise, yet it is designed more particularly for minds somewhat maturer, and for pupils who are capable and have a desire, to comprehend the principles and learn the philosophy of their own tongue."

DICTIONARY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE

BY ALEXANDER REID, A. M.

12mo. 572 pages. Price \$1 00.

This work, which is designed for schools, contains the **PRONUNCIATION** and Explanation of all English words authorized by eminent writers.

A Vocabulary of the roots of English words.

An Accented List of GREEK, LATIN, and SCRIPTURE proper names.

An Appendix, showing the pronunciation of nearly 3,000 of the most important **GEOGRAPHICAL** names.

It is printed on fine paper, in clear type, strongly bound.

And is unquestionably one of the best dictionaries for the school-room extant.

From C. S. HENRY, Professor of Philosophy, History, and Belles-Lettres, in the University of the City of New York.

"Reid's Dictionary of the English Language is an admirable book for the use of schools. Its plan combines a greater number of desirable conditions for such a work, than any with which I am acquainted; and it seems to me to be executed in general with great judgment, fidelity, and accuracy."

From HENRY REED, Professor of English Literature in the University of Pennsylvania.

"Reid's Dictionary of the English Language appears to have been compiled upon sound principles, and with judgment and accuracy. It has the merit, too, of combining much more than is usually looked for in dictionaries of small size, and will, I believe, be found excellent as a convenient manual for general reference, and also for various purposes of education."

GRAHAM'S ENGLISH SYNONYMS,

CLASSIFIED AND EXPLAINED;

**WITH PRACTICAL EXERCISES. DESIGNED FOR SCHOOLS AND PRIVATE TUITION
WITH AN INTRODUCTION AND ILLUSTRATIVE AUTHORITIES.**

BY HENRY REED, LL. D.

1 Vol. 12mo. Price \$1 00.

This is one of the best books published in the department of language, and will do much to arrest the evil of making too common use of inappropriate words. The work is well arranged for classes, and can be made a branch of common school study.

It is admirably arranged. The Synonyms are treated with reference to their character, as generic and specific; as active and passive; as positive and negative; and as miscellaneous synonyms.

HAND-BOOK OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE.

BY G. R. LATHAM, M. D., F. R. S.

12mo. 400 pages. Price \$1 25.

This work is designed for the use of students in the University and High Schools.

"His work is rigidly scientific, and hence possesses a rare value. With the widespread growth of the Anglo-Saxon dialect, the immense present and prospective power of those with whom this is their 'mother tongue,' such a treatise must be counted alike interesting and useful."—*Watchman and Reflector*.

"A work of great research, much learning, and to every thinking scholar it will be a book of study. The Germanic origin of the English language, the affinities of the English with other languages, a sketch of the alphabet, a minute investigation of the etymology of the language, &c., of great value to every philologist."—*Observer*.

HISTORY OF ENGLISH LITERATURE.

BY WILLIAM SPALDING, A. M.

PROFESSOR OF LOGIC, RHETORIC, AND METAPHYSICS, IN THE UNIVERSITY OF ST. ANDREW.

12mo. 413 pages. Price \$1 00.

The above work, which is just published, is offered as a Text-book for the use of advanced Schools and Academies. It traces the literary progress of the nation from its dawn in Anglo-Saxon times, down to the present day. Commencing at this early period, it is so constructed as to introduce the reader gradually and easily to studies of this kind. Comparatively little speculation is presented, and those literary monuments of the earlier dates, which were thought most worthy of attention, are described with considerable fulness and in an attractive manner. In the subsequent pages, more frequent and sustained efforts are made to arouse reflection, both by occasional remarks on the relations between intellectual culture and the other elements of society, and by hints as to the theoretical laws on which criticism should be founded. The characteristics of the most celebrated modern works are analyzed at considerable length.

The manner of the author is remarkably plain and interesting, almost compelling the reader to linger over his pages with unwearied attention.

CLASS-BOOK OF CHEMISTRY.

BY EDWARD L. YOUMANS.

12mo. 340 Pages. Price 75 Cents.

Every page of this book bears evidence of the author's superior ability of perfectly conforming his style to the capacity of youth. This is a merit rarely possessed by the authors of scientific school-books, and will be appreciated by every discriminating teacher. It is especially commended by the eminently practical manner in which each subject is presented. Its illustrations are drawn largely from the phenomena of daily experience, and the interest of the pupil is speedily awakened by the consideration that Chemistry is not a matter belonging exclusively to physicians and professors.

From PROF. WM. H. BIGELOW, Principal of Clinton Street Academy.

"The eminently practical character of the Class-Book treating of the familiar applications of the science, is in my opinion its chief excellence, and gives it a value far superior to any other work now before the public."

From DAVID SYME, A. M., formerly Principal of the Mathematical Department, and Lecturer in Natural Philosophy, Chemistry and Physiology, in Columbia Col.

"MR. YOUMANS: DEAR SIR,—I have carefully examined your Class-Book on Chemistry, and, in my opinion, it is better adapted for use in schools and academies than any other work on the subject that has fallen under my observation.

"I hope that the success of your Class-Book will be proportionate to its merits, and that your efforts to diffuse the knowledge of Chemistry will be duly appreciated by the friends of education."

"Either for Schools or for general reading, we know of no elementary work on Chemistry which in every respect pleases us so much as this."—*Com. Advertiser.*

CHART OF CHEMISTRY.

BY EDWARD L. YOUMANS.

"Youmans' Chart of Chemistry" accomplishes for the first time, for chemistry, what maps and charts have for geography, astronomy, geology, and the other natural sciences, by presenting a new and admirable method of illustrating this highly interesting and beautiful science. Its plan is to represent chemical compositions to the eye by colored diagrams, the areas of which express proportional quantities.

ABOVE, IN ATLAS FORM,

CLASS-BOOK OF PHYSIOLOGY.

BY B. N. COMINGS, M. D.

12mo. 270 pages. Price 90 Cents.

This volume, which is well adapted to the wants of schools and academies, has been prepared from the "Principles of Physiology, by Comings and Comstock, and is brought out in its present form at the urgent request of numerous friends of education who have highly commended that work, which was found too expensive for general use in the school-room.

It will be found to explain and illustrate fully and clearly as many principles of physiology as can be expected in a work of its limit. That human physiology can be made more easy of comprehension, more profitable, and more attractive to the beginner of the study, by appropriate references to the comparative physiology of the inferior animals, than by any other method, is an established fact in the mind of the author, which he has made eminently available in the preparation of this work, thus giving to this work peculiar claims to the attention of teachers.

The work is illustrated by 24 plates and numerous wood-engravings, comprising in all over 200 figures.

COMPANION TO ABOVE. (IN PRESS.) Containing illustrations and Questions.

COMMON SCHOOL PHYSIOLOGY. Dr. Comings. (NEARLY READY.)

From ABRAHAM POWELSON, Jr., Teacher, No. 204 Schermerhorn Street, Brooklyn, New York.

"After a very careful examination of the Class-Book of Physiology, by Comings, I can freely say that I consider it a performance of superior excellence. It embodies a fund of information surpassing in importance and variety that of any other work of the kind which has come under my notice."

From ANDREW J. WELLES, Glastonbury, Conn.

"It appears to me to be admirably adapted to the purpose for which it was designed, and I think will readily be admitted into our schools."

"The illustrations are more complete, and in a style superior to any I have ever seen in a school-book, making it really attractive to the eye."

From WM. D. SHIPMAN, East Haddam, Ct.

"Please accept my thanks for a copy of your 'Class-Book of Physiology, by Dr. Comings.' I have given the work a somewhat careful examination, and am very strongly impressed with its value as an elementary work for schools and families. It contains a simple and lucid exhibition of the subject upon which it treats, and illustrates the sciences by a great amount of instructive and curious information, which cannot fail to make it an attractive book for ingenious young persons."

MANUAL OF ELEMENTARY GEOLOGY

BY SIR CHARLES LYELL, M. A., F. R. S.

1 Vol. 8vo. 512 pages. Price \$1 75.

This is a reprint of the fourth London edition of a work of distinguished reputation, beautifully illustrated by FIVE HUNDRED WOODCUTS. Being the production of a writer who stands at the head of the department of knowledge which he has undertaken to explain, is sufficient guaranty for the invaluable character of the work for the scientific reader and observer, as well as for general use in our seminaries of learning.

"There is no branch of natural science where there is a more quickly recurring necessity for new editions of elementary books, than Geology. It is itself but the germ of a science, daily gathering fresh facts and extending its jurisdiction over new fields of observation. What was a satisfactory account of its discoveries a few years ago, is now obsolete. And among the scholars and observers who have done most to advance the science, and are most competent to elucidate its present condition, is the author of the volume before us."—*Charleston Mercury*.

PRINCIPLES OF GEOLOGY.

BY SIR CHARLES LYELL, A. M., F. R. S.

1 Vol. 8vo. 834 pages. Price \$2 25.

"This is a noble volume of over 800 pages, 8vo., on fair paper, in clear type, and abundantly illustrated with maps, engravings and woodcuts—an honor to the publishers who have issued it, and speaking well for the progress in scientific studies in this country—inasmuch as it would not be re-published, without a fair prospect of a remunerating sale. It is a book that we cannot pretend to review; but we take pleasure in announcing its appearance as a work which those of our readers interested in the growing, and in many respects very practical science of geology, will be glad to see. The author stands among the foremost of those who have devoted themselves to reading the history of the earth as written in and upon its own bosom."—*Christian Register*.

"It will only be necessary to announce this new and handsome edition of Lyell's standard work on geology, to induce all lovers of this most instructive science, to secure a copy of the work, if possible; for every successive edition of such a work has a value which none of its predecessors had, inasmuch as new discoveries are being constantly made by the active author, and other distinguished geologists, which illustrate topics discussed in the work."—*Boston Traveller*.

GREEN'S BOTANY.

QUARTO. BEAUTIFULLY ILLUSTRATED.

Designed for the Use of Schools.

(NEARLY READY.)

FIRST LESSONS IN GEOMETRY.

BY ALPHEUS CROSBY.

18mo. Price 38 Cents.

This little mathematical volume is founded upon the model of Colburn's First Lessons in Arithmetic, and abounds in illustrative questions both general and numerical, being an attempt to take advantage of their juvenile conceptions of place, form, and magnitude, which the youthful mind conceives most easily and readily, and to give to them a scientific form, and make them the foundation of elevated and accurate attainments—thus rendering Geometrical truths simpler and plainer, and bringing them within the reach of young children without sacrificing any of that strictness of demonstration which is the peculiar beauty of this science. That the author has been eminently practical and successful in this attempt will be seen by reference to the book.

FIRST LESSONS IN BOOK-KEEPING.

SINGLE AND DOUBLE ENTRY.

BY JOS. H. PALMER, A. M.

12mo. Price 19 Cents.

This little volume is progressively and logically arranged; each principle is clearly set forth by itself and illustrated, 1st, by "Slate Exercises," and 2d, by "Blank-Book Exercises." The practice is thoroughly taught by numerous exercises, in which the pupil opens the accounts and conducts and closes them himself.

BLANKS ACCOMPANYING THE SAME. 19 cents.

TREATISE ON BOOK-KEEPING.

BY JOS. H. PALMER, A. B.

12mo. Price 63 c.

From Jos. McKEEN, *Supt. of Schools of the City of New York.*

"The arrangement of this work admirably combines the scientific and practical in a system of instruction which appears to be happily matured. It is well considered, and has in it more of *original adaptation* than is to be ordinarily met with in works upon this subject. I recommend it to the favor of business men and teachers of book keeping."

ARITHMETICAL SERIES.

BY GEO. R. PERKINS, LL. D

PRIMARY ARITHMETIC. 18mo. 160 pages. Price 21 Cents.

This work is in two parts. 1st, Intellectual Arithmetic, and 2d, Primary Written Arithmetic. It will be found to contain—

A familiar treatment of the ground rules, and an informal and extended explanation of the principles of Decimals, in connection with exercises in Federal Money.

ELEMENTARY ARITHMETIC. 16mo. 350 pages. Price 42 Cents.

This work is peculiarly adapted to discipline the minds of those who study it.

No principle is left unelucidated, and new light is thrown upon many heretofore imperfectly illustrated.

The subject of Proportion and Ratio is presented with peculiar force; as also, in Equation of Payments, the method of finding the Cash Balance.

The method of Extraction of the Cube Root is greatly preferable to the old method. It is far more concise and more comprehensive saving nearly half the labor, and being applicable, with little variation, to the extraction of *all arithmetical roots*.

PRACTICAL ARITHMETIC. 12mo. Cloth sides. 354 pages. Price 62 Cents.

The Practical Arithmetic, containing about 4000 examples, is substantially the same as the "Elementary," and is designed for the use of such institutions and schools as require more examples than are given in that work. The almost universal expression of those who have used it is, that "it is the best and most complete arithmetic published."

KEY TO THE PRACTICAL ARITHMETIC. 12mo. Cloth sides. 324 pages. Price 75 Cents.

This work, which is just published, contains complete and full solutions to nearly 4000 examples, and is designed for the use of teachers only.

HIGHER ARITHMETIC. 12mo. Sheep. Price 75 Cents.

This work is what its name purports, and develops Arithmetical principles higher than are usually found in other school Arithmetics, and fully explains the science of numbers and their application.





Educational Text-Books.

GREEK AND LATIN—Continued.

| | |
|---|----------------|
| BEZA'S Latin Testament. | 12mo..... |
| CÆSAR'S Commentaries. Notes by Spencer. | 12mo..... |
| CHAMPLIN'S Short and Comprehensive Greek Grammar. | 12mo..... |
| CICERO De Officiis. Notes by Thatcher. | 12mo..... |
| —— Select Orations. Notes by Johnson. | 12mo..... |
| HERODOTUS, with Notes, by Prof. Johnson. | 12mo..... |
| HORACE. With Notes, &c., by Lincoln. | 12mo..... |
| KENDRICK'S Greek Ollendorff. | 12mo..... |
| TACITUS' Histories. Notes by Tyler. | 12mo..... |
| —— Germania and Agricola. Notes by do. | 12mo..... |
| XENOPHON'S Memorabilia. Notes by Robbins. New rev. edit. | 12mo..... |
| SALLUST, with Notes by Prof. Butler. | 12mo..... |
| KUHNER'S Elementary Greek Grammar. By Edwards and Taylor. | 12mo..... |
| —— New improved edition. | 12mo..... |
| LIVY. With Notes, &c., by Lincoln. | 12mo. Map..... |
| QUINTUS CURTIUS RUFUS' Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great. | |
| —— Edited and illustrated, with English Notes, by Professor Crosby. | 12mo..... |
| SOPHOCLES' Oedipus Tyrannus. With English Notes, by Howard Crosby. | 12mo..... |

FRENCH.

| | |
|---|-------------------------------|
| BADOIS'S Grammar for Frenchmen to learn English | 1 vol. 12mo..... |
| KEY to do. | |
| CHOUQUET'S French Conversations and Dialogues. | 18mo..... |
| —— Young Ladies' Guide to French Composition. | 12mo..... |
| COLLOT'S Dramatic French Reader. | 12mo..... |
| COUTAN, A., Choix de Poesies. | 12mo..... |
| DE FIVA'S Elementary French Reader. | 16mo..... |
| —— Classic do | 12mo..... |
| FENELON'S TELEMAQUE. Edited by Surenne. | 1 vol. 18mo..... |
| —— or bound in 2 vols. | 18mo..... |
| Le Nouveau Testament. Par J. F. Ostervald. | 32mo..... |
| OLLENDORFF'S New Method of Learning French. Edited by J. L. Jewett. | 12mo..... |
| —— Method of Learning French. By V. Value. | 12mo..... |
| KEY to each vol. | |
| —— First Lessons in French. By G. W. Greene. | 18mo..... |
| COMPANION to Ollendorff's French Grammar. By G. W. Greene. | 12mo..... |
| OLLENDORFF'S Grammar for Spaniards to Learn French. By Simonne. | 12mo..... |
| ROEMER'S First French Reader. | 12mo..... |
| —— Second do. | 12mo..... |
| ROWAN'S Modern French Reader. | 12mo..... |
| SIMONNE'S Treatise on French Verbs. | 1 vol..... |
| SPIERS' and Surenne's Complete French and English, and English and French Dictionary. With Pronunciation, &c., &c. One large 8vo. volume, of 1490 pp. | Sheep, |
| SPIERS AND SURENNE'S Standard Pronouncing Dictionary of the French and English Languages. (School Edition.) Containing 973 pp. | 12mo. new and large type..... |
| SURENNE'S French and English and English and French Dictionary. | 16mo. 568 pp..... |
| —— French Manual and Traveller's Companion. | 16mo..... |
| VOLTAIRE'S Histoire de Charles XII. Par Surenne. | 18mo..... |

GERMAN.

ER'S Progressive German Reader. 12mo..... 1 00
 — German and English and English and German Dictionary. Com-
 led from the best authorities..... 70
 — Abridged German..... 75

LaL.Gr

A7595f

12770

Author Arnold, Thomas Kerchever

Title First Latin book, ed. by Harkness. Ed. 16.

NAME OF BORROWER.

DATE.

University of Toronto
Library

DO NOT
REMOVE
THE
CARD
FROM
THIS
POCKET

Acme Library Card Pocket
Under Pat. "Ref. Index File"
Made by LIBRARY BUREAU

erman edition, by Conant. 8vo..... 2 00

SYRIAC.

EMANN'S Syriac Grammar. Translated from the German. By Enoch 3 50
 uthinson. 1 vol. 8vo.

UTL AT DOWNSVIEW



D RANGE BAY SHLF POS ITEM C
39 11 - 13 04 13 011 5